batsford

Alexander Alekhine's Best Games

Algebraic Edition

Alexander Alekhine

Foreword by Garry Kasparov

Alexander Alekhine's Best Games

Alexander Alekhine

Additional material by C.H.O'D. Alexander and John Nunn

Foreword by Garry Kasparov
Games selected by Raymond Keene

Algebraic Classics Series
Series Editor: Dr. John Nunn GM

B. T. Batsford Ltd, *London*

The material in this book was first published
in three volumes by G. Bell and Sons:
My Best Games of Chess 1908-1923 (1927)
My Best Games of Chess 1924-1937 (1939)
Alekhine's Best Games of Chess 1938-45 (1949)
First Batsford Edition 1989

This selection of algebraicised games © B. T. Batsford 1996
Additional material © John Nunn 1996

ISBN 0 7134 7970 1

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data.
A catalogue record for this book is
available from the British Library.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be
reproduced, by any means, without prior permission
of the publisher.

Typeset by John Nunn
and printed in Great Britain by
Redwood Books, Trowbridge, Wilts
for the publishers,
B. T. Batsford Ltd,
4 Fitzhardinge Street,
London W1H 0AH

A BATSFORD CHESS BOOK
Editorial Panel: Mark Dvoretsky, John Nunn, Jon Speelman
General Adviser: Raymond Keene OBE

Commissioning Editor: Graham Burgess

Contents

1	Vygodchikov-Alekhine, Corr., Russia 1908-9	8
2	Alekhine-Levenfish, St. Petersburg Chess Society Winter Tournament 1912	10
3	Nimzowitsch-Alekhine, All-Russian Masters, Vilna 1912	12
4	Alekhine-Duras, Masters' Quadrangular, St. Petersburg 1913	14
5	Znosko-Borovsky–Alekhine, Masters' Quadrangular, St. Petersburg 1913	16
6	De Roszynski-Alekhine, Paris 1913	19
7	Mieses-Alekhine, Scheveningen 1913	20
8	Alekhine-Nimzowitsch, All-Russian Masters, St. Petersburg 1914	23
9	Alekhine-Marshall, St. Petersburg International 1914	25
10	Alekhine-Tarrasch, St. Petersburg International 1914	27
11	Alekhine-Fahrni, Mannheim 1914	30
12	Alekhine-Isakov, Moscow Championship 1919	31
13	Rabinovich-Alekhine, All-Russian Masters', Moscow 1920	34
14	Alekhine-Teichmann, Match (2) Berlin 1921	37
15	Selezniev-Alekhine, Triberg 1921	39
16	Alekhine-Bogoljubow, Triberg 1921	44
17	Alekhine-Sterk, Budapest 1921	46
18	Alekhine-Bogoljubow, Budapest 1921	49
19	Steiner-Alekhine, Budapest 1921	51
20	Alekhine-Rubinstein, The Hague 1921	54
21	Tarrasch-Alekhine, Pistyan 1922	58
22	Johner-Alekhine, Pistyan 1922	60
23	Alekhine-Wolf, Pistyan 1922	62
24	Torres-Alekhine, Exhibition Game, Seville 1922	65
25	Alekhine-Yates, London 1922	67
26	Bogoljubow-Alekhine, Hastings 1922	70
27	Alekhine-Réti, Vienna 1922	73
28	Alekhine-Sämisch, Exhibition Game, Berlin 1923	77
29	Grünfeld-Alekhine, Karlsbad 1923	78
30	Alekhine-Rubinstein, Karlsbad 1923	82
31	Alekhine-Maroczy, Karlsbad 1923	86
32	Alekhine-Chajes, Karlsbad 1923	87
33	Alekhine-Réti, New York 1924	92
34	Alekhine-Janowski, New York 1924	95
35	Alekhine-Opočensky, Paris 1925	97

36	Tarrasch-Alekhine, Baden-Baden 1925	99
37	Réti-Alekhine, Baden-Baden 1925	100
38	Alekhine-Treybal, Baden-Baden 1925	103
39	Sir G. Thomas-Alekhine, Baden-Baden 1925	105
40	Alekhine-Marshall, Baden-Baden 1925	107
41	Alekhine-Schwartz, Blindfold Exhibition, London 1926	109
42	Rubinstein-Alekhine, Semmering 1926	111
43	Rubinstein-Alekhine, Dresden 1926	113
44	Euwe-Alekhine, Second Exhibition Game, Amsterdam, 1926	115
45	Alekhine-Euwe, Third Exhibition Game, Amsterdam 1926	118
46	Alekhine-Nimzowitsch, New York 1927	121
47	Alekhine-Marshall, New York, 1927	124
48	Alekhine-Tartakower, Kecskemet 1927	125
49	Kmoch-Alekhine, Kecskemet 1927	127
50	Capablanca-Alekhine, Buenos Aires Wch (1) 1927	129
51	Capablanca-Alekhine, Buenos Aires Wch (11) 1927	131
52	Capablanca-Alekhine, Buenos Aires Wch (21) 1927	136
53	Alekhine-Capablanca, Buenos Aires Wch (32) 1927	138
54	Alekhine-Capablanca, Buenos Aires Wch (34) 1927	142
55	Marshall-Alekhine, Exhibition Game, New York 1929	145
56	Alekhine-Steiner, Bradley-Beach 1929	149
57	Alekhine-Bogoljubow, Wiesbaden Wch (1) 1929	151
58	Alekhine-Bogoljubow, Wiesbaden Wch (5) 1929	152
59	Bogoljubow-Alekhine, Wiesbaden Wch (8) 1929	154
60	Bogoljubow-Alekhine, Amsterdam Wch (22) 1929	156
61	Alekhine-Nimzowitsch, San Remo 1930	158
62	Alekhine-Maroczy, San Remo 1930	160
63	Alekhine-Tartakower, San Remo 1930	164
64	Ahues-Alekhine, San Remo 1930	167
65	Alekhine-Kmoch, San Remo 1930	169
66	Ståhlberg-Alekhine, Hamburg tt 1930	171
67	Alekhine-Andersen, Prague tt 1931	173
68	Alekhine-Nimzowitsch, Bled 1931	175
69	Pirc-Alekhine, Bled 1931	176
70	Alekhine-Flohr, Bled, 1931	178
71	Alekhine-Maroczy, Bled 1931	180
72	Alekhine-Winter, London 1932	183
73	Alekhine-Koltanowski, London 1932	185
74	Alekhine-Tartakower, London 1932	187
75	Alekhine-Sultan Khan, Berne 1932	189
76	Alekhine-Flohr, Berne 1932	191
77	Alekhine-Steiner, Pasadena 1932	192
78	Alekhine-Kimura, Blindfold Exhibition on 15 boards, Tokyo 1933	194

79 Alekhine-Mikenas, Folkestone tt 1933. 196
80 Znosko-Borovsky-Alekhine, Paris 1933 199
81 Alekhine-Bogoljubow, Baden-Baden Wch (2) 1934 202
82 Bogoljubow-Alekhine, Pforzheim Wch (9) 1934 204
83 Alekhine-Bogoljubow, Bayreuth Wch (16) 1934 207
84 Bogoljubow-Alekhine, Kissingen Wch (17) 1934 210
85 Bogoljubow-Alekhine, Berlin Wch (25) 1934 212
86 Alekhine-Em. Lasker, Zurich 1934 215
87 Alekhine-Euwe, Amsterdam Wch (1) 1935 216
88 Alekhine-Euwe, Amsterdam Wch (3) 1935 218
89 Euwe-Alekhine, The Hague Wch (4) 1935 220
90 Alekhine-Euwe, Utrecht Wch (7) 1935 224
91 Ahues-Alekhine, Bad Nauheim 1936 227
92 Alekhine-Bogoljubow, Dresden 1936 229
93 Alekhine-Frydman, Podebrad 1936 233
94 Alekhine-Foltys, Podebrad 1936 235
95 Winter-Alekhine, Nottingham 1936 238
96 Alekhine-Alexander, Nottingham 1936 240
97 Alekhine-Bogoljubow, Nottingham 1936 242
98 Alekhine-Fine, Hastings, 1937 245
99 Alekhine-Reshevsky, Kemeri 1937 248
100 Alekhine-Fine, Kemeri 1937 252
101 Alekhine-Bogoljubow, Quadrangular Tournament, Bad Nauheim 1937 255
102 Alekhine-Sämisch, Quadrangular Tournament, Bad Nauheim 1937 258
103 Alekhine-Euwe, Rotterdam Wch (2) 1937 261
104 Alekhine-Euwe, Haarlem Wch (6) 1937 263
105 Alekhine-Euwe, Leiden Wch (8) 1937 266
106 Alekhine-Euwe, Zwolle Wch (14) 1937 268
107 Alekhine-Euwe, Delft Wch (22) 1937 271
108 Alekhine-Euwe, Rotterdam Wch (24) 1937 276
109 Euwe-Alekhine, The Hague Wch (25) 1937 279
110 Alekhine-Böök, Margate 1938 282
111 Alekhine-Euwe, AVRO 1938 284
112 Alekhine-Flohr, AVRO 1938 287
113 Alekhine-Capablanca, AVRO 1938 289
114 Alekhine-Keres, Salzburg 1942 291
115 Keres-Alekhine, Salzburg 1942 294
116 Alekhine-Keres, Munich 1942 296
117 Alekhine-Junge, Krakow 1942 298
118 Alekhine-Junge, Prague 1942 299

Foreword by Garry Kasparov

Ask any chess fan to give a short list of his favourite games and it is sure to include games by Alekhine. Perhaps Réti-Alekhine, from Baden-Baden 1925, or Bogoljubow-Alekhine, Hastings 1922. These two games are generally reckoned to be amongst the most brilliant on record. But Alekhine's reputation was not built solely on the wonderful quality of his games, nor, simply, on his longevity as World Champion (he held the title from 1927-35 and again from 1937-46, when he died as World Champion, sadly destitute, in Portugal). It was also Alekhine's outstanding diligence as an annotator of his own masterpieces which has helped to establish his place in the history of chess. No serious student of chess can afford to ignore Alekhine's notes to his games, and the most important of these are assembled here in this volume.

Alekhine's games and writings exerted a great influence on me from a very early age. I wished to emulate the dynamic style of the first, great, Russian-born champion, who wrested the crown from Capablanca in 1927. I fell in love with the rich complexity of his ideas at the chessboard. Alekhine's attacks came suddenly, like destructive thunderstorms that erupted from a clear sky. Max Euwe, who briefly took the world title from Alekhine between 1935 and 1937, wrote of him:

> Alekhine is a poet, who creates a work of art out of something which would hardly inspire another man to send a picture postcard. The wilder and more involved a position the more beautiful the conception he can evolve.

A similar view was expressed by Dr. Emanuel Lasker:

> Alekhine loves making experiments... delighted to think that his own skill and his own imagination are the cause of all that what happens on the board.

This style of Alekhine's was what I admired and wanted to develop in my own games. I had a natural feeling for it. I hope readers of this book will feel similarly inspired by Alekhine's masterpieces.

Garry Kasparov
Baku 1989

Introduction by John Nunn

I first came across Alekhine's collection of games when I was about 11 years old. Up to that point, I had been quite successful in junior events and I had the feeling that chess wasn't really a very difficult game. After playing over all 220 games in the first two volumes (covering the periods 1908-23 and 1924-37), I thought "How can anyone play like this? It's just impossible to see so much during a game". I was particularly struck by his game against Rubinstein from Semmering, 1926 (game 42 in this book), and the move 18...♘xf2! in particular. It seemed incredible that there might be a stronger move than the obvious recapture on c3, but after having checked the analysis several times, I had to admit that taking on f2 was a forced win. But how did this move even enter Alekhine's head? Today, finding this combination doesn't seem so totally impossible as it did then, but it remains an enormously impressive game. In my opinion Alekhine's special genius lay in his ability to discover unexpected twists in positions where a lesser player would have made an automatic, conventional move. Other examples of such twists, in addition to the 18...♘xf2 mentioned above, are the move 19 ♕c7! in game 31 and the idea of 18 dxe5 and 19 ♕f4! in game 47.

In view of my early acquaintance with Alekhine's books, I was excited when the idea arose of producing an algebraic edition of the cream of Alekhine's games. This gradually became a major project. Apart from the conversion to algebraic, I have corrected a surprisingly large number of notational errors in the original books, rearranged the games in chronological order, edited the text and checked the analysis. I have not commented on minor flaws in the analysis, but major errors and omissions are pointed out in footnotes (except for game 118, where the new analysis was so extensive that it had to be embedded in the text). These terse footnotes should be studied carefully, as in many cases they indicate fundamental reassessments of famous games, for example Réti-Alekhine, Baden-Baden 1925 and Alekhine-Bogoljubow, Nottingham 1936. Some readers may find it surprising that so many major analytical errors exist in Alekhine's notes—after having worked on this book, my respect for Alekhine's games has increased, but I have come to recognise that his annotations are influenced by the "I won the game, so I must have been winning all the way through" syndrome (which, it must be said, afflicts many annotators).

A few additional points: games 1-109 were originally annotated by Alekhine himself—the remaining games were annotated by C.H.O'D. Alexander. All footnotes are mine, except where they are marked (GB), in which case they were written by Graham Burgess. Alekhine uses the symbols '±' and '∓' to mean 'clear advantage for White' and 'clear advantage for Black' respectively.

The games in this book represent the distillation of the life work of one of the greatest chess geniuses of all time. As I discovered myself, it is possible to learn a great deal from them.

Game 1
Vygodchikov – Alekhine
Corr., Russia 1908-9
Ruy Lopez

1	**e4**	**e5**
2	**♘f3**	**♘c6**
3	**♗b5**	**a6**
4	**♗a4**	**♘f6**
5	**0-0**	**♗c5**

This move, suggested in 1908 by the Danish master Møller, is in my opinion much better than its reputation as, up to the present, it has in no way been refuted and the few games in which it has been adopted rather tend to militate in its favour.

6 ♘xe5

White could also play 6 c3 to which the best reply is 6...♗a7 as in a game Yates-Alekhine (Hastings 1922), which continued as follows: 7 d4 (interesting would be 7 ♖e1 ♘g4! 8 d4 exd4 9 cxd4 ♘xd4! 10 ♘xd4 ♕h4! with a winning attack) 7...♘xe4 8 ♕e2 f5 9 dxe5 0-0 10 ♘bd2 d5 11 exd6 ♘xd6 12 ♗b3+ ♔h8 13 ♘c4 f4 14 ♘ce5 ♘xe5 15 ♘xe5 ♕g5 16 ♗d2 ♗h3 17 ♗d5 ♖ae8 18 ♖fe1 ♖e6! 19 ♕d3, and now Black, who played the surprise move 19...♗e3!?, finally obtained only a draw, whereas he could have won a pawn simply by 19...♗xg2 followed by 20...♖xe5.

6	**...**	**♘xe5**
7	**d4**	**♘xe4!**

8 ♖e1

After 8 dxc5 ♘xc5 9 ♕d4 (9 ♕d5 is similar) 9...♕e7! 10 ♗f4 f6 (Dr. Groen-Alekhine, Portsmouth 1923) White has insufficient compensation for his pawn.

If 8 ♕e2 (as in Takacs-Alekhine, Vienna 1922), then 8...♗e7 9 ♕xe4 ♘g6 10 c4 0-0 11 ♘c3 f5 with good attacking chances. The continuation of this interesting game was 12 ♕f3 ♘h4 13 ♕d3 b5 14 ♗b3 ♔h8 15 ♗f4 ♘g6 16 ♗d2 ♗b7 17 ♖fe1 bxc4 18 ♗xc4 d5 19 ♗b3 c5! 20 dxc5 d4 21 ♘a4 ♗e4 22 ♕c4 ♗g5 23 ♕c1 ♗xd2 24 ♕xd2 ♘h4 25 f3 ♗xf3 26 g3, and now Black could have won at once by the sacrificial combination 26...f4 27 gxh4 ♕xh4, for if 28 ♗c2, then 28...d3! 29 ♗xd3 ♖ad8 is decisive.

8	**...**	**♗e7**
9	**♖xe4**	**♘g6**
10	**♘c3**	**0-0**
11	**♘d5**	**♗d6!**

It was most important to preserve this bishop. Now that Black has overcome most of the opening difficulties, he must in the sequel obtain at least an equal game.

12 ♕f3

To 12 c4 Black had the powerful reply 12...f5 13 ♖e1 c5![1].

12	**...**	**f5**

But here this advance is premature. White gains an important tempo

1 However, at the end of this line 14 dxc5 ♗xc5 15 b4 ♗a7 16 ♕h5, threatening the deadly 17 ♗g5, gives White a near-decisive advantage, since Black must also take into account the possibility of ♗b3 followed by c5. Therefore 12 c4 should be met by 12...b5, with approximate equality.

by playing his light-squared bishop to b3 and Black loses the chance of ...c5. The correct plan was 12...b5 13 ♗b3 ♗b7, with very good chances for Black.

13 ♗b3! ♔h8

Evidently the rook could not be captured because of mate in four: 14 ♘e7+♔h8 15 ♘xg6+ hxg6 16 ♕h3+ ♕h4 17 ♕xh4#.

14 ♖e2 f4

In preparation for 15...c6. If Black plays 14...♕h4, then 15 h3 ♕xd4 16 c3 ♕c5 17 ♗e3 ♕c6 18 ♗d4, with a strong attack[1].

15 c4 c6

Aiming for the rook sacrifice on move 17. 15...c5 would be met by 16 ♗c2, a move which is threatened in any event, and 15...♕g5 16 c5 ♘h4 would be insufficient because of 17 ♕g3!.

16 c5 ♗b8

17 ♘b6 *(D)*

B

17 ... d5!!

This rook sacrifice is absolutely sound, and White would have been better advised not to accept it and to play instead 18 ♘xc8! (not 18 ♗c2 immediately because of 18...♕g5!) 18...♕xc8 19 ♗c2! with a slight advantage.

It is easy to understand that White was tempted to capture the rook, considering that the strong black attack which follows was not obvious.

18 ♘xa8 ♘h4

19 ♕c3

Naturally not 19 ♕h5 because of 19...g6 20 ♕h6 ♘f5 followed by 21...♘xd4. If 19 ♕d3! there would have been interesting complications. The probable line of play would have been: 19...♗f5 20 ♕c3 (if 20 ♕d1, then Black replies 20...♕g5!) 20...f3 21 ♖e3! (if 21 gxf3, then 21...♕f6 22 f4 ♗g4) 21...fxg2 22 f3! ♕g5! (threatening ...♗xh2+) 23 ♖e5 ♗xe5! 24 ♗xg5 ♗xd4+ 25 ♕xd4 ♘xf3+ 26 ♔xg2 ♘xd4 27 ♘b6 ♗e4+ 28 ♔g3 ♖f3+ 29 ♔h4 ♗f5! and mate in a few moves.

The text move in some ways facilitates Black's attack, as he now has a serious threat based on a queen sacrifice.

19 ... f3

20 ♖e5

Compulsory. After the plausible reply 20 ♖e3 the continuation would

1 In this line Black's queen doesn't need to be banished to the queenside; 16...♕h4 is a big improvement, when White must prove that he has enough compensation for the pawn.

be 20...♕g5! 21 g3 ♗xg3! 22 hxg3 ♕xg3+ 23 fxg3 f2+ 24 ♔f1 ♗h3+ and Black wins.

20 ... ♗xe5
21 dxe5 ♘xg2!

Threatening ...♕h4-h3.

22 ♕d4 ♕d7

Black could also win by 22...♘f4! 23 ♗xf4 ♕h4!, but the variation adopted is equally decisive.

23 e6

A desperate move, but after 23 ♔h1 ♕h3 White would have no defence against 24...♘e1!.

23 ... ♕xe6
24 ♗d2 ♕g6!

Stronger than 24...♕h3 25 ♗c3 ♖g8 26 ♕e5 ♘f4 27 ♕g5, and Black cannot play 27...♗g4 because of 28 ♗xg7+! with perpetual check[1].

25 ♗c2

Black wins after 25 ♔h1 ♘e1 or 25 ♔f1 ♗h3.

25 ... ♕xc2
26 ♔h1 ♕g6
27 ♖g1

The only resource.

27 ... ♗h3
28 ♘b6 *(D)*
28 ... ♘f4!

This manoeuvre, prepared by Black's last few moves, is immediately decisive, for after the queen exchange White's game remains absolutely without resource.

29 ♖xg6 ♗g2+
30 ♖xg2 fxg2+
31 ♔g1 ♘e2+

B

32 ♔xg2 ♘xd4
0-1

Game 2
Alekhine – Levenfish
St. Petersburg Chess Society Winter Tournament 1912
Queen's Pawn Game

1 d4 c5

The advance of this pawn is rightly considered inferior even when prepared by 1...♘f6 2 ♘f3. On the first move it constitutes, in my opinion, a grave positional error, for White at once obtains a great positional advantage by simply advancing the centre pawns.

2 d5 ♘f6
3 ♘c3 d6
4 e4 g6

If instead of the text move Black replies with 4...e6 White's answer would be 5 ♗c4, and the sequel would not be satisfactory for Black because of the weakness at d6.

5 f4

1 In this line 27...h6 forces instant resignation.

Already threatening 6 e5.

5 ... ♘bd7

6 ♘f3

If now 6...♗g7 then 7 e5 dxe5 8 fxe5 ♘g4 9 e6 ♘de5 10 ♗b5+. This is why Black plays:

6 ... a6

7 e5 dxe5

8 fxe5 ♘g4

9 e6!

This move demolishes Black's variation.

9 ... ♘de5

10 ♗f4 *(D)*

B

10 ... ♘xf3+

Or 10...♗g7 11 ♕e2 ♘xf3+ 12 gxf3 ♘f6 13 exf7+ ♔xf7 14 0-0-0, with an overwhelming advantage for White[1].

After the text move Black probably hopes for the reply 11 ♕xf3 upon which he would obtain a playable game by 11...fxe6!.

11 gxf3! ♘f6

12 ♗c4!

This is preferable to the immediate capture of the f7-pawn, a capture which the text move renders much more threatening.

12 ... fxe6

13 dxe6 ♕b6

The alternative was 13...♕xd1+ 14 ♖xd1 ♗g7 15 ♗c7 0-0 16 ♗b6 and White wins a pawn, at the same time maintaining all his pressure. 13...♕b6, threatening two pawns at the same time, is shown to be insufficient by an unexpected sacrificial combination.

14 ♕e2!

The initial move.

14 ... ♕xb2 *(D)*

At first sight there appears to be little danger in this capture, for the reply 15 ♔d2 would be frustrated by 15...♘h5 16 ♗e5 ♗h6+ 17 ♔d3 ♗xe6 18 ♗xe6 ♖d8+, but White had a different scheme in mind.

W

1 In this line 12...♗xc3+ 13 bxc3 ♕xd5 is more testing, although 14 fxg4! ♕xh1 15 0-0-0 ♕c6 16 exf7+ ♔xf7 17 ♗g2 gives White an enormous attack. White could also play 11 h3 ♘xf3+ 12 ♕xf3 ♘f6 13 exf7+ ♔xf7 14 ♗c4, which gives him a clear advantage at no risk.

15 ♘b5!

This attack by the knight (which cannot be captured due to 15...axb5 16 ♗xb5+ ♔d8 17 ♖d1+) decides the issue in a few moves. Black has nothing better than to accept the sacrifice and to capture both rooks.

15 ... ♕xa1+
16 ♔f2 ♕xh1
17 ♘c7+ ♔d8
18 ♕d2+ ♗d7
19 exd7 1-0

The threat is 20 ♘e6#, and if 19...e5 (19...♘xd7 20 ♗e6), then White replies 20 ♘e6+ ♔e7 21 d8♕+ ♖xd8 22 ♕xd8+ ♔f7 23 ♘xf8+ ♔g7 24 ♕e7#.

Game 3

Nimzowitsch – Alekhine

All-Russian Masters, Vilna 1912

Queen's Pawn Game

1 d4 d5
2 ♘f3 c5
3 ♗f4 ♘c6
4 e3 ♘f6

Here 4...♕b6 would be premature on account of 5 ♘c3.

5 ♘c3

Now, however, this move is out of place. The usual line of play, 5 c3 followed by 6 ♗d3, is certainly better.

5 ... ♗g4

Equally satisfactory would be 5...a6 followed by 6...♗g4.

6 ♗b5 e6
7 h3 ♗h5

This move gives White the chance to weaken the enemy position on both wings. Black had two ways of obtaining a good game, 7...♗xf3 8 ♕xf3 a6 9 ♗xc6+ bxc6 and 7...cxd4 8 exd4 ♗h5 9 g4 ♗g6 10 ♘e5 ♕b6 11 a4 ♗b4.

8 g4 ♗g6
9 ♘e5 ♕b6

Of course not 9...♖c8, because of 10 ♘xc6 followed by 11 ♗a6. However, 9...♕c8 would have been more prudent.

10 a4!

Very strong, as Black has no time to continue 10...cxd4 followed by 11...♗b4, because of 11 a5. Therefore he is compelled to yield the b5-square to his opponent.

10 ... a5
11 h4 h5

This move is relatively better than 11...h6, as it forces White to make an immediate decision on the kingside.

12 ♘xg6 fxg6 *(D)*

W

13 gxh5

The variation 13 g5 ♘g8 14 ♕d3 ♔f7 15 ♖h3 looks stronger than it really is, as Black can resist the attack by bringing his g8-knight to e7 and then f5. The text move makes

things easy for Black. His g7-pawn, it is true, is weakened, but, on the other hand, he obtains excellent prospects in the centre.

13 ... gxh5
14 ♕e2 0-0-0

The king's position on the queenside will be quite safe as the white bishop can easily be eliminated.

15 0-0-0! *(D)*

A very pretty trap.

B

15 ... ♗d6

Black discovers in time the opponent's subtle plan: 15...cxd4 16 exd4 ♘xd4 17 ♖xd4 ♕xd4 18 ♕xe6+ ♘d7 19 ♕c6+!! bxc6 20 ♗a6#. The text move eliminates all danger.

16 ♗xd6 ♖xd6
17 ♗d3

White has insufficiently weighed the consequences of this move; in particular, he has not realised that the knight will have no time to settle down at b5, and consequently Black will obtain an important advantage. Better would be 17 ♗xc6 bxc6 18 ♖hg1 ♖d7, but in this case also Black's game is superior[1].

17 ... c4!

Both dislodging the bishop and initiating a combined attack on both wings.

18 ♗g6

Naturally not 18 ♘b5 cxd3 19 ♘xd6+ ♔d7, followed by ...♔xd6.

18 ... ♘e7
19 ♖hg1 ♕b4
20 ♔d2 ♖b6! *(D)*

W

An amusing reply to White's trap on the 15th move. Black in his turn threatens mate by a queen sacrifice, a Roland for an Oliver! 21...♘xg6 22 ♖xg6 ♕xb2 23 ♖b1 ♕xc3+ 24 ♔xc3 ♘e4#. In addition the text move allows the queen to co-operate in a decisive action against the exposed g6-bishop.

21 f3

Evading the threat.

21 ... ♖h6

---

1 17 ♗d3 is a really awful move, which not only allows Black to attack b2, but also results in the almost immediate trapping of the bishop!

22 ♗f7

Hapless bishop, with only one square on which to shelter!

22 ... ♘f5
23 ♕h2 ♕e7!
24 ♘b5

A desperate move. After 24 ♗g6 Black would win immediately by 24...♘xh4 since 25 ♕xh4 loses the queen after 25...♘e4+. In giving up the bishop, White has a vague hope of complications resulting from the queen reaching b8.

24 ... ♕xf7
25 ♘a7+ ♔d7
26 ♕b8 ♘d6

Black could have continued with the simple 26...♕e8. But his objective, which he indeed succeeds in achieving, is the capture of the white queen.

27 ♖g5 ♘fe8
28 ♖dg1 ♖f6

Not, of course, 28...♕xf3 because of 29 ♖xg7+.

29 f4 g6
30 ♔c1 ♕h7
31 c3 ♕f7
32 ♔b1 ♕e7

Taking advantage of the fact that White cannot capture the black g6-pawn because of the resulting pin by 33...♕h7.

33 ♔a2 ♖f8
34 ♘b5 ♘xb5
35 axb5 ♘c7
36 ♕a7 ♕d6

If now 37 ♖xg6 ♘xb5 38 ♖g7+ ♔c6 39 ♕xa5 ♖a6, and the queen is exchanged.

0-1

Game 4

Alekhine – Duras

Masters' Quadrangular, St. Petersburg 1913

Ruy Lopez

1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 ♗b5 a6
4 ♗a4 ♘f6
5 ♕e2 b5

This move, in conjunction with the next one, affords Black the simplest method of equalising.

6 ♗b3 ♗c5
7 a4!

The opening of the a-file is of great significance in this variation. Black cannot prevent it, for if 7...b4, then 8 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 9 ♕c4+ d5 10 ♕xc5 ♕d6 11 ♕xc6!.

7 ... ♖b8
8 axb5 axb5
9 d3

After 9 ♘c3 Black could simply play 9...0-0, for after 10 ♘xb5 d5! he obtains an attack fully equivalent to the pawn sacrificed. After the text move White can eventually play c3 and bring his knight to e3 or g3 via d2 and f1.

9 ... d6
10 ♗e3 ♗g4

Here Black could have obtained an even game by forcing the exchange of White's only well-posted piece, the bishop on b3, by 10...♗e6. It is clear that White would not have reaped any advantage by exchanging at e6 and c5, as Black would have had command of the centre,

thanks to his pawn structure and the two open files.

11 h3 ♗h5

Consistent but not best. 11...♗e6 was even now preferable and would have brought about variations similar to those resulting from the immediate development of the bishop at e6.

12 ♘bd2 0-0

13 0-0 ♘d4 *(D)*

This offer to exchange is premature and, as will be seen, gives White a distinct positional advantage. Relatively better would have been 13...♕e7 followed by ...♘d8-e6, although in this case too Black has the inferior game.

W

14 ♗xd4 ♗xf3

Forced, for otherwise the black bishop would have been in jeopardy, e.g. 14...♗xd4 15 g4 ♗g6 16 ♘xd4 exd4 17 f4, or 14...exd4 15 g4 ♗g6 16 ♘h4 followed by f4, with advantage to White in either variation.

15 ♘xf3 exd4

16 e5!

The beginning of a strong attack against f7, weakened as it is by the premature exchange of Black's light-squared bishop. Furthermore, it is interesting to observe how important the open a-file is for White's attack.

16 ... ♕e7

Besides this move and the sequel it implies, Black had a further choice of two lines of play:

1) 16...dxe5 17 ♕xe5 ♕d6 18 ♕xd6 cxd6 19 ♖fe1 with advantage to White.

2) 16...♖e8 17 e6! fxe6 18 ♗xe6+ ♔f8 (or 18...♔h8 19 ♘g5) 19 b4! ♗xb4 (19...♗b6 20 ♖fe1) 20 ♘xd4 ♖b6! 21 ♕f3! ♗c3 22 ♘c6! ♖xc6 23 ♕xc6 ♗xa1 24 ♖xa1, and White has the better game as the e6-bishop is invulnerable.

17 ♖fe1 ♖be8

18 ♕d2 dxe5

Forced, as 19 e6 was threatened.

19 ♖xe5 ♕d6

20 ♕g5! *(D)*

B

Forcing a further exchange which brings the knight into action.

20 ... ♖xe5

It is clear that 20...h6 would have achieved nothing after 21 ♕f5.

21 ♘xe5

Already threatening to win by 22 ♘xf7.

21 ... ♕b6

Relatively best. 21...♘d7 would not be sufficient, e.g. 22 ♘xf7![1] ♖xf7 23 ♖a8+ ♘f8 24 ♕f5! ♕e7 25 ♗xf7+ ♕xf7 26 ♕xc5 and wins.

The move in the text removes the immediate threat, for now 22 ♕f5 would be insufficient as a preliminary to the knight sacrifice, since Black could prepare a fresh defensive position by 22...g6, followed by ...♔g7.

22 g4!

But this somewhat hidden preparation of the knight sacrifice wins at once, as Black is compelled to make a reply which will render his position still more precarious.

22 ... ♗d6

If 22...g6 then 23 ♕h6, threatening both 24 ♘xf7 and 24 ♖a8; and if 22...♗e7, 23 ♘d7! ♘xd7 24 ♕xe7 ♕d6 25 ♕xd6 cxd6 26 ♖a5 ♖b8 27 ♖a7 ♖d8 28 ♖b7 and wins.

23 ♘xf7! ♖xf7

24 ♕f5!

The point of the manoeuvre initiated with 22 g4: against the double threat of 25 ♕e6 and 25 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 26 g5, Black has no defence.

24 ... g6

If 24...♕c6, 25 g5 ♕d7 26 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 (26...♕xf7 27 gxf6) 27 ♕f3 and White wins.

25 ♕e6 ♔g7

26 ♕xf7+ ♔h6

27 ♗e6! 1-0

Game 5

Znosko-Borovsky – Alekhine

Masters' Quadrangular, St. Petersburg 1913

Ruy Lopez

1 e4 e5

2 ♘f3 ♘c6

3 ♗b5 a6

4 ♗a4 d6

5 d4 ♗g4

5...♗d7 is better. The variation in the text, favoured by Marshall, is unfavourable to Black should White adopt the continuation 6 d5 b5 7 dxc6 bxa4 8 c4 !, as in the game Réti-Spielmann, Berlin 1920.

6 ♗xc6+

White also obtains a good game by this move, but allows Black some counter-chances.

6 ... bxc6

7 dxe5 dxe5

8 ♕e2

It is clear that after 8 ♕xd8+ Black would protect his e-pawn by 8...♖xd8, mating on d1 if White plays 9 ♘xe5.

8 ... ♗d6

9 ♗e3 ♘e7

10 h3 ♗h5

11 ♘bd2 0-0

Black could equally play 11...f6 in order to withdraw his bishop to f7 in case of need. But he considered

1 Unnecessary, as 22 ♘xd7 wins a piece at once.

that White would not find the time necessary to increase his pressure on the kingside due to Black's counter-attack on the opposite wing and in the centre.

12 g4 ♗g6
13 h4

If 13 ♘h4 then Black replies 13...♘d5! 14 ♘xg6 ♘xe3 15 ♕xe3 fxg6 with good prospects.

13 ... f6
14 h5 ♗f7
15 ♘h4 ♕b8!

The black queen enters into the game very effectively through this outlet.

16 b3 ♕b4! *(D)*

17 f3

The opening of the g-file would here be without effect: 17 ♘f5 ♘xf5 18 gxf5 ♕c3! and White cannot avoid losing his c-pawn without any compensation, since 19 0-0-0 allows mate in two by 19...♗a3+.

17 ... ♖fd8!

Stronger than 17...♕c3, whereupon White would obtain positional compensation adequate for the pawn sacrificed after 18 ♔f2! ♕xc2 19 ♖hc1 ♕b2 20 ♘c4! ♕xe2+ 21 ♔xe2.

18 ♔f2

After 18 0-0 the ensuing reply, 18...♗c5, would be still stronger.

18 ... ♗c5
19 ♘f1 ♖d6
20 ♗xc5 ♕xc5+
21 ♘e3 ♖ad8
22 ♖hd1 ♕c3!

Undoubling the c-pawns by force, and in this way removing the only weakness in Black's position.

23 ♖xd6

If 23 ♘f1 Black would reply simply 23...a5 and White could only defer the exchange of rooks, which must be made sooner or later.

23 ... cxd6
24 ♖d1 d5! *(D)*

The most energetic. In exchange for the a-pawn Black obtains a dangerous passed pawn in the centre and besides, White's own a-pawn is a ready object of attack.

25 ♕xa6 d4
26 ♘ef5

As this knight can no longer be assisted by White's other pieces, its

inroad on f5 loses much of its efficacy.

26 ... ♘xf5
27 ♘xf5 ♕xc2+
28 ♕e2 ♕c5
29 ♕d3

29 ♕d2! would be a little better, with the double threat of 30 ♖c1 followed by 31 ♖xc6 and 32 ♘e7+, and 30 g5. But in this case also Black would secure a positional advantage by 29...♕f8!.

29 ... ♗e6

In order to be able to dislodge the knight, at need, by ...g6, but White prefers to withdraw it himself to maintain the defence of his seriously weakened queenside.

30 ♘g3 ♖a8
31 ♖d2 ♕b4!
32 ♖c2 c5
33 ♘f1 c4!

This temporary pawn sacrifice will allow the black pieces to break through into the hostile camp, and to co-operate in a direct attack against White's king, an attack which will become irresistible thanks to the passed c-pawn, which fixes the white pieces far away on the other wing.

34 bxc4 ♖a3
35 ♕d2 ♕c5
36 ♔g3

After 36 ♔g2 ♗xc4 Black would be threatening to capture the knight with check.

36 ... ♗xc4
37 ♕c1 ♖c3!
38 ♖xc3 dxc3
39 ♘e3

Directed against the threatened ...♕g1+.

39 ... ♗xa2
40 ♕c2! ♗e6
41 ♘d1

Else Black would win easily with his passed pawn.

41 ... ♕g1+
42 ♔h4 *(D)*

B

42 ... g5+!

In conjunction with the following move this is the shortest road to victory.

43 fxg6 h5!

This pawn now shares in the attack and settles the result outright. White is helpless against the threat 44...♕h1+ 45 ♔g3 h4+ 46 ♔f2 ♕h2+. On the other hand, 43...hxg6 would not have been so strong, for White could have still defended himself by playing 44 ♕e2! ♔g7 45 ♔h3!.

44 ♘e3 ♕xe3
45 ♕a4 ♕f2+
46 ♔h3 h4
47 ♕e8+ ♔g7
48 ♕e7+ ♔xg6
0-1

Game 6

De Roszynski – Alekhine

Paris 1913

King's Knight's Opening

1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 ♗c4 d6

Although seldom played, this move is not inferior to 3...♗e7 (the Hungarian Defence). The present game affords a typical example of the dangers to which White is exposed if he attempts to refute this move forthwith.

4 c3 ♗g4
5 ♕b3 ♕d7
6 ♘g5

Anticipating the gain of two pawns. If at once 6 ♗xf7+ ♕xf7 7 ♕xb7, then 7...♔d7! 8 ♕xa8 ♗xf3 9 gxf3 ♕xf3 10 ♖g1 ♕xe4+ 11 ♔d1 ♕f3+ and Black has at least a draw, as White cannot play 12 ♔c2 on account of 12...♘b4+[1].

6 ... ♘h6 *(D)*

W

7 ♗xf7+

After 7 ♕xb7 ♖b8 8 ♕a6 ♖b6 9 ♕a4 ♗e7 followed by ...0-0, Black's lead in development would be sufficient compensation for the pawn sacrificed.

7 ... ♘xf7
8 ♘xf7 ♕xf7
9 ♕xb7 ♔d7!

The sacrifice of the exchange is entirely sound and yields Black a strong counter-attack.

10 ♕xa8 ♕c4!
11 f3 *(D)*

Evidently forced.

B

11 ... ♗xf3!

By this unexpected combination Black secures the advantage. Incorrect would be, however, 11...♘d4 owing to 12 d3 ♕xd3 13 cxd4 ♗xf3 14 ♘c3!.

12 gxf3 ♘d4!
13 d3

This move loses at once. White's only chance was perhaps 13 cxd4,

1 Indeed, 12 ♔e1 ♘d4 13 ♕xf3 ♘xf3+ 14 ♔f1 ♘xg1 15 ♔xg1 e4 gives Black a clear advantage.

leading to the following variation: 13...♕xc1+ 14 ♔e2 ♕xh1 15 d5 ♕xh2+ 16 ♔d3 ♕g1! 17 ♕c6+ ♔d8, but Black's position is manifestly superior.

13 ... ♕xd3
14 cxd4 ♗e7!

On this move White has the sad choice between the loss of the queen or mate. He prefers the latter.

15 ♕xh8 ♗h4#

Game 7
Mieses – Alekhine
Scheveningen 1913
Centre Game

1 e4 e5
2 d4 exd4
3 ♕xd4

It is quite evident that such displacements of the queen at an early stage in the opening are not likely to reap any advantage. However, Black is compelled to play with precision, in order to give his opponent no time to start an attack against the kingside or even in the centre. For, no doubt, the white queen installed at g3 (via e3) would exercise pressure on Black's kingside if he eventually castles on that side.

3 ... ♘c6
4 ♕e3 ♗e7

Black could also have played 4...♘f6 for the following variation is mere bluff and eventually turns to Black's advantage: 5 e5 ♘g4 6 ♕e4 d5! 7 exd6+ ♗e6 8 ♗a6 (or 8 dxc7 ♕d1+!) 8...♕xd6 9 ♗xb7 ♕b4+! 10 ♕xb4 ♘xb4.

5 ♗d2 ♘f6
6 ♘c3 0-0
7 0-0-0 d5!

This advance, which at first sight appears somewhat risky in view of the position of White's d1-rook, will on the contrary allow Black to extract the maximum return from his advanced development. 7...d6 would result in almost a closed game and White would find time to complete his neglected development.

8 exd5 ♘xd5
9 ♕g3 ♗h4!

Providing without loss of time against the threat 10 ♗h6. Black's advantage is now evident.

10 ♕f3 ♗e6

The sacrifice initiated by this move is both full of promise and devoid of risk, for Black will have an equivalent in material for his queen. It would, however, have been more logical to adopt the following variation: 10...♘xc3 11 ♗xc3 ♕g5 12 ♗d2 (else 12...♗g4) 12...♕c5! 13 ♗e3 ♕a5, which would have given Black a dominating position without such complications as defy exact calculation.

11 ♗e3! *(D)*

Calling for the subsequent combination, for 11...♘ce7 would be bad because of 12 ♘xd5 ♗xd5 13 ♕h5 and 14 c4.

11 ... ♘xc3!

Black obtains rook, knight and pawn for his queen while maintaining the superior position. The sacrifice is therefore fully justified. Much less strong would be 11...♘cb4 12

a3 ♘xc3 13 ♖xd8 ♘ba2+ 14 ♔d2 ♘b1+ 15 ♔e1, and the two black knights would find themselves in a tragicomic situation.

12 ♖xd8 ♘xa2+
13 ♔b1 ♖axd8
14 ♗e2 ♘ab4
15 ♘h3 ♖fe8

Essential as a basis for all the subsequent combinations.

16 ♘f4

16 ♖d1 ♗d5 17 ♕h5 ♗f6 was no better, as Black threatens 18...♗e4.

16 ... ♗f5
17 ♖c1 g6

Black is preparing the combination ...♘xc2 followed by ...♘b4, which at present would not be sufficient, e.g. 17...♘xc2 18 ♖xc2 ♘b4 19 ♘d3 ♗e4 20 ♘xb4!.

18 g4

In order to exchange the dangerous black bishop.

18 ... ♗e4
19 ♕h3 ♗f6
20 ♗f3

Now White seems to be able to disentangle his forces, but nevertheless Black's position still remains very strong, even after the unavoidable exchange.

20 ... ♗xf3
21 ♕xf3 ♘e5
22 ♕e2 *(D)*

It is clear that 22 ♕xb7 ♖b8 would entail a rapid disintegration through the combined action of the rook and the f6-bishop.

22 ... c5!

A very important move which puts renewed vigour into Black's attack. White in particular threatened to force further simplifications by 23 c3 ♘bd3 24 ♘xd3 ♘xd3 25 ♖d1. By his last move Black frustrates this plan, and, if necessary, aims at posting a knight at d3, supported by ...c4. As White cannot reply 23 ♗xc5, because of 23...♘ed3 24 ♕xe8+ ♖xe8 25 ♘xd3 ♘c6, weakening his right wing[1], he has to try a

1 I am not sure what Alekhine means here. The ending seems to be dead drawn after 26 ♖d1, for example.

counter-attack which Black allows him no time to develop.

23 ♖g1 c4
24 h4 ♘d5

The renewed complications resulting from this move required the most exact calculations.

25 ♘xd5 ♖xd5
26 f4

26 g5 ♗g7 27 ♖d1 ♖b5 28 ♗d4 ♖e6 is also to Black's advantage[1].

26 ... ♘d3!

Black takes immediate advantage of the weakening of the white bishop resulting from 26 f4.

27 ♕f3

If White had played 27 cxd3 the sequel would have been 27...♖xd3 28 ♖g3 ♗d4! 29 ♕c2 (not 29 ♕xd3 cxd3 30 ♗xd4 ♖e1+ 31 ♔a2 d2! and wins) 29...♗xe3 30 ♕xc4 ♖ed8 with the better game. However, this variation is more favourable than the one chosen by White, after which Black can force the win by a fresh sacrifice.

27 ... ♖b5! *(D)*

Decisive! Now White has to take the knight, for after 28 b3 ♖a5 29 cxd3 Black could force the win by means of 29...cxd3[2] 30 ♔c1 ♗c3 31 ♔d1 ♖a1+. A curious position, for

although Black has only a rook for the queen, White is defenceless[3].

28 cxd3 ♖xb2+
29 ♔c1 cxd3
30 ♔d1

30 ♖g2 ♖c8+ 31 ♔d1 is merely an inversion of moves.

30 ... ♖c8!

Against the threat of 31...♖8c2, White's only defence was 31 ♖g2[4]. But it was in no way sufficient for a draw, despite the opinion of all the critics who annotated the game at the time it was played, and in this case Black would have won as follows: 31...♖b1+ 32 ♔d2 ♖b3 33 ♔d1 (33 ♔e1 ♖c1+ wins after 34 ♔f2 ♗xh4+ or 34 ♗xc1 d2+) 33...♗c3! 34 ♗c1 ♗b4! and White is helpless against 35...d2 and 35...♖b1.

---

1 This is very optimistic. After 29 ♕f1, Black can hardly prevent 30 f4 leading to further simplification and a clear advantage for White.

2 Note that in the original English edition of *Alekhine's Best Games*, this move is incorrectly given as 29...cxb3, which loses out of hand to 30 d4.

3 The line given by Alekhine wins beautifully after 32 ♗c1 ♖e1+! 33 ♖xe1 ♖xc1+ 34 ♔xc1 d2+ 35 ♔c2 dxe1♘+!. It is puzzling that, if this line was indeed Alekhine's intention, he did not give it to its conclusion.

4 However, after 31 ♕e4! I see no win for Black, as the queen is ready to take the d3-pawn after 31...♗c3 or 31...♖8c2, while 31...d2 may be met by 32 ♔e2.

This analysis shows the correctness of the sacrifice initiated on move 11, and the soundness of the final combination.

31 g5 ♖cc2!
32 ♔e1 ♖b1+
33 ♕d1 ♗c3+
0-1

Game 8
Alekhine – Nimzowitsch
All-Russian Masters,
St. Petersburg 1914
Ruy Lopez

1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 ♗b5 a6
4 ♗a4 ♘f6
5 0-0 ♘xe4

The most analysed variation of the Ruy Lopez. In the latest practical tests the results are somewhat in White's favour, and it occurs less and less in master play.

6 d4 b5
7 ♗b3 d5
8 dxe5 ♗e6
9 c3 ♗e7
10 ♘bd2

After 10 ♗e3 0-0 11 ♘bd2 ♘xd2 12 ♕xd2 ♘a5 Black has a satisfactory game. Less recommendable, however, are 11...f5 12 exf6 ♘xf6 13 ♘g5! and 11...♗g4 12 ♘xe4 dxe4 13 ♕d5!.

10 ... ♘c5

Better would have been 10...0-0 11 ♗c2 f5 12 exf6 ♘xf6, although in this case also White's game is somewhat preferable after 13 ♘b3 (not 13 ♘g5 because of 13...♗g4 14 f3 ♗c8!).

11 ♗c2 ♗g4

11...0-0 would be insufficient because of Bogoljubow's ingenious innovation in his game against Réti (Stockholm 1920): 12 ♘d4! ♘xe5 13 f4 ♗g4 14 ♕e1 ♗h4 15 ♕xe5 ♖e8 16 ♘c6 ♕d7 17 f5! and White must win.

12 ♖e1 0-0
13 ♘b3 ♘e4 *(D)*

If 13...♘e6 (Janowski-Lasker, Paris 1913) White obtains a fine attacking game after 14 ♕d3. The text move is an innovation which is refuted in the present game.

W

14 ♗f4!

Not 14 ♗xe4 dxe4 15 ♕xd8 ♖axd8 16 ♖xe4 ♖d1+ 17 ♘e1 ♗f5 18 ♖e2 ♗d3 19 ♖e3 ♗g5, with advantage to Black, whereas with the text move White threatens to win a pawn.

14 ... f5
15 exf6 ♘xf6
16 ♕d3 ♘e4

This pawn offer will ultimately prove to be insufficient, but Black's

position was already beset with difficulties. If, for instance, 16...♗h5 then 17 ♘h4! with a great positional superiority.

17 ♗.xc7 ♕d7

Obviously Black cannot afford 17..♕xc7 because of 18 ♕xd5+.

18 ♘e5! ♘xe5
19 ♗xe5 ♗h4

It is clear that Black cannot play 19..♖xf2 because of 20 ♖xe4.

20 ♗.g3 ♗xg3
21 hxg3 ♗f5

At first sight this move seems to create difficulties for White, for instance after 22 ♕e2, the manoeuvre 22...♗g4 would force the white queen back to d3.

22 ♕d4!

This definitely ensures an advantage, since the threat of ...♘xg3 by Black is illusory, e.g. 22...♘xg3 23 ♘c5 ♕d6 24 ♗b3! and wins. Consequently Black is now forced to look after his weak point at d5.

22 ... ♖fd8

22..♖ad8 would have been a little better, but the game was lost in any event.

23 ♖ad1 ♕c7 *(D)*

Renewing the threat of ...♘xg3.

24 ♘d2!

To this move Black cannot reply with 24...♘xg3 because of 25 ♗b3; nor is 24...♘xd2 feasible, on account of the following variation: 25 ♗xf5 ♘c4 26 ♗e6+ ♔h8 27 ♗xd5! ♘xb2 28 ♖bl ♘c4 29 ♗xa8! and wins.

24 ... ♘xf2

A desperate sacrifice. But similarly after 24...♗g6 25 ♗b3 ♘f6 26

W

♘f3 the win was only a question of technique.

25 ♗xf5 ♘xd1
26 ♖xd1 ♕xg3
27 ♗e6+ ♔h8
28 ♗xd5 ♖ac8
29 ♘e4 ♕h4
30 b3 ♖c6
31 ♕f2

More straightforward would have been 31 ♗xc6! ♖xd4 32 cxd4 and the passed pawn would have quickly become irresistible. But once the queens are exchanged the ending cannot present any difficulties for White.

31 ... ♕h5
32 ♕f3 ♕xf3

Evidently forced.

33 gxf3 g6
34 ♖d2 ♖b6
35 c4 bxc4
36 bxc4 ♖b1+
37 ♔f2 a5
38 c5 ♖c1
39 c6 ♔g7
40 ♗c4!

Winning the exchange as well, for after 40...♖c8 41 ♖d7+ ♔h6 42 ♗d5 Black cannot prevent 43 ♘d6, or if

40...♖xd2+ 41 ♘xd2 followed by 42 c7 and Black loses at once.

40 ... ♖xc4
41 ♖xd8 ♖xc6
42 ♖d7+ ♔h6
43 ♔g3 ♖c4

Or 43...♖c2 44 f4 ♖xa2 45 ♘g5 and the mate cannot be avoided.

44 ♘f2! ♔g5

If 44...♖a4 45 ♘g4+ ♔h5 46 ♖d5+ g5 47 ♖d6 and mate to follow. Or 44...g5 45 ♘g4+, followed by 46 ♘e5+ and White wins.

45 ♖d5+ ♔f6
46 ♖xa5 1-0

Game 9

Alekhine – Marshall

St. Petersburg International 1914

Petroff's Defence

1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘f6
3 ♘xe5 d6
4 ♘f3 ♘xe4
5 d4 d5
6 ♗d3 ♗d6
7 c4

This variation of the Petroff does not cause Black any difficulty. White could secure better chances by 3 d4 (Steinitz), 5 ♕e2 (Lasker), or even 5 ♘c3.

7 ... ♗b4+!
8 ♘bd2 ♘xd2

This exchange, which permits White quite an appreciable advantage in development, hardly appears justified. The correct line of play was 8...0-0 9 0-0 ♗xd2! 10 ♗xd2 ♗g4 with at least an equal game.

9 ♗xd2 ♕e7+
10 ♕e2 ♕xe2+

It is interesting to notice that this plausible queen exchange is later on shown up as a decisive mistake. Black must first play 10...♗xd2+ 11 ♔xd2 ♕xe2+ 12 ♗xe2 dxc4 13 ♗xc4 0-0 after which White would have maintained a slight positional superiority, but Black's game would still remain fully defensible.

11 ♔xe2 ♗xd2
12 ♔xd2 ♗e6

If now 12...dxc4, then 13 ♖he1+! with still greater effect than in the actual game, White having preserved his bishop for the attack against his opponent's undeveloped position.

13 cxd5 ♗xd5
14 ♖he1+ ♔d8
15 ♗e4! ♗xe4

Forced, for if 15...c6 White would win a pawn at once by 16 ♗xd5 cxd5 17 ♖e5.

16 ♖xe4 ♖e8

This move was absolutely necessary to prevent the threatened doubling of White's rooks on the open e-file.

17 ♖ae1 ♖xe4
18 ♖xe4 ♘c6 *(D)*
19 ♖g4!

The winning manoeuvre. On the other hand, 19 ♘g5 was insufficient, on account of 19...♔d7!. Now Black is going to lose a pawn by force.

19 ... g6
20 ♖h4! ♔e7

Best in the circumstances, for after 20...h5 21 g4 followed by 22

W

gxh5 White would establish a passed pawn.

21 ♖xh7 ♖d8
22 ♖h4 ♖d5
23 ♖e4+!

Forcing the retreat of Black's king, for after 23...♔f6 24 ♔c3, the threat of 25 ♖e8 would have been very dangerous for the opponent.

23 ... ♔f8
24 ♔c3 ♖f5

Contemplating ...♘e7-d5+ in order to cause White the maximum technical difficulties.

25 ♖e2 a6

If 25...♘e7 White would have replied 26 ♖e5 and the continuation of the game would scarcely be modified.

26 a3 ♘e7
27 ♖e5! ♖f6

After the exchange of rooks, Black could no longer save the position.

28 ♔d3

Preparing 29 ♖c5, which Black prevents by his reply, but at the cost of a new weakness at c7 which White will proceed to exploit without delay.

28 ... b6
29 ♖e2!

White, as we see from the sequel, proposes to sacrifice a pawn in order to occupy the 7th rank with his rook and thus to obtain a dangerous passed pawn. This manoeuvre is the shortest and surest means of securing victory.

29 ... ♘d5
30 ♔e4 ♘f4

Or 30...♖e6+ 31 ♘e5 ♘f6+ 32 ♔f3 and White dominates the whole board.

31 ♖c2 ♘xg2
32 ♘e5!

Not at once 32 ♖xc7 on account of 32...♖f4+ followed by 33...♖xf3, whereas now, since White threatens 33 ♘d7+, Black cannot save his c-pawn.

32 ... ♔e8
33 ♖xc7 ♖xf2
34 ♘c4! *(D)*

A very important move. The white knight is going to be posted on b7, where it will support the advance of the passed d-pawn by covering d6 and d8.

B

34 ... b5[1]
35 ♘d6+ ♔f8
36 d5 f6
37 ♘b7! ♘f4
38 b4 g5
39 d6 ♘e6
40 ♔d5!

The *coup de grâce*. White's rook cannot be captured on account of 40...♘xc7 41 dxc7 ♖c2 42 ♘c5!.

Similarly, after 40...♖e2 White would win easily by 41 ♔c6 ♘d4+ 42 ♔b6 so, as a last resource, Black tries to exploit his kingside pawns after the sacrifice of the rook for the passed pawn. But this manoeuvre is foredoomed to failure.

40 ... ♘f4+
41 ♔c6 ♖xh2
42 ♘c5

Preventing the sacrifice of Black's knight for the pawn, and winning a whole rook.

42 ... ♖d2
43 ♖c8+ ♔f7
44 d7 ♘e6
45 ♘xe6 ♔xe6
46 d8♕ ♖xd8
47 ♖xd8 g4
48 ♖e8+ ♔f7
49 ♖e2 f5
50 ♔d5 ♔f6
51 ♔d4 f4
52 ♔e4 ♔g5
53 ♖c2 f3
54 ♖d2 ♔h4
55 ♔f4 1-0

Game 10

Alekhine – Tarrasch

St.

Falkbeer Counter-Gambit

1 f4 e5
2 e4

From's Gambit Accepted (2 fxe5 d6 3 exd6) offers White only an equal game at best.

2 ... d5
3 exd5 e4
4 d3 ♘f6

At the time the present game was played, the variations springing from this move were considered advantageous for White, thanks especially to analyses by the late Simon Alapin. Recently, however, Dr. Tarrasch succeeded in invalidating this opinion, introducing in his game against Spielmann at Mährisch-Ostrau 1924, an improvement of great importance (see note to Black's 6th move).

5 dxe4 ♘xe4
6 ♘f3 ♗f5

An innovation which the sequel shows to be insufficient. The correct line of play, demonstrated by Dr. Tarrasch in the game mentioned above, is 6...♗c5 7 ♕e2 ♗f5! and if

1 Here Black missed a much better defence: 34...♖f6, intending either ...b5 or ...♖e6+. After the natural reply 35 d5, it isn't easy for White to evade the checks, for example 35...♖f4+ 36 ♔d3 (36 ♔e5 ♖f5+ 37 ♔d6 ♖f6+) 36...♖f3+ 37 ♔d4 (37 ♔e2 ♖f6) 37...♖f4+ 38 ♔c3 ♖f3+ 39 ♔b4 ♖f4, threatening either ...b5 or ...♘e3.

8 g4? then 8...0-0!, with a winning sacrificial attack.

7 ♗e3

This move deprives Black of his best chance on the diagonal a7-g1, and leaves him without compensation for the pawn he has given up.

7 ... c6
8 ♗c4 b5

Trying to keep his opponent busy lest he definitely secure his position by castling.

9 ♗b3

White could equally well play 9 ♗e2 a6 10 a4! b4 11 dxc6 ♕xd1+ 12 ♗xd1 ♘xc6, but the combination based on the text move offers better prospects.

9 ... c5
10 d6!

Bringing about a simplification which is advantageous in view of White's extra pawn. Black cannot reply 10...♕xd6 because of 11 ♕xd6 followed by 12 ♗d5.

10 ... c4
11 ♕d5 ♘d7
12 ♕xf5 ♘xd6
13 ♕d5 ♗e7
14 0-0 0-0
15 ♘c3 ♘f6
16 ♕d2 cxb3

Just in time, for White threatened 17 ♘xb5.

17 axb3 *(D)*

White's advantage in material is in no way diminished by his having a doubled pawn, for he will always be in a position to obtain a passed pawn by advancing his c-pawn.

17 ... b4
18 ♘d5 ♘f5
19 ♘xe7+ ♕xe7

White still has a slight weakness in the centre, which he will subsequently eliminate by holding and strengthening d4.

20 ♖fe1 ♖fd8
21 ♗d4! ♘xd4
22 ♘xd4 ♕c5
23 ♖ad1

Intending to play c3 once the black rooks are doubled on the d-file.

23 ... ♖d5
24 h3 ♖ad8
25 c3 *(D)*

After this move White's position is invulnerable. Black is forced to

adopt a waiting policy, which is all the more distressing as he is minus a pawn. White's next moves aim at unpinning the knight, which will take a decisive part in the final onslaught when the white rooks are doubled on the e-file.

25 ... h6
26 ♕d3 ♕d6
27 ♕f3 ♘h5

An inoffensive demonstration which cannot hinder White's plans.

28 ♖e4 ♘f6

Of course not 28...f5 because of 29 ♖e6.

29 ♖e3 ♘h5
30 ♖f1 ♘f6
31 ♖fe1

To be able to play 32 ♖e5 in answer to 31...♘h5.

31 ... ♕c5
32 ♔h2 ♖c8
33 ♖1e2

A subtle preparation for the following attacking move.

33 ... ♔f8
34 ♖e5!

Now Black cannot play 34...bxc3 35 bxc3 ♕xc3 because of 36 ♖c2.

34 ... ♖cd8
35 ♘f5

Threatening, amongst other things, 36 c4 ♖xe5 37 fxe5 followed by 38 e6.

35 ... ♕b6
36 ♕g3 ♘h5
37 ♕h4 *(D)*

B

Threatening mate in three by 38 ♖e8+!.

37 ... ♖xe5

A desperate move in an untenable position. Against 37...♘f6, which was recommended by Dr. Tarrasch in the tournament book as providing a sufficient defence for the time being, White had prepared the following attractive winning combination: 38 ♘xh6! gxh6 39 ♖e6! fxe6 (the alternatives are 39...♖5d6 40 ♕xf6 ♖xe6 41 ♖xe6 and 39...♖8d6 40 ♕xh6+ leading to mate in two[1]) 40 ♕xf6+ ♔g8 41 ♖xe6 ♖5d6 42 ♕g6+ ♔h8 (or 42...♔f8 43 ♕f5+ ♔ any 44 ♖e7) 43 ♕xh6+ ♔g8 44 ♕g6+ ♔h8 45 ♕h5+! ♔g8 46 ♖e7! and mate is unavoidable. Such a finale would have given the game a good chance of a brilliancy prize.

38 fxe5 ♖d1
39 ♖e3

1 Black should certainly try 39...♘g4+ 40 hxg4 fxe6, when the continuation given by Alekhine no longer works, because thanks to the open h-file Black can pin the queen with ...♖h6 at the end.

White could also have captured on h5 and then brought his king to h4. The text move is still more simple and hinders 39...g6, which would prove disastrous for Black after 40 ♕e7+ ♔g8 41 ♕e8+ ♔h7 42 ♕xf7+ ♔h8 43 ♘e7! and wins.

39 ... ♕g6
40 ♕xb4+ 1-0

Game 11
Alekhine – Fahrni
Mannheim 1914
French Defence

1 e4 e6
2 d4 d5
3 ♘c3 ♘f6
4 ♗g5 ♗e7
5 e5 ♘fd7
6 h4!

This energetic move has been played in off-hand games by the ingenious Paris amateur, M. Eugene Chatard, and previously by the Viennese master, A. Albin. It was during the present game that it was introduced in a master tournament.

6 ... ♗xg5

6...0-0, adopted on several occasions in international tournaments in recent years, was refuted by Bogoljubow in his game against Spielmann at Vienna 1922, which went on 7 ♗d3 c5 8 ♘h3! ♖e8 9 ♘b5 f5 10 ♘d6 cxd4 11 ♘xe8 ♕xe8 12 ♗b5! and White should win.

6...c5 seems somewhat better, and if 7 ♘b5 then Black replies 7...f6.

7 hxg5 ♕xg5
8 ♘h3 ♕e7

After 8...♕h6 Black's queen would be in a precarious position, and in this case White could gradually have strengthened his position by 9 g3 and 10 ♗g2.

9 ♘f4 ♘f8 *(D)*

White refutes this plausible move by an enterprising attack, but against any other reply he would have obtained ample compensation for the pawn sacrificed.

A particularly interesting continuation has been suggested here by Bogoljubow: 9...a6 10 ♕g4 g6 11 0-0-0 c5 12 ♕g3! ♘b6 13 dxc5 ♕xc5 14 ♗d3 ♕f8 15 ♗e4!! and White's knight will force its way into the hostile camp via e4 or d5, with decisive effect.

W

10 ♕g4!

Threatening both 11 ♕xg7 and taking on d5. Black's reply is therefore compulsory.

10 ... f5
11 exf6 gxf6
12 0-0-0

White again threatens 13 ♘xd5, his king having been removed from the e-file.

12 ... c6
13 ♖e1 ♔d8

There is no other way to develop the queenside. If 13...♗d7 the sacrifice of the knight at d5 would once more be decisive.

14 ♖h6!

In order to tie up Black's pieces still more, on account of the pressure on his f-pawn. From now on all Black's moves are forced.

14 ... e5
15 ♕h4 ♘bd7
16 ♗d3

Threatening, among other moves, 17 ♗f5.

16 ... e4 *(D)*

17 ♕g3!

An essential preliminary for the ensuing sacrifice. White now threatens to win off-hand by 18 ♘fxd5. Black cannot play 17...♕d6, for after 18 ♗xe4! dxe4 19 ♖xe4! he would be defenceless against 20 ♕g7!.

17 ... ♕f7

The only resource!

18 ♗xe4!

This sacrifice, which must be accepted by the opponent, wins the game in a few moves.

18 ... dxe4
19 ♘xe4 ♖g8

If 19...♕xa2, 20 ♘xf6! ♘xf6 21 ♕g7! and wins.

20 ♕a3!

If 20 ♘d6 Black could still have defended himself by 20...♕xa2 seeing that White's discovered checks do not lead to mate. But after the text move he has no longer an adequate defence.

20 ... ♕g7

If 20...♕e7, 21 ♕a5+ b6 22 ♕c3 and wins[1].

21 ♘d6! ♘b6
22 ♘e8!

Forcing the win of the queen, or else mate, e.g. 22...♕d7 23 ♘xf6 or 22...♘c4 23 ♕c5 ♕f7 24 ♖xf6.

22 ... ♕f7

23 ♕d6+ and mates in two more moves.

Game 12
Alekhine – Isakov
Moscow Championship 1919
Danish Gambit

1 e4 e5
2 d4 exd4

1 This isn't especially clear after 22...♕g7 23 ♘d6 ♘b8!, although 24 ♕e3! is certainly very dangerous; in any case 21 ♕xe7+ ♔xe7 22 ♘xf6+ ♔f7 23 ♘xg8 ♔xg8 24 ♖e7 gives White an easily winning ending.

3 c3 dxc3

Declining the gambit by 3...d5 or 3...♕e7 is, in my opinion, preferable.

4 ♘xc3!

White, by giving up only one pawn, secures as vigorous an attack as in the Danish Gambit proper, which has been completely neglected since Schlechter's discovery 4 ♗c4 cxb2 5 ♗xb2 d5! 6 ♗xd5 ♘f6!.

4 ... ♗b4

In a game Alekhine-Verlinsky, played at Odessa in 1918, Black continued 4...♘c6. There followed: 5 ♗c4 d6 6 ♘f3 ♘f6 7 ♕b3 ♕d7 8 ♘g5 ♘e5 (8...♘d8 is better) 9 ♗b5 c6 10 f4! cxb5 11 fxe5 dxe5 12 ♗e3! ♗d6 13 ♘xb5 0-0 14 ♖d1 ♘e8 15 0-0 ♕e7 16 ♘xd6 ♘xd6 17 ♕a3! (not 17 ♕b4 because of 17...♘f5) 17...♖d8 18 ♘xf7 ♗g4 19 ♖xd6 ♖e8 20 ♗g5 ♕c7 21 ♕b3 ♗e2 22 ♘xe5+ ♔h8 23 ♖c1 ♖f8! *(D)* —an ingenious resource which very nearly saves the game.

24 ♕d1!! (White's only winning move) 24...♕a5 25 ♕xe2 ♕xe5 26 ♖d5 1-0.

5 ♗c4 d6

Black need not fear 6 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 7 ♕b3+ ♗e6 8 ♕xb4 ♘c6! 9 ♕xb7 ♘d4, which, on the contrary, would give him a very dangerous attack.

6 ♘f3 ♗xc3+
7 bxc3 ♘c6
8 0-0 ♘f6
9 ♗a3

The immediate 9 e5 is more in the spirit of the opening and if 9...dxe5 10 ♕b3, with prospects of a strong attack for White. After the text move Black could have secured a satisfactory game by 9...♗g4 10 ♕b3 ♘a5! 11 ♗xf7+ ♔f8 12 ♕a4 ♗xf3 13 gxf3 ♔xf7 14 ♕xa5 ♖e8.

9 ... 0-0
10 e5 ♘g4

After 10...♘e8 11 h3! ♗f5 12 ♖e1 Black would have a very precarious game, the f8-rook and e8-knight both being immobilised. He therefore prefers to give back the pawn in order to complete his development.

11 exd6 cxd6
12 ♗xd6 ♖e8
13 ♖e1!

Preparing an eventual sacrifice of the light-squared bishop. It is clear that Black cannot play 13...♖xe1+ 14 ♕xe1 ♕xd6 15 ♕e8+ ♕f8 16 ♗xf7+ ♔h8 17 ♕xf8#.

13 ... ♗f5 *(D)*

Preferable, however, would be 13...♖xe1+ 14 ♕xe1 ♗f5 15 ♖d1 ♕e8 16 ♘d4! and Black, although having a slightly inferior game, is safe from immediate disaster.

14 ♗xf7+!

A pretty combination. Its object is to keep the g4-knight away from f6 by forcing the black king to occupy that square.

14 ... ♔xf7
15 ♕d5+ ♔f6

Evidently compulsory, for example 15...♗e6 16 ♘g5+, or 15...♔g6 16 ♖xe8 ♕xe8 17 ♘h4+ and White wins.

16 h3 ♗e6

Or if 16...♘h6, then 17 g4[1].

17 ♕d2! ♘h6
18 g4

Regaining by force the piece he has sacrificed.

18 ... g6!

The only resource.

If 18...♘f7 or 18...♘g8, White can win with the following problem-like variation: 19 ♕f4+ ♔g6 20 ♗e7!![2] ♕xe7 21 ♖xe6+ and mates.

19 g5+

Also very strong would be 19 ♕xh6 ♕xd6 20 g5+ ♔f7! 21 ♕xh7+ ♔f8 22 ♕xg6 with a winning attack[3].

After the text move, which wins back the piece, the black king contrives to escape danger temporarily.

19 ... ♔f7
20 gxh6 ♕f6
21 ♘g5+ ♔g8
22 f4 ♖ad8
23 ♖ad1 ♗c4 *(D)*

Black hopes to take advantage of the fact that White's bishop is pinned in order to seize the open e-file, but White's reply destroys this last hope.

24 ♗e7!

The same move as in the variation referred to after Black's 18th move, but with an entirely different aim.

24 ... ♖xd2

---

1 16...♕a5 offers good defensive chances, as the ending arising from 17 ♕xa5 (17 ♗c5 ♕d8) 17...♘xa5 18 hxg4 ♗xg4 is very drawish due to the opposite-coloured bishops.

2 Why not 20 ♖xe6+ and 21 ♕f5+, mating at once?

3 After 22...♖ad8 it is very hard for White to reinforce his attack, so the move Alekhine played appears much stronger.

Compulsory, for both 24...♘xe7 25 ♕xd8 and 24...♕xe7 25 ♖xe7 win for White.

25 ♗xf6 ♖xe1+
26 ♖xe1 ♗f7
27 ♘e4

Winning at least the h-pawn and at the same time creating a mating net.

27 ... ♖xa2
28 ♗g7 ♗b3
29 ♘f6+ ♔f7
30 ♘xh7 1-0

Game 13
Rabinovich – Alekhine
All-Russian Masters', Moscow 1920
Queen's Pawn Game

1 d4 ♘f6
2 ♘f3 b6
3 c4 e6
4 ♘c3

Rubinstein's system, namely 4 g3 and 5 ♗g2 (or on the next move), is considered better.

4 ... ♗b7
5 e3

This allows Black to occupy the e4-square with effect, and thus to secure at least an equal game.

5 ... ♗b4
6 ♕c2 ♘e4
7 ♗d3 f5

In this manner Black has brought about a favourable position, resembling the Dutch Defence.

8 0-0

White could here have selected another line of play: 8 ♗d2 ♗xc3 9 ♗xc3 0-0 10 0-0-0 after which Black seizes the initiative by 10...a5! and 11...♘a6 (Sämisch-Alekhine, Pistyan 1922).

8 ... ♗xc3
9 bxc3 0-0
10 ♘d2

The only way to enforce the advance of the e-pawn.

10 ... ♕h4!

An important developing move; if 11 g3, then 11...♘g5! is good for Black, since 12 e4 fxe4! leads to a Black win.

11 f3 ♘xd2
12 ♗xd2 ♘c6

12...c5 would not be so good, because of 13 d5!.

13 e4 fxe4 *(D)*

W

14 ♗xe4

White appears to overrate the strength of his position. More accurate was 14 fxe4 e5! 15 d5 ♘e7 16 c5! ♘g6 (not 16...bxc5 because of 17 d6 and 18 ♕b3+) 17 cxb6 axb6 with about an equal game.

14 ... ♘a5

This secures Black a slight advantage, should White choose the

best variation 15 ♗xb7 ♘xb7 16 ♖fe1, by reason of White's doubled pawns on the c-file.

15 ♖ae1

This plausible move leads to the loss of a pawn.

15 ... ♗xe4!
16 ♖xe4 ♕h5
17 ♕a4

There was no satisfactory defence to the c-pawn, e.g. 17 ♖e5 ♖f5! 18 ♖xf5 ♕xf5 19 ♕xf5 exf5 and Black has virtually a won endgame.

17 ... ♘xc4!

Now Black has every justification for anticipating victory, yet in spite of his advantage in material it is not easy to achieve it, for White's position contains no weak points.

18 ♖e2

Clearly, after 18 ♕xc4 d5 19 ♕b5 a6 Black wins.

18 ... b5
19 ♕b3 ♕f5
20 ♖fe1 ♖ab8
21 ♗c1 a5
22 ♖e4 a4
23 ♕d1 ♖be8

Having consolidated the dominating position of his knight, Black now prepares an action in the centre which will enable him to shatter the hostile position, although allowing his opponent apparent compensations.

24 ♕e2 c5!

This temporarily increases the range of action of White's bishop, yet by this reason the bishop later on becomes an object of attack. This plan demanded an exhaustive examination of the tactical possibilities of the position, and was not undertaken until Black was perfectly convinced that it would ultimately result in his favour.

25 ♗e3 cxd4
26 ♗xd4 e5! *(D)*

The beginning of a series of extremely interesting complications. White cannot play 27 ♗xe5 because of 27...d5!, and the variation 27 ♗c5 d5 28 ♖xc4[1] bxc4 29 ♗xf8 ♕xf8 would also be to Black's advantage.

27 f4!

Undoubtedly the best chance. White intends to answer 27...d5 with 28 ♖xe5 ♘xe5 29 ♗xe5, which would give him quite a defensible game.

1 The key line is 28 ♖d4!?, but Black can still win by 28...exd4! (28...♖d8 29 ♗xf8 exd4 30 ♗xg7!) 29 ♕xe8 ♖xe8 30 ♖xe8+ ♔f7 31 ♖f8+ ♔e6 32 ♖xf5 dxc3!! (32...♔xf5 33 ♗xd4 is a draw) 33 ♖f8 ♔d7! 34 ♖f4 (34 ♖f7+ ♔c6 35 ♗e7 h6) 34...c2 35 ♖xc4+ dxc4 36 ♗e3 b4 and the pawns run through.

27 ... d6

Sufficing for the protection of the pawn, because of the mate after 28 fxe5 dxe5 29 ♗xe5? ♘xe5 30 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 31 ♕xe5 ♕f2+ 32 ♔h1 ♕f1+.

28 h3

Again threatening Black's e5-pawn, which he will at once defend in an indirect manner.

28 ... ♖e6!
29 fxe5 dxe5
30 ♗c5! *(D)*

Not 30 ♗xe5 because of 30...♖fe8 31 ♖f1 ♕g6 32 ♖xc4 ♖xe5 and wins. The text move appears full of promise, seeing that the black rook cannot leave the f-file, e.g. 30...♖d8 31 ♖f1 ♕g6 32 ♖g4 ♕h6 33 ♕f3! and wins.

B

30 ... ♖f7!

The initial move of a sacrificial combination intended to yield a decisive attack. As a mere defensive move, 30...♖ff6 would be adequate, as White could not answer 31 ♖b1 because of 31...♘d2!.

31 ♖b1

Seemingly recovering his pawn with a good game, for 31...♘d2 is now impossible on account of 32 ♕xd2, threatening ♕d8+.

31 ... h6

This parries the threat of mate and compels the opponent to persevere on the perilous path he is following.

32 ♖xb5 ♘d2!
33 ♖xa4

White has no longer any defence, for if 33 ♖g4 Black would win in an analogous manner to that in the text.

If 33 ♖e3, then 33...♖g6 (this diversion was the special point of playing the f8-rook to f7 instead of f6 on the 30th move) 34 ♖b8+ ♔h7 35 ♖b2 (or 35 ♕xd2 ♕f1+ 36 ♔h2 ♖f2 and wins) 35...♘f3+ 36 ♔h1 ♕xh3+! and mates next move.

33 ... ♕c2

After this move, which explains the foregoing sacrifice of two pawns, White is lost, owing to his inability to withdraw his rooks to secure the defence of the first rank.

34 ♖a8+ ♔h7
35 ♔h1 ♖f1+
36 ♗g1 *(D)*

B

36 ... ♖xg1+!

A pretty final combination.

37 ♔xg1 ♕c1+
38 ♔f2 ♖f6+
39 ♔e3

If 39 ♔g3 ♘f1+. Now Black's next move wins the queen or mates.

39 ... ♘b1+!

0-1

Game 14
Alekhine – Teichmann
Match (2), Berlin 1921
King's Gambit Declined

1 e4 e5
2 ♘c3 ♘c6

Here the best move is 2...♘f6 followed, if White replies 3 ♗c4, by 3...♘xe4!.

3 ♗c4 ♘f6
4 d3 ♗c5
5 f4 d6
6 ♘f3

By transposition of moves White has reached a safe and very promising position from the King's Gambit Declined.

6 ... ♗g4

A stronger move was 6...♗e6 and if 7 ♗b5 then 7...a6 8 ♗xc6+ bxc6 9 ♕e2 exf4! with approximate equality (Spielmann-Dr. Tarrasch, Pistyan 1922). After the text move White obtains a slight positional advantage.

7 ♘a4 *(D)*

The only correct move. On the other hand, the old move 7 h3 is inadequate, on account of 7...♗xf3 8 ♕xf3 exf4! (but not 8...♘d4 9 ♕g3! ♕e7! 10 fxe5 dxe5 11 ♔d1 with the better game) 9 ♕xf4 (if 9 ♗xf4 ♘d4! 10 ♕g3 ♘h5) 9...♘e5 and White, due to the threat 10...♘h5, has no way to avoid the exchange of his light-squared bishop, after which Black has emerged from all the difficulties of the opening.

7 ... a6

Hardly customary, and certainly not best. His opponent's previous move clearly showed his intention to eliminate the c5-bishop, and it was therefore futile to force him to execute his threat.

1) An interesting line, which is, however, advantageous for White, was 7...♗xf3 8 ♕xf3 ♘d4 9 ♕d1 b5 10 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 11 ♘xc5 dxc5 12 fxe5 followed by 13 0-0+, and here White would have formidable attacking chances, quite apart from the two pawns he has in return for the sacrificed piece.

2) In a game Alekhine-O.Tenner (a Berlin amateur), played at Cologne in 1907, the latter continued 7...exf4 8 ♘xc5 dxc5 9 ♗xf4 ♘h5 10 ♗e3 ♘e5? 11 ♘xe5 ♗xd1 12 ♗xf7+ ♔e7 13 ♗xc5+ ♔f6 14 0-0+ ♔xe5 15 ♖f5#.

Comparatively best was 7...♗b6 or 7...0-0.

8 ♘xc5 dxc5
9 0-0 ♕e7
10 h3

Securing the advantage of two bishops against two knights.

10 ... ♗xf3
11 ♕xf3 0-0
12 ♗e3 exf4
13 ♕xf4 ♘e5
14 ♗b3 ♖ae8

Further loss of time, which seriously compromises Black's game. The following was equally disadvantageous: 14...c4 15 dxc4 ♘g6 16 ♕g5! ♕xe4 17 ♖ae1 with the better game. On the other hand 14...♖ad8 would clearly have been better, as it would make the advance of White's centre pawns more difficult.

15 ♕f2!

With the double threat 16 ♗xc5 and 16 ♗g5.

15 ... ♘fd7
16 ♖ad1 b6
17 c3

Preparing 18 d4, against which there is no defence. The loss of the present game by Black can be attributed to the fact that his knights lack bases in the centre, and that in positions of this character the possession of the two bishops constitutes a decisive advantage for the opponent.

17 ... ♘g6 *(D)*
18 ♕f5!

The first move of a new regrouping, the completion of which will give White a won game. White's dark-squared bishop is to be posted on g3, whence it will exercise pressure on Black's c7-pawn, which will be weakened still further by the imminent opening of the c-file after White's d4. Throughout the execution of this plan Black will find himself reduced to absolute passivity.

18 ... ♔h8
19 ♗f2! ♖d8
20 ♗g3 ♘de5
21 d4 cxd4
22 cxd4 ♘c6
23 d5 ♘ce5
24 h4!

This threat to win a piece compels Black to weaken his position still more, thus enabling White's rook to break through into his game.

24 ... ♕c5+
25 ♔h2

Not 25 ♗f2 because of the reply 25...♕d6.

25 ... f6

Evidently forced.

26 ♖c1 ♕d6
27 ♖c6 ♕e7

If 27...♕d7, 28 ♕xd7 ♖xd7 29 h5 ♘g4+ 30 ♔h3 ♘6e5 31 ♖fc1! and wins.

28 ♖e6! ♕d7

29 h5 ♘e7
30 ♕h3 ♘f7

Again forced, because of the double threat 31 ♗xe5 and 31 h6.

31 ♗f4 h6
32 ♕c3! ♘d6

Permitting White a decisive sacrifice. 32...♖c8 was a little better, upon which White would have continued his winning attack by 33 ♕b4 and 34 ♗a4.

33 ♗xh6!

Putting an end to all resistance, for if 33...gxh6, then 34 ♖1xf6 ♔g8 35 ♕g3+ and White mates in a few moves.

33 ... ♘xe4

A desperate move.

34 ♖xe4 ♘xd5
35 ♕c1! 1-0

If now 35...gxh6, then 36 ♗xd5 ♕xd5 37 ♕xh6+ ♔g8 38 ♖g4+ ♔f7 39 ♕xf6+ and wins.

Game 15
Selezniev – Alekhine
Triberg 1921
Queen's Pawn Game

1 d4 ♘f6
2 ♘f3 b6

This move is possible before ...e6 because White has played 2 ♘f3, but after 2 c4 it is not good on account of 3 ♘c3 ♗b7 4 ♕c2!.

3 g3

In my opinion best, as White's bishop on g2 is at least as strong as Black's on b7.

3 ... ♗b7
4 ♗g2 d6

This system of development was introduced by the author in one of his match-games against Teichmann at Berlin 1921. Its only defect is that c6 may eventually become weak—a weakness, however, which does not present very great drawbacks.

5 0-0

In the course of the same tournament, a game Brinckmann-Alekhine continued as follows:

5 b3 ♘bd7 6 ♗b2 e5 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 0-0 e4! 9 ♘e5 ♗d6 10 ♘xd7 ♕xd7 11 ♘d2 ♕e6 12 e3 h5! 13 ♕e2 h4 14 ♘c4 ♗c5 15 ♖fd1 ♗d5 16 ♘a3 hxg3 17 hxg3 a6 18 c4 ♗b7 19 ♘c2 ♕f5 20 ♗a3 ♗xa3 21 ♘xa3 ♘g4 22 ♘c2 ♖h2 23 ♕d2 ♔e7! 24 ♘b4 ♖ah8 25 ♕e2 *(D)*

B

25...♕f3!! 0-1.

5 ... ♘bd7
6 ♗f4

To prevent 6...e5.

6 ... h6

Threatening ...g5 in some combinative variations, but the real intention is to make this advance only when Black is assured of an immediate and definite advantage.

7 ♘c3

Allowing the following demonstration aimed at the d-pawn.

7 ... c5

8 d5

8 dxc5 ♘xc5 would have given Black a very promising position.

8 ... b5!

Otherwise White, by playing 9 a4!, would prevent Black from seizing the initiative on the queenside.

9 ♘e1

White's d-pawn is certainly more valuable than Black's b-pawn.

9 ... a6

10 a4 b4

11 ♘e4 ♘xe4

12 ♗xe4 g6

So as to develop the bishop at g7, the object of the manoeuvre commencing with 7...c5.

13 c4 bxc3

Absolutely essential to prevent White from blocking the queenside, which would have enabled him to undertake a strong attack, without fear of distraction, by advancing his centre pawns.

14 bxc3 ♗g7

15 ♖b1 ♖b8

16 c4 0-0

17 ♕c2 a5

Preparing the following sacrifice of the exchange.

18 ♘f3 ♕c7

19 ♗d2 ♗a6

20 ♗d3 *(D)*

B

20 ... ♖b4!!

Absolutely correct. The resulting strong passed pawn, supported by the bishop on g7, and the possibilities of attacking White's c-pawn are, on the whole, worth more than the exchange.

21 ♗xb4 cxb4

22 ♘d2 ♘c5

But this move is illogical. Black could have demonstrated the correctness of his sacrifice more clearly by 22...♖c8 followed by 23...♘b6 or also 23...♘e5, and if necessary 23...♗c3.

23 ♘b3!

White plays a strong move, the value of which was not appreciated in good time. If Black replies to it by 23...♘xa4, White could advantageously continue 24 ♖a1! ♘c5 25 ♘xa5 ♗xa1 26 ♖xa1 ♔h7 (else 27 ♗xg6!) 27 ♘c6. Or if 23...♖c8 24 ♘xc5 ♕xc5 25 ♖fc1 ♗c3 26 ♕b3 (not 26 ♖b3 ♗xc4 27 ♖xc3 bxc3 28 ♗xg6, on account of 28...♔g7![1])

1 Here 29 ♗f5! is good for White, but, by substituting 28...♗xd5, Alekhine's opinion is vindicated.

26...♕d4 27 ♖xc3 bxc3 28 ♖c1 and White cannot lose.

23 ... ♘d7

Thus Black must submit to this temporary retreat, while threatening 24...♖c8. But White seizes the opportunity to eliminate his weak c-pawn by a counter-sacrifice which opens new lines and affords at the same time excellent chances.

24 c5! ♗xd3

25 exd3!

After 25 ♕xd3 dxc5 Black's two passed pawns would soon decide the game. The text move parries this danger, whilst opening the e-file for White. On the other hand there is the drawback, very slight though it may be, of weakening the king's position, and particularly the square f3, a weakness which Black will exploit later on.

25 ... dxc5

26 ♖fe1

Against the plausible move 26 ♕c4, which was equally to be considered, Black would have retorted 26...♕d6! 27 ♘xa5 ♘e5 28 ♕b3 ♖a8[1] with excellent chances.

26 ... ♘e5

27 ♖e3

The attempt to give back the exchange would have been insufficient: 27 ♕xc5 ♘f3+ 28 ♔f1 ♕xc5 29 ♘xc5 ♘d2+! 30 ♔e2 ♘xb1 31 ♖xb1 ♖d8! and Black wins a pawn.

27 ... ♖c8

28 ♖c1 ♕d7!

29 d4 ♘g4

30 ♖e4

If 30 dxc5 ♘xe3 31 fxe3, then 31...♕xa4! (but not 31...♕xd5).

30 ... c4!

Now Black's queenside pawns become very threatening. The question is, how to maintain them! The game now enters upon its most critical phase.

31 ♘c5

If 31 ♘xa5 obviously 31...♕xd5 and Black wins easily.

31 ... ♕f5!

32 ♕e2! *(D)*

White has defended himself excellently, and hopes to obtain a decisive advantage by the text move, which threatens the knight and the c-pawn at the same time; but Black's reply gives him a disagreeable surprise.

B

32 ... b3!!

Before deciding on this surprising move, Black had to visualise the following variations, apart from the

1 Why not 28...♘f3+ and 29...♘d2?

continuation played in the game itself:

1) 33 ♖f4 ♕h5 34 ♖xg4 (or 34 ♕xg4 leading to line 2) 34...b2 35 ♖b1, d1 or e1 (if 35 ♕xb2, then 35...♕xg4 as in the game) 35...♗xd4 and Black's pawns become overwhelming.

2) 33 ♕xg4 b2 34 ♖b1 ♕xg4 35 ♖xg4 c3 36 ♘d3 ♖c4 37 ♘xb2! ♖b4! 38 ♖e4 ♔f8 with advantage to Black, for if 39 ♖c1[1] f5 40 ♘d3 fxe4 41 ♘xb4 axb4 42 a5 ♗xd4 43 a6 ♔f7! and wins.

33 ♖xg4 b2
34 ♕xb2 ♕xg4
35 ♖xc4

Apparently White has chosen the simplest method of extricating himself from his difficulties, for he has eliminated the passed pawns and remains a pawn to the good. However, Black's next move creates new difficulties for him.

35 ... h5!

Profiting by the immobility of the hostile pieces to threaten a mating attack by means of ...h4-h3, followed by ...♕f3.

36 ♕c2

The only resource for the defence, in fact, consists in playing the white queen to d3.

36 ... h4

Naturally not 36...♗xd4 on account of 37 ♔g2!.

37 ♕d3 ♖d8!

37...h3 would be insufficient, as after 38 f3 ♕h5 (38...♕g5? 39 ♘e4!) 39 ♕e4 ♕h6 40 ♖c2 White could defend himself satisfactorily.

38 f3 ♕h5

Not 38...♕h3 on account of 39 g4 ♖b8 40 ♘e4 ♖b2 41 ♖c8+! ♗f8 42 ♘f2 and White would win the exchange.

39 ♕e4 hxg3
40 hxg3 ♕g5!
41 ♔g2 ♕d2+

After 41...♖xd5 White would have forced the exchange of queens by 42 f4 ♕h5 43 ♕f3 and Black would have difficulty in securing the win.

42 ♔h3 ♗f6! *(D)*

W

In order to occupy the h-file with the rook. This is the only means of securing the win.

43 ♖c2 ♕h6+
44 ♔g2 ♔g7

---

1 The whole combination is refuted by 39 d6! and after 39...exd6 40 ♖be1! or 39...e6 40 ♖c1! (40...f5 41 d7 ♔e7 42 ♖xe6+ ♔xd7 43 ♖xg6) the mate threat allows White to unpin with gain of tempo, leaving him a rook up. It follows that Black should play 38 cxb2 which leads to a draw.

45 g4

Otherwise this pawn would be lost without any compensation.

45 ... ♖h8

46 ♔f2!

It must be admitted that White defends himself with remarkable coolness.

46 ... ♖b8!!

The point of the manoeuvre initiated by 42...♗f6. Black's rook was brought to the h-file solely in order to force the entry of the queen into White's position. Its mission accomplished, the rook returns to the queenside and contributes to an attack against the mainstay of White's position, the pawn on d4, a manoeuvre against which White is absolutely defenceless.

47 ♔e2 ♖b4

48 ♖d2 ♕h2+

49 ♔e3

Or 49 ♔d3 ♕g1!.

49 ... ♕g1+

50 ♔e2 ♗xd4

Now White could well have resigned, but, on the contrary, he tries a desperate move and by his tenacity he achieves a partial success.

51 ♘d3 ♖b1

51...♗c3! 52 ♘xb4 ♕g2+ was immediately decisive.

52 ♘c1! ♗c3!

With 52...♖b4 53 ♘d3 (there is nothing better) Black could have brought about the same position as after White's 51st move; but he prefers to accept the *fait accompli*, the variation in the text appears to him to be sufficiently clear and satisfactory[1].

53 ♕xb1 ♕g2+

54 ♔d3 ♕xd2+

55 ♔c4 ♕d4+

56 ♔b3 ♗a1! *(D)*

The continuation which Black had in view when playing 52...♗c3. Now White will find it impossible to defend his pawns. For example, if 57 ♘d3 ♕xd5+ 58 ♔a3 ♗f6 59 ♕d1 g5! 60 ♕e2 ♕c4! 61 ♕d1 ♕c3+ 62 ♔a2 e6! and Black wins.

57 ♔a3 ♕c5+

58 ♔a2 ♗f6

59 g5

Another desperate attempt. As the sequel will show, White follows a plan which promises him an illusory salvation.

59 ... ♕xd5+

60 ♘b3 ♕xg5

---

1 52...♕f2+ 53 ♔d3 ♕f1+ wins at once after 54 ♖e2 ♗f6 or 54 ♕e2 ♕xc1 55 ♔xd4 ♖b4+

61 ♕e1

Staking his last hope on the a-pawn, but his opponent will soon destroy this last illusion, by sacrificing his bishop for the a-pawn, after which the black passed pawns on the kingside win very easily.

61	**...**	**♕g2+**
62	**♕d2**	**♕xf3!**
63	**♕xa5**	**g5**
64	**♕e1**	**♕c3**
65	**♕xc3**	**♗xc3**
66	**a5**	**♗xa5**
67	**♘xa5**	**g4**
68	**♘c4**	**g3**
69	**♘d2**	**♔g6**
70	**♔b2**	**♔f5**
71	**♘f3**	**♔f4**
72	**♘g1**	**♔e3**
73	**♔c2**	**♔f2**
74	**♘h3+**	**♔f1**

0-1

A very difficult and interesting game in all its phases.

Game 16

Alekhine – Bogoljubow

Triberg 1921

Brilliancy Prize

Queen's Pawn Game

1	**d4**	**♘f6**
2	**♘f3**	**e6**
3	**c4**	**b6**

This variation, which was abandoned by Bogoljubow as a result of this game, has been played with success in recent tournaments by the masters Sämisch and Nimzowitsch. Black's defeat in the current game cannot therefore be attributed to the opening, but solely to his inaccurate fifth move. (See note thereto.)

4	**g3**	**♗b7**
5	**♗g2**	**c5**

This move gives White the choice of two replies. Besides 6 dxc5, as in the present game, White can also continue with 6 d5 exd5 7 ♘h4 (proposed by Rubinstein in the latest edition of Collijn's *Lärobok*), and it is difficult to see how Black is to free his game. (Compare, however, the game Alekhine-Capablanca from New York 1927.)

The correct move for Black is 5...♗e7 followed by 6 0-0 0-0 7 ♘c3 d5 8 ♘e5! ♕c8! (suggested by Sämisch), with a satisfactory game. Less good however, would be either 8...♘bd7 9 cxd5 ♘xe5 (9...exd5 is better) 10 d6! (Bogoljubow-Nimzowitsch, Karlsbad 1923), or 8...c6 9 e4 ♘bd7 10 ♘xc6 ♗xc6 11 exd5 ♗b7 12 d6 and White ends up winning a pawn (a variation suggested by the author).

6 dxc5

As the sequel shows White secures an advantage by this simple move, thanks to the pressure he will exert on the open d-file.

6	**...**	**♗xc5**

The position of the black bishops is stronger in appearance than in fact, as White's castled position is perfectly secure.

7	**0-0**	**0-0**
8	**♘c3**	**d5**

Giving White the opportunity of unmasking the g2-bishop with advantage. Relatively better is 8...♘a6,

although in this case also the weakness of his d-pawn would have been a source of difficulty for Black.

9 ♘d4!

Not 9 ♘e5 because of the reply 9...♕c7 10 ♗f4 ♘h5.

9 ... ♗xd4

Perceiving the possibility of ridding himself of the troublesome d-pawn, Black allows his opponent the advantage of having two bishops, which, in this position, implies a very marked superiority. On the other hand, it is true that the alternative 9...♘c6 10 ♘xc6 ♗xc6 11 ♗g5 ♗e7 12 ♖c1 is hardly more attractive.

10 ♕xd4 ♘c6

11 ♕h4 dxc4

Black hopes to obtain an approximately equal game by ...♘e5 or ...♘a5, once White has recaptured the c-pawn with the queen. But White is careful to refrain from that course, and prefers to launch a direct attack on the black king which, despite appearances, is insufficiently defended.

12 ♖d1! ♕c8 *(D)*

Forced. If 12...♕e7, then 13 ♗g5 h6 14 ♗xf6 ♕xf6 15 ♕xf6 gxf6 16 ♖d7 winning knight and bishop for a rook.

13 ♗g5! ♘d5

Or 13...♘d7 14 ♘e4 with a strong attack for White. With the text move Black hopes to exchange one of the white bishops by a discovered attack on the 15th move.

14 ♘xd5 exd5

15 ♖xd5!

This unexpected capture which, at first sight, seems to expose the rook to an attack by Black's bishop, is fully justified by the sacrificial lines following White's next move.

15 ... ♘b4 *(D)*

It is clear that other replies would be no better.

16 ♗e4!!

Decisive, as is shown in the variations given later on. The reader will clearly perceive a similarity with other games (which also gained a brilliancy prize) namely: v. Sterk at Budapest (Game 17) and Rubinstein at Karlsbad (Game 30). The leading characteristic in these games is an unforeseen but immediately decisive

attack. The chief point in these attacks lies in the fact that none of them was prepared in the immediate vicinity of its objective. On the contrary, all the preliminary manoeuvres which tended to divert the enemy pieces from the defence of their king took place in the centre or on the opposite wing. Furthermore, it is interesting to note that the deciding move, a real hammer-blow, is played by a bishop and always involves sacrificial variations.

These repeated attacks in the same manner, in the course of games of widely different character, seem to me to constitute a very precise criterion of a player's style, or at least, of the evolution of his style.

16 ... f5

Other variations would be no better, e.g. 16...h6 17 ♗xh6 f5 18 ♕g5 ♕c7 19 ♗xg7 ♕xg7 20 ♕xg7+ ♔xg7 21 ♖d7+ followed by ♗xb7 or 16...g6 17 ♗f6 ♘xd5 18 ♗xd5[1] and White wins in both cases.

After the text move Black loses his queen for a rook and a bishop, and White's victory is only a question of time.

17 ♗xf5! ♖xf5
18 ♖d8+ ♕xd8
19 ♗xd8 ♖c8
20 ♖d1 ♖f7
21 ♕g4 ♘d3

An inoffensive manoeuvre. Black is quite helpless, and can only hope for a miracle!

22 exd3 ♖xd8
23 dxc4 ♖df8
24 f4 ♖e7
25 ♔f2 h6
26 ♖e1 ♗c8
27 ♕f3 ♖ef7
28 ♕d5 g5
29 ♖e7 gxf4
30 gxf4 1-0

Game 17
Alekhine – Sterk
Budapest 1921
Brilliancy Prize
Queen's Gambit Declined

1 d4 d5
2 ♘f3 ♘f6
3 c4 e6
4 ♘c3 ♘bd7
5 e3

After Black's last move, which is probably inferior to 4...♗e7, White has the choice of several good continuations:

1) 5 ♗g5 (not 5 ♗f4? dxc4 6 e3 ♘b6!).

2) 5 cxd5 exd5 6 ♗f4! (proposed by Sämisch). On the other hand, Soldetenkov's ingenious move 6 ♕b3 proves insufficient, as the following variation shows: 6...c6 7 e4 ♘xe4! 8 ♘xe4 ♕e7!.

3) 5 e3, the text move, less energetic perhaps, but affording White a slight advantage in development if correctly followed up.

5 ... ♗d6

1 18...h5 19 ♗c3! is decisive.

A risky move which White does not exploit in the most energetic manner. Black obtains a satisfactory game by the more solid variation 5...♗e7 6 ♗d3 dxc4 7 ♗xc4 c5.

6 ♘b5

With this reply, original but of doubtful value, White lets slip his chances. The retort 6 c5 ♗e7 7 b4 followed by 8 ♗b2 was indicated, and would have enabled White to exercise pressure on the queenside before Black, by reason of his loss of time, could start counterplay in the centre. The text move is intended to prevent ...e5, (which would occur after 6 ♗d3 dxc4 7 ♗xc4 0-0 8 0-0, for example), but the loss of time occasioned allows Black to equalise the game without difficulty.

6 ... ♗e7
7 ♕c2 c6
8 ♘c3 0-0
9 ♗d3 dxc4
10 ♗xc4 c5!

Black, as can easily be seen, has been fortunate enough to surmount all the difficulties of the opening.

11 dxc5

After 11 0-0 ♘b6 12 ♗d3 cxd4 13 exd4 ♗d7 White would not have sufficient compensation for his isolated d-pawn.

11 ... ♗xc5
12 0-0 b6
13 e4

White, after his careless treatment of the opening, seeks complications which are not without danger to himself. 13 b3 ♗b7 14 ♗b2 ♖c8 15 ♕e2 would suffice to equalise.

13 ... ♗b7
14 ♗g5

Not 14 e5 ♘g4! 15 ♘g5 g6 16 ♘xe6 ♕h4 17 h3 ♕g3 followed by mate.

14 ... ♕c8!

A very good move which puts an end to all the opponent's fond hopes. Not only is Black out of danger, but it is actually he who is going to undertake a counter-attack.

15 ♕e2

This prevents Black's threatened 15...♗xf2+. However, 15 ♗d3 was preferable.

15 ... ♗b4!

This move marks the critical phase. White, whose game is compromised, must make a serious effort to maintain equality. What is he to do? After 16 ♖ac1 (16 e5 ♘g4 is also bad) 16...♗xc3 17 ♗d3 ♘c5! 18 ♖xc3 ♗xe4! 19 ♗xf6 ♗xd3, Black would have a good game thanks to the threat against the rook on f1. After a quarter of an hour's perplexity, White succeeded in resolving the difficulty.

16 ♗d3 ♗xc3 *(D)*

W

17 ♖fc1!

The saving move, because if Black now plays 17...♘c5, which is his best, the continuation would be 18 ♖xc3 ♗xe4 19 ♗xf6 ♗xd3 20 ♕e3! (here is the difference from the preceding variation: Black's bishop no longer attacks White's rook on f1) 20...gxf6 21 b4 ♗g6 22 bxc5 bxc5 23 ♖xc5, followed by 24 h4, and White will find his attacking possibilities adequate compensation for the pawn thus sacrificed.

17 ... ♘xe4

Black attempts to win a pawn without compromising the position of his king, but does not sufficiently consider the danger to which he exposes his knight on c5.

18 ♗xe4 ♗xe4
19 ♕xe4 ♘c5
20 ♕e2!

More energetic than 20 ♕b1, suggested by some annotators, which, after 20...♗b4 21 a3 ♕b7, would have yielded the win of only two minor pieces for a rook, while allowing Black numerous defensive possibilities[1].

20 ... ♗a5
21 ♖ab1 ♕a6
22 ♖c4 ♘a4 *(D)*

An ingenious resource (the idea is 23 b4 ♘c3!), but inadequate. However, Black has no longer any saving move. If, for example, 22...f6 then 23 ♗h4!.

23 ♗f6!!

The initial move of a mating attack as elegant as it is unexpected, which concludes the game in a few moves. Black is threatened with 24 ♖g4 ♕xe2 25 ♖xg7+ and mate next move. If 23...h5 24 ♖g4! ♕xe2 25 ♖xg7+ ♔h8 26 ♘g5! and Black has no defence against 27 ♖h7+, followed by 28 ♖h8 mate. If 23...h6 24 ♘e5! with the threat 25 ♕g4, and White wins.

23 ... ♖fc8!

The only move! White replies to it with a new surprise.

24 ♕e5!

The necessary corollary to the preceding move.

24 ... ♖c5

The following variations are also insufficient:

1) 24...♕xc4 25 ♕g5 ♔f8 26 ♕xg7+ ♔e8 27 ♕g8+ ♔d7 28 ♘e5+ ♔c7 29 ♕xf7+ and 30 ♘xc4.

2) 24...♖xc4 25 ♕g5 ♖g4 26 ♕xg4 g6 27 ♕xa4.

---

1 22 b3! actually nets a whole piece, so this would indeed have been a straightforward win for White. Black's 17th move is really just a blunder.

3) 24...gxf6 25 ♖g4+ and mate in two moves.

After the text move the variation 25 ♖xc5 gxf6 should win in the long run, but White answers with a still stronger reply.

25 ♕g3!

Simple and decisive.

25	**...**	**g6**
26	**♖xa4**	**♕d3**
27	**♖f1**	**♕f5**
28	**♕f4**	**♕c2**
29	**♕h6**	**1-0**

Game 18

Alekhine – Bogoljubow

Budapest 1921

Queen's Pawn Game

1	**d4**	**♘f6**
2	**c4**	**e6**
3	**♘f3**	**♗b4+**

3...d5 or 3...b6 would be preferable.

4	**♗d2**	**♗xd2+**

This exchange assists White's development. In the Queen's Gambit, Black's dark-squared bishop is far too valuable a defensive piece to be exchanged in the opening with loss of time.

5	**♕xd2**	**0-0**
6	**♘c3**	**d5**
7	**e3**	**♘bd7**
8	**♗d3**	**c6**
9	**0-0**	

Allowing Black to free himself by an ingenious manoeuvre. White could have frustrated this plan by 9 ♖d1! and Black's position would have remained very cramped.

9	**...**	**dxc4**
10	**♗xc4**	**e5!** *(D)*

Taking advantage of the exposed position of White's queen, for if now 11 dxe5, then 11...♘xe5!, and Black equalises with ease.

11 ♗b3!

By this move, which prevents Black from gaining time later on with ...♘b6, White indirectly meets 11...e4, which would now result merely in the loss of a pawn after 12 ♘g5, and thus White still maintains a slight superiority.

The sacrifice 11 ♗xf7+ would only lead to a draw, for example 11...♖xf7 (not 11...♔xf7? 12 dxe5 ♘g4 13 ♖ad1! ♕e7 14 e6+! ♔xe6 15 ♕d4 ♘ge5 16 ♘xe5 ♘xe5 17 f4!, and White obtains a strong attack) 12 dxe5 ♘g4 13 e6 ♖xf3! 14 exd7 ♗xd7 15 gxf3 ♘xh2! (and not 15...♕h4, because of 16 ♕d6) 16 ♔xh2 ♕h4+ and draws by perpetual check.

11	**...**	**♕e7**

In his game against Johner (Pistyan 1922), Grünfeld tried 11...exd4 12 ♕xd4 (12 exd4 also deserves

consideration) 12...♕b6 and finally secured the draw. After the text move the superiority of White's game is clear.

12 e4! exd4
13 ♘xd4 ♘c5

13...♘xe4 is impossible, both now and on the next move, on account of ♕e3 winning a piece.

14 ♗c2 ♖d8[1]
15 ♖ad1

Threatening 16 ♘xc6.

15 ... ♗g4
16 f3 ♘e6
17 ♕f2 ♘xd4
18 ♖xd4 ♗e6
19 ♖fd1

Black was compelled to abandon the only open file in order to develop his light-squared bishop. Moreover, the white centre pawns, thanks to their mobility, will be able to attack Black's knight and bishop successfully. As against this, the notorious 'majority of pawns on the queenside' is not, at the moment, of any value, for their advance, as is shown in the present game, will give rise to new weaknesses, which the opponent will turn to advantage. The game is already virtually decided.

19 ... b6

Defending his a-pawn, which was indirectly attacked.

20 h3!

Preparing the advance of the f-pawn.

20 ... c5

This move leads to nothing, seeing that it does not compel the exchange of rooks. It would have been rather better (now, or on the 22nd move) to take measures against the advance of White's e- and f-pawns by playing, for example, 20...♘e8 followed by ...f6.

21 ♖4d2 ♖xd2
22 ♕xd2 *(D)*

B

22 ... c4
23 f4 g6

If 23...♕c5+ simply 24 ♕d4! and Black's position after the exchange of queens would be untenable, despite his majority on the queenside.

24 ♕d4

Threatening to win a pawn by 25 f5.

24 ... ♖c8
25 g4!

Decisive! Black has no adequate defence against the threats 26 f5, or 26 e5 followed by 27 f5.

---

1 Here 14...♘fxe4 is met by 15 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 16 ♕e3, rather than the immediate 15 ♕e3, when 15...f5 16 f3 ♕g5! defends.

25 ... ♗xg4

A desperate sacrifice which cannot defer the imminent catastrophe any more than other attempts.

26 hxg4 ♘xg4
27 ♔g2! h5
28 ♘d5 ♕h4
29 ♖h1 ♕d8
30 ♗d1! 1-0

An instructive game from the strategic point of view.

Game 19
Steiner – Alekhine
Budapest 1921
Alekhine Defence

1 e4 ♘f6

This new defence was played for the first time by myself in a consultation game at Zurich (August 1921), and was introduced into master practice shortly afterwards at the Budapest Tournament in September of the same year. Its correctness now seems perfectly established. One of the most searching proofs of its vitality lies in the fact that Dr. Emanuel Lasker, ex-champion of the world, although openly opposed to this defence, successfully adopted it against Maroczy at the New York Tournament (March-April 1924), after having tried in vain to demolish it.

In the course of an encounter between Dr. Lasker and Dr. Tarrasch, Black obtained a clearly superior, if not a winning, game in the following way: 1 e4 ♘f6 2 e5 ♘d5 3 d4 d6 4 c4 ♘b6 5 f4 dxe5 6 fxe5 ♘c6 7 ♗e3 ♗f5 8 ♘c3 e6 9 ♘f3 ♗b4 10 ♗d3 ♗g4! 11 ♗e2 ♗xf3 12 gxf3 ♕h4+ 13 ♗f2 ♕f4!.

2 e5

In a game Bogoljubow-Alekhine (Karlsbad 1923), White tried 2 ♘c3 upon which Black replied by 2...d5 (2...e5, transposing into the Vienna Game, is also to be considered), leading to the continuation 3 e5 ♘fd7! 4 d4 c5! 5 ♗b5 ♘c6 6 ♘f3 and now Black could have reached a very advantageous variation of the French Defence by 6...e6 in place of the risky line 6...a6 7 ♗xc6 bxc6 8 e6!.

2 ... ♘d5
3 d4

In a game Sämisch-Alekhine from the same tournament, White continued by 3 ♘c3 e6! 4 ♘xd5 exd5 5 d4 d6 6 ♘f3 ♘c6 7 ♗e2 ♗e7 8 ♗f4 0-0 9 0-0 f6 10 exf6 ♗xf6 and Black had a slightly superior game.

3 ... d6
4 ♗g5

After this move, whose object is to hinder the advance of the hostile e-pawn, White loses his advantage, because of the difficulties he will experience in defending his own e-pawn. The most dangerous line of play for Black is undoubtedly 4 c4 followed by 5 f4.

4 ... dxe5
5 dxe5 ♘c6
6 ♗b5 ♗f5!

Black is not concerned about the possibility of doubled pawns. If 7 ♗xc6+, the possession of his two bishops, the open b-file and his better

development would constitute excellent compensation for the slight weakness on c6.

7 ♘f3 ♘b4!

The win of a pawn by this last move required a minute examination of all its consequences.

8 ♘a3 ♕xd1+
9 ♖xd1!

The best reply, for after 9 ♔xd1 0-0-0+ 10 ♔c1 f6 Black's position would be distinctly superior.

9 ... ♘xc2+
10 ♘xc2 ♗xc2
11 ♖c1 ♗e4
12 ♘d4

If 12 e6, Black would have answered simply 12...f6! followed by 13...0-0-0.

12 ... ♗xg2
13 ♖g1 0-0-0

The point of the manoeuvre initiated on the 7th move. Nevertheless, the material advantage of a pawn, which Black has succeeded in securing, seems very difficult to utilise, because of his poor development.

14 ♘xc6 ♗xc6
15 ♗xc6 bxc6
16 ♖xc6 ♖d5
17 ♗f4 e6
18 ♔e2 *(D)*

How ought Black to strengthen his position now? For example, here are two plausible suggestions which give no satisfactory result against a correct defence:

1) 18...g6 19 ♖gc1 ♖d7 20 ♗e3 ♔b7 21 ♖6c3 ♗g7 22 ♖b3+ ♔a8 23 ♗xa7! ♗xe5 24 ♖c4 with the better game for White.

B

2) 18...g5 19 ♖xg5! ♗h6 20 ♖g4 ♗xf4 21 ♖xf4 ♖xe5+ 22 ♔f1 ♔b7 23 ♖c3, and Black has no chance of winning.

18 ... ♗c5!

...whereas this move, which at first sight does not seem better than the above-mentioned moves, is the only one enabling Black to maintain his advantage.

19 b4!

The right reply, permitting White to force a favourable exchange. It is clear that Black's g-pawn cannot be taken at once, owing to ...♔b7.

19 ... ♗xb4
20 ♖xg7 ♖d7
21 ♗e3

Black is once again faced with a very difficult problem. How is he to secure the defence of his weak pawns on both wings? His lone bishop is insufficient for this task, since if it be brought to b6 via a5, thereby adequately protecting his queenside, White would transfer his attack to the opposite wing and would eventually win at least a pawn by ♖c4 followed by ♖h4. On the other hand, if Black withdraws his

bishop to f8, in order to secure the protection of his kingside, White would take the queenside as his objective and would obtain a strong attack by ♖g4 followed by ♖a4.

Black must therefore avoid committing his bishop, in order to be able to utilise it for the defence of whichever wing is threatened. His following moves are dictated by the above considerations.

21 ... a5!
22 ♖c4 h5
23 ♖h4 ♗c3!
24 ♖g5 ♖d5
25 f4 f6!

Definitely maintaining his material advantage, which the following exchanges help him to exploit.

26 ♖gxh5 ♖xh5
27 ♖xh5 fxe5
28 fxe5 ♗xe5
29 ♖h7

29 h4 would leave White some hope of a draw, but after the text move Black forces the exchange of this dangerous pawn.

29 ... ♖b5!
30 ♔f3 ♖b2
31 ♖h5

Forced, since after 31 h4 ♖xa2 Black's passed a-pawn would be at least as dangerous as White's passed h-pawn.

31 ... ♗xh2
32 ♖xa5 ♗d6

The ensuing endgame, although won for Black, nevertheless offers several technical difficulties, and is not devoid of interest.

33 ♔e4 ♔d7
34 ♗d4 *(D)*

Temporarily preventing 34...e5, which Black now prepares by the following rook manoeuvre.

B

34 ... ♖d2!

Hindering ♔d3-c4.

35 ♗e3 ♖e2
36 ♔d3 ♖e1!
37 ♗d4 ♖c1

37...e5 would still be premature, on account of 38 ♗c3.

38 ♗e3 ♖d1+
39 ♔e4 ♖e1
40 ♔d3 e5

At last it is playable!

41 ♗f2 ♖f1
42 ♗e3 ♔e6
43 ♔e4 ♖h1
44 ♗f2 ♖h2
45 ♗e3 ♖h4+
46 ♔d3 ♗b4

Thereby securing for his king access to the square d5, which is of great importance.

47 ♖a7

Or 47 ♖a4 ♔d5 48 a3 e4+ 49 ♔c2 ♗d6.

47 ... c5
48 a3 c4+

49 ♔e2 ♗d6
50 ♖a8

In order to pin the Black's bishop by ♖d8, after ...♔d5.

50 ... ♖h2+
51 ♔d1 ♖h3!
52 ♔d2 ♔d5
53 ♖d8 c3+!

The *coup de grâce.*

54 ♔e2

If 54 ♔d3 Black had foreseen the following pretty finish: 54...c2 55 ♖c8 ♗e7! 56 ♖xc2 ♗g5 57 ♖e2 e4+ 58 ♔d2 ♖xe3 59 ♖xe3 ♔d4 and wins.

54 ... ♔e4
55 ♖xd6 ♖xe3+
56 ♔f2 ♖d3
57 ♖c6 ♖d2+
58 ♔e1 ♔d3
59 ♖d6+ ♔c2
60 ♖e6 ♖d5
61 ♔e2 ♔b3
62 ♖c6 c2
0-1

Game 20
Alekhine – Rubinstein
The Hague 1921
Queen's Gambit Declined

1 d4 d5
2 ♘f3 e6
3 c4 a6

A move of Janowski's, which has been quite frequently played by Rubinstein in recent tournaments, but without appreciable success. Necessary in the greater number of the variations of the Queen's Gambit Accepted, 3...a6 is here merely a loss of time, and in addition creates weaknesses on the queenside when White continues by 4 cxd5 or even 4 c5, as in the present game.

4 c5

4 cxd5 is quite sufficient to secure a slight superiority, as was shown by Johner-Rubinstein and Kostić-Rubinstein from the Teplitz-Schönau Tournament of 1922, among others.

The former game continued 4 cxd5 exd5 5 ♘c3 ♘f6 6 ♗g5 ♗e7 7 e3 0-0 8 ♗d3 b6 (a little better, but also insufficient to equalise the game, was 8...♘bd7 9 ♕c2!) 9 ♗xf6! ♗xf6 10 ♕c2 h6, and Johner could have obtained a very strong attack against Black's weakened kingside by 11 h4, followed by 12 0-0-0 and g4. In his game against Kostić, Rubinstein tried 5...♗e7 in place of 5...♘f6, and the continuation was 6 ♗f4 ♘f6 7 e3 0-0 8 ♗d3 ♘bd7 9 0-0 ♖e8 10 ♖c1 b6, after which White could have obtained a distinctly superior game by 11 h3 (in order to conserve his dark-squared bishop against the threat of exchange by ...♘h5).

In the present game, the first that I played against Rubinstein after a seven-year interval, I voluntarily adopted a new line of play in order to avoid the variations resulting from 4 cxd5 (because I rightly thought them very familiar to Rubinstein), resolving that I would do or die!

4 ... ♘c6

Wishing to play 5...e5, which White must oppose by every means at his disposal.

5 ♗f4 ♘ge7
6 ♘c3 ♘g6
7 ♗e3!

A move rather out of the ordinary! White, while preventing 7...e5, also avoids the exchange of his dark-squared bishop. I learnt, some time after the game ended, that Rubinstein, in Collijn's *Lärobok*, amined 7 e3, a variation leading to equality.

7 ... b6

Black, giving up hope of breaking through in the centre, at least eliminates the cramping white c-pawn, and reckons to secure an advantage in development, by reason of the unusual position of White's bishop at e3.

8 cxb6 cxb6
9 h4!

The only means of weakening the dark squares of the enemy's position, and thus obtaining a future for his e3-bishop.

9 ... ♗d6

If 9...h5 then 10 ♗g5 f6 11 ♕c2 followed by ♗d2, e3, a3 and ♗d3, with the better game for White.

10 h5 ♘ge7

Not 10...♘f4? 11 g3.

11 h6!

The point! If Black captures the h-pawn, he weakens his own h-pawn without the slightest compensation. After other moves, White's dark-squared bishop will occupy the diagonal h4-d8, where it exercises a very embarrassing pressure.

11 ... g6
12 ♗g5 0-0

More prudent was first 12...f5, after which Black would not have had to fear the threat of mate at g7, although in any case White's game would have been preferable.

13 ♗f6 *(D)*

B

An extraordinary position after the 13th move of a Queen's Gambit! During the first thirteen moves White has played his c-pawn thrice, his h-pawn thrice and his dark-squared bishop four times, after which he has obtained a position in sight of a win, if not actually a winning one. It is especially with respect to the original opening of this game that people often speak of a 'hyper-modern technique', a 'neo-romantic school', etc.

The question is, in reality, much simpler. Black has given himself over to several eccentricities in the opening (3...a6; 5...♘ge7; 6...♘g6) which, without the reaction of his opponent (for example, 7 e3 instead of 7 ♗e3 or 9 g3 instead of 9 h4) would in the end have given him a good game. It is, therefore, as a necessity, and not with a preconceived

idea, that I decided upon the advance of the h-pawn, preventing Black from securing an advantage in the centre. But, as a rule, in the opening stages of a game such eccentricities are in accordance neither with my temperament nor my style, as the reader can see from the perusal of this book.

13 ... b5
14 e3 ♗d7
15 ♗d3 ♖c8

Black dreams only of the possibility of an immediate attack by White (commencing by ♘g5 or ♘e5 followed by ♕f3), which he hopes to thwart by a demonstration on the queenside (...♕a5, ...♗b4).

With this idea, the preparatory move 15...♖c8 would have been very useful. But as White is not compelled to bestir himself as long as the opponent does not trouble him seriously, it would have been better for Black to play at once 15...♘a5, followed by 16...♗b4, and thus force White, by this semblance of a counter-attack, to take some defensive measures.

16 a4! *(D)*

Whereas it is now White who seizes the initiative on the queenside, forcing Black to block this part of the board, and thereby allowing White to post his c3-knight in a dominating position without loss of time.

16 ... b4
17 ♘e2 ♕b6
18 ♘c1!

Preventing 18...b3.

B

18 ... ♖c7
19 ♘b3 ♘a5

Too late!

20 ♘c5!

By this manoeuvre White transforms his positional advantage into a gain of material, Black being unable to capture the knight, for example 20...♗xc5 21 dxc5 ♕xc5 22 ♗d4 ♕c6 23 ♘e5 ♕b7 24 ♘g4, winning the exchange. If 20...♗c8, then 21 ♘e5, with similar variations.

20 ... ♘c4 *(D)*

This move is not a whit better than those given above. It allows White the pleasant choice between two very good variations, but it happens that White chose the less decisive one.

W

21 ♗xc4 dxc4
22 ♘e5

22 ♘e4 would force the win of the exchange, and also maintain the attack, in view of the double threat of 23 ♘xd6 followed by 24 ♗e5, and 23 ♗g7 followed by 24 ♘f6#[1].

22 ... ♗xe5
23 ♗xe7![2] ♗d6!

With his clear judgement of position, Rubinstein at once recognises that the sacrifice of the exchange offers him the best chance. Indeed, after 23...♖e8 24 dxe5 ♖xe7 25 ♘e4! (not 25 ♕f3 f5 26 exf6 ♖f7 with defensive chances), Black would have lost more speedily than in the actual game, e.g.:

1) 25...f5 26 ♕d6 ♗c6 27 ♘f6+ ♔f7 28 ♕d8! ♗e8 29 ♘xh7 and White wins.

2) 25...♗e8 26 ♘f6+ ♔h8 27 ♕d8 ♖b7 28 ♖d1 ♕c6 29 0-0, winning.

24 ♗xf8 ♗xf8
25 ♘xd7 ♖xd7
26 a5!

Preventing the consolidation of Black's pawn structure by 26...a5.

26 ... ♕c6
27 ♕f3 ♖d5
28 ♖c1!

This move, which forces the advance of the c4-pawn, is intended to clear up the position on the queenside, so that White is able to commit his pieces to the most favourable squares.

28 ... ♕c7
29 ♕e2 c3
30 bxc3 bxc3
31 ♕xa6 ♖xa5
32 ♕d3 ♗a3

If 32...♖a3 White would have continued 33 ♔e2 followed by 34 ♖a1.

33 ♖c2 ♗b2 *(D)*

34 ♔e2!

Not 34 0-0 because of 34...♖h5 winning the h-pawn, when Black has good drawing chances.

34 ... ♕c6
35 f3 f5
36 ♖b1 ♕d6

If 36...♕d5, then 37 ♔f2 threatening 38 ♖xc3 ♗xc3 39 ♕xc3 ♖a8 40 ♕c7 and wins.

37 ♕c4 ♔f7
38 ♕c8 ♕a6+

---

1 It isn't clear that 22 ♘e4 is better than the game after 22...♘f5.

2 White could have played 23 ♗xe5 ♖a7 24 ♘e4 ♘d5 25 ♗d6, followed by ♗c5, which would have won the exchange while eliminating Black's potentially dangerous dark-squared bishop, and this would probably have been the most accurate line of all.

The exchange of queens is forced, as White threatens 39 ♕h8.

39 ♕xa6 ♖xa6
40 e4 g5
41 ♔d3 ♔g6
42 d5!

Thus obtaining a passed pawn, which decides the game in a few moves. Black's desperate attempts to obtain a last chance on the kingside merely succeed in leading his king into a cul-de-sac.

42 ... fxe4+
43 fxe4 exd5
44 exd5 ♖a4
45 ♖d1!

Indirectly supporting the d-pawn.

45 ... ♔xh6
46 d6 ♔h5
47 d7 ♖a8
48 ♔e4 ♖d8
49 ♔f5 ♔h4
50 ♖h1+ ♔g3
51 ♖h3#

Game 21
Tarrasch – Alekhine
Pistyan 1922
Brilliancy Prize
Queen's Pawn Game

1 d4 ♘f6
2 ♘f3 e6
3 c4 c5

With the intention of investigating, on the next move, the gambit discovered by the Moscow amateur Blumenfeld. Since then it has been shown that this gambit is not favourable for Black if White should decline it.

4 d5 b5
5 dxe6

The acceptance of the gambit yields Black a formidable position in the centre. The right move was 5 ♗g5!. Equally possible, although less strong, is 5 e4, played by Rubinstein against Tartakower at Teplitz-Schönau 1922.

An instructive game, Grünfeld-Bogoljubow, from the Vienna Tournament of 1922, continued 5 ♗g5 h6 6 ♗xf6 ♕xf6 7 ♘c3 b4 8 ♘b5 ♘a6 9 e4! ♕xb2 10 ♗d3! ♕f6 11 e5 ♕d8 12 dxe6 dxe6 13 ♗e4! ♕xd1+ 14 ♖xd1 ♖b8 15 ♗c6+ ♔e7 16 ♘xa7 g5 17 ♗b5 ♗g7 18 ♘c6+ and mates next move.

5 ... fxe6
6 cxb5 d5
7 e3

Black threatened to regain his pawn with the better game by means of 7...♕a5+. However, 7 ♘bd2 followed by b3 and ♗b2 offered White better defensive chances.

7 ... ♗d6
8 ♘c3 0-0
9 ♗e2 ♗b7
10 b3 ♘bd7
11 ♗b2 ♕e7

Black has completed his development, and prepares in perfect safety the advance of his e-pawn, which, while restricting still more White's position, will also secure him a very dangerous attack against White's king.

12 0-0 ♖ad8

Black has no need to hasten the advance of his e-pawn, his opponent

at present being able to attempt absolutely nothing.

13 ♕c2 e5
14 ♖fe1

In order to defend the square h2, by bringing his f3-knight via d2 to f1. From now on White defends himself in the most skilful way, but his game is already too far compromised by the strategic error of the opening, ceding the centre to his opponent in exchange for a pawn of little value.

14 ... e4
15 ♘d2 ♘e5
16 ♘d1 ♘fg4
17 ♗xg4

This exchange is forced, for if 17 ♘f1 then 17...♘f3+!.

17 ... ♘xg4
18 ♘f1 ♕g5! *(D)*

The correct continuation of the attack. White has adequately defended the squares f2 and h2, but the g2-point is still vulnerable. So it is against this point that Black intends to undertake a double attack, bringing the knight to h4 via h6 and f5. To parry this threat White will be compelled to weaken his position afresh by playing h2-h3 which, as we shall see by the sequel, will allow the decisive advance of Black's d-pawn.

19 h3 ♘h6
20 ♔h1 ♘f5
21 ♘h2

It is clear that White's last three moves were the only ones possible to defend g2 by means of ♖g1.

21 ... d4!

This pawn becomes a new and formidable means of continuing the attack. White cannot capture it, e.g. 22 exd4 e3! 23 ♘xe3 (or 23 ♖g1 ♕g3! and wins) 23...♘xe3 24 fxe3 ♕g3! and wins.

22 ♗c1 d3
23 ♕c4+ ♔h8
24 ♗b2 ♘g3+

The beginning of the final manoeuvre. It is clear that the knight cannot be taken, on account of 25...♕xg3 forcing mate. After the following move Black could have won the exchange by 25...d2, but he preferred to wind up the game by a forced combination.

25 ♔g1 ♗d5 *(D)*

26 ♕a4

If 26 ♕c3 (or 26 ♕c1) 26...♘e2+, winning easily.

26 ... ♘e2+
27 ♔h1 ♖f7!

There was no reason to complicate the game by the sacrifice of the a-pawn.

28 ♕a6 h5!

As we shall see by the continuation, this was necessary to prepare the sacrifice of the bishop on the 34th move.

29 b6 ♘g3+

Not 29...axb6 on account of 30 ♖xe2 dxe2 31 ♕xe2, giving White possibilities of defence.

30 ♔g1 axb6
31 ♕xb6 d2!

Now this advance of the d-pawn is absolutely decisive.

32 ♖f1 ♘xf1
33 ♘xf1 ♗e6!!

After this move White can no longer defend himself against the ensuing mating attack. For example, if he had attempted to protect the square g2 by 34 ♕c6 followed by 35 ♕xe4, the game would have terminated as follows: 34 ♕c6 ♖f3! 35 ♕xe4 ♗d5 36 ♕a4 ♕xg2+!! 37 ♔xg2 ♖g3+ 38 ♔h2 ♖g2+ 39 ♔h1 ♖h2+ 40 ♔g1 ♖h1#.

Against the plausible move 34 ♔h1 the sacrifice of the e6-bishop wins at once.

34 ♔h1 *(D)*

34 ... ♗xh3!
35 gxh3 ♖f3
36 ♘g3 h4!

The point of 28...h5! is now revealed.

37 ♗f6

Ingenious but doomed to failure, like all other attempts.

37 ... ♕xf6
38 ♘xe4 ♖xh3+

If now 39 ♔g1 ♗h2+ and Black wins the queen, or if 39 ♔g2 ♕f3+ and mates next move.

0-1

Game 22
Johner – Alekhine
Pistyan 1922
Queen's Pawn Game

1 d4 ♘f6
2 ♘f3 e6
3 c4 c5

It has been shown subsequently that this move is not quite correct (see the previous game). The right move here was 3...d5 or 3...b6.

4 ♘c3

This answer is insufficient to secure White an advantage. He must play 4 d5 and if 4...b5 5 ♗g5! with the better game. But my opponent still had fresh in his memory my game against Dr. Tarrasch, played in the first round of this tournament

(again, see the previous game), in which White, having adopted the continuation 4 d5, sustained a classic defeat. He therefore preferred the move in the text, which is more conservative, but also more dull.

4 ... cxd4
5 ♘xd4 d5

This move allows White, should he so desire, to simplify the position, with an almost certain draw in view. 5...♗b4 was more energetic, leading to a complicated game not without chances for Black.

6 cxd5 ♘xd5
7 ♘db5!

Threatening to win a pawn: 8 ♘xd5 exd5 9 ♕xd5!.

7 ... ♗d7

In order to answer 8 ♘xd5 with 8...♗xb5.

8 e4 ♘xc3
9 bxc3!

Much better than 9 ♘xc3, after which Black could have obtained a positional edge by 9...♗c5.

9 ... ♕a5
10 ♖b1!

This is more energetic than the defensive move 10 ♕b3. For the sacrificed c-pawn White, thanks to his two bishops, obtains a position full of promise, and Black will be compelled to return the pawn in order to complete his development.

10 ... a6

If any other move, White would defend his pawn by ♖b3, or he could play 11 ♘d6+ in any case.

11 ♘d6+ ♗xd6
12 ♕xd6 ♕xc3+
13 ♗d2 ♕c6
14 ♕f4 *(D)*

White overestimates his attacking prospects, forgetting that his own king is not safe. He ought to have been content to regain his pawn, with a good game, by 14 ♕b4 a5! 15 ♕xb7 0-0. The text move, on the contrary, speedily allows Black to seize the initiative.

B

14 ... 0-0
15 ♗d3 e5

By this sacrifice Black opens up new lines for his pieces, and taking advantage of the fact that White has still not castled, undertakes a direct attack against the position of the hostile king. Against any other move White would himself have obtained a powerful attack by the advance 16 e5!.

16 ♕xe5 ♖e8
17 ♕d4

Instead 17 ♕g3 ♖xe4+ and 17 ♕f4 ♗e6, followed by 18...♘d7 and 19...♘c5, are both advantageous to Black.

17 ... ♕g6!
18 f3

White already finds himself in a very difficult position, since he cannot castle on account of 18...♗h3 winning the exchange. On the other hand, if 18 f4 Black would have avoided the dangerous variation resulting from 18...♕xg2 19 ♖g1 ♘c6 20 ♕e3 ♕xh2 21 ♗c3, and would have made certain of an advantage by 18...♘c6! 19 ♕f2 (or 19 ♕xd7 ♕xg2 20 ♖f1 ♖ad8) 19...♗f5!.

18 ... ♕xg2! *(D)*

This move, at first sight hazardous, was the result of a long and detailed calculation.

19 ♖g1 ♘c6
20 ♕e3 ♕xh2
21 ♗c3 g6!

Not 21...♘e5 on account of the reply 22 ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 23 ♕g5+ ♔h8 (if 23...♔f8? 24 ♗b4+!) 24 f4! and Black would have been compelled to satisfy himself with a draw.

22 ♖xb7 ♖ad8!

The preparation for the final action.

23 ♗f6

It is manifest that with a pawn less and an exposed king, other moves would not save White. The move chosen allows Black to conclude energetically and rapidly.

23 ... ♘e5!

Threatening 24...♘xf3+.

24 ♗e2 ♗b5!

Practically ending the game, for if 25 ♗xd8, then 25...♗xe2 wins at once, due to the threat 26...♘xf3+[1]. White is therefore forced into a general liquidation, after which his position remains absolutely without the slightest hope.

25 ♗xe5 ♖xe5
26 ♗xb5 ♖xb5
27 ♖xb5 axb5

Threatening to force a winning pawn ending by 28...♖d2!. If 28 ♖f1, then 28...♕c2 wins.

0-1

Game 23
Alekhine – Wolf
Pistyan 1922
Brilliancy Prize
Queen's Gambit Declined

1 d4 d5
2 ♘f3 c5
3 c4 cxd4

The usual move is 3...e6 transposing into the Tarrasch Defence. After the exchange of pawns in the centre we reach a symmetrical position in which the advantage of the move

1 And if 25 ♗xd8 ♗xe2 26 ♗c7, then 26...♗xf3.

always secures for White a slight positional advantage. If in this game he obtains a better result, that is solely due to the fact that his opponent allows himself to go in for an innovation—especially risky when his development is already retarded.

4 cxd5 ♘f6
5 ♘xd4 a6

Black wished to avoid the variation 5...♘xd5 6 e4 ♘f6 7 ♗b5+ ♗d7 8 e5! ♗xb5 9 ♘xb5 ♕xd1+ 10 ♔xd1 ♘d5 11 ♘1c3, which is to the advantage of White, as mentioned in the latest edition of Collijn's *Lärobok*. But this variation, like many others indicated in that work, is indeed interesting but scarcely accurate, as it can be improved by 6...♘b4! in place of 6...♘f6, after which White's advantage would be difficult to demonstrate.

The text move does not seem risky, as Black intends to capture the d-pawn on the next move. Its refutation is therefore the more instructive.

6 e4!!

Sacrificing the e-pawn to retain the d-pawn which, as will be seen in the sequel, exercises very strong pressure on Black's position.

6 ... ♘xe4
7 ♕a4+!

In order to provoke the obstruction of the d-file by a black piece, which cuts off the attack of Black's queen on White's d5-pawn.

7 ... ♗d7

Not 7...♕d7 on account of the reply 8 ♗b5.

8 ♕b3 ♘c5 *(D)*

This square is hardly indicated for the knight, but on the other hand Black must defend his b7-pawn. 8...♕c7 or 8...♕c8 is scarcely any better, seeing that Black's queen would soon be dislodged from this file by White's rook.

W

9 ♕e3!

Much stronger than the plausible move 9 ♕f3, upon which Black could have freed himself by 9...e5, for Black wins in the event of 10 dxe6 ♘xe6 11 ♘xe6 ♗xe6! 12 ♕xb7? ♗d5!. After the text move, in contrast, the advance of Black's e-pawn would give White the opportunity of exercising strong pressure on the e-file. Black therefore resigns himself to the development of his bishop on g7, but equally without success.

9 ... g6
10 ♘f3!

This gain of time allows White to prevent 10...♗g7, followed by 11...0-0. By keeping Black's king in the centre, White's attack will be facilitated, thanks to his superior development. The opening of this

game offers some analogies with the game against Rubinstein, played at The Hague (game 20). In the one, as in the other, the advantage won results from repeated movements of the same pieces (here the first eleven moves contain four displacements of the queen and three of the king's knight).

But the possibility of similar manoeuvres in the opening phase is solely attributable, I must reiterate, to the fact that the opponent has adopted faulty tactics, which must from the first be refuted by an energetic demonstration. It is clear, on the contrary, that in face of correct development, similar anomalous treatment would be disastrous. It cannot therefore be any question of a 'Modern System', but just simply of exploiting in a rational manner the opponent's mistakes.

I cannot conceive why there is such an ardent desire to discover in a game of chess anything more subtle than it has to offer, for I am of opinion that the real beauty which it possesses should be more than sufficient for all possible demands.

10 ... ♕c7
11 ♕c3 ♖g8
12 ♗e3 b6
13 ♘bd2

13 b4 would be an error of judgement, because Black would then save his piece by 13...♗g7 14 ♘d4 ♕a7!. White therefore prefers to complete his development before undertaking decisive action.

13 ... ♗g7
14 ♗d4 ♗xd4
15 ♕xd4

Now that White has rid himself of the enemy dark-squared bishop, the only piece which could inconvenience him, Black's position will very soon become desperate.

15 ... ♗b5

It would be difficult to suggest another means of developing his queenside. 15...♗f5 16 ♗e2 ♘bd7 would be impossible, on account of 17 g4[1] ♗c2 18 ♖c1.

16 ♗xb5+ axb5
17 0-0 ♖a4

This skirmish comes to nothing. To tell the truth, it is difficult to point out a rational move.

18 b4 ♕d8
19 a3!

White has no reason to hurry himself, considering Black's lack of resources.

19 ... ♘bd7
20 ♖fe1 ♔f8 *(D)*
21 d6!

A preparation for the following sacrifice. If Black replies to this move with 21...e6, the continuation would be 22 ♕e3 ♘b7 23 ♕d3 ♖a8 24 ♘e4, winning the b-pawn to start with.

21 ... ♘e6

1 17 g4 can be met by 17...e5!, with just an edge for White, so 17 0-0 may be a better try.

22 ♖xe6!

By this combination, based on a precise calculation of all its possibilities, White demolishes the last defences of the enemy. He regains the sacrificed exchange in a few moves, with a mating attack.

22 ... fxe6
23 ♘g5 ♕b8

Or 23...e5 24 ♕d5 ♕e8 25 ♘e6+ ♔f7 26 ♘c7+ e6 27 ♕f3+ and wins.

24 ♘xe6+ ♔f7

If 24...♔e8, 25 ♘e4.

25 ♘g5+ ♔f8

If now 25...♔e8, then White replies 26 ♖e1!.

26 ♕d5! ♖g7

Clearly forced.

27 ♘e6+ ♔g8
28 ♘xg7+ ♔xg7
29 dxe7 ♘f6
30 ♕xb5 ♖a7
31 ♖e1 ♕d6
32 e8♘+

The simplest method of securing the win.

32 ... ♘xe8
33 ♕xe8 ♕xd2
34 ♕e5+ ♔f7
35 h4 ♖xa3

This desperate capture conceals a last trap.

36 ♕e8+ ♔g7
37 ♖e7+ ♔h6
38 ♕f8+ ♔h5
39 ♖e5+ ♔g4
40 ♖g5+! 1-0

Avoiding the trap – not 40 f3+? ♔g3 41 ♖g5+ ♕xg5! 42 hxg5 ♖a1#.

Game 24

Torres – Alekhine

Exhibition Game, Seville 1922

Ruy Lopez

1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 ♗b5 a6
4 ♗a4 ♘f6
5 0-0 d6

This move, endorsed by Rubinstein, seems to me less sound than 5...♗e7 as White has at his disposal several good continuations; moreover, he can obtain a draw by a forced variation (see the following note).

6 ♗xc6+

This exchange, however, is not to be recommended. White would do better to adopt one of the following continuations:

1) 6 c3 and if 6...♘xe4, then 7 d4 with a fine attack.

2) 6 ♕e2.

3) 6 d4 and if 6...b5, 7 ♗b3 exd4 8 c3!, sacrificing a pawn in return for the attack. This line of play was successfully played by Yates against Rubinstein on two occasions (London 1922 and Karlsbad 1923).

4) 6 ♖e1 b5 7 ♗b3 ♘a5. A game Aurbach-Alekhine, played in Paris during October 1922, continued thus: 8 d4 ♘xb3 9 axb3 ♗b7 10 dxe5 ♘xe4 11 exd6 ♗xd6 12 ♕d4! ♕e7 13 ♘c3! (not 13 ♕xg7? 0-0-0 14 ♗g5 ♘xg5! and wins[1]) 13...f5 14 ♗g5 ♕d7 (if 14...♕f7, as given in Collijn's *Lärobok*, 15 ♘xe4 fxe4 16 ♖xe4+! ♗xe4 17 ♕xe4+ ♔d7 18 ♖d1 and White wins) 15 ♘xe4 fxe4 16 ♖xe4+! ♗xe4 17 ♕xe4+ ♔f7 18 ♖e1! ♖ae8! 19 ♕d5+ ♔f8 *(D)*

20 ♖e5! ♖xe5 21 ♘xe5 ♕e8 22 ♕f3+ ♔g8 23 ♕d5+ and White draws by perpetual check[2].

6	**...**	**bxc6**
7	**d4**	**♘xe4!**
8	**♖e1**	**f5**
9	**dxe5**	**d5**

Now Black undoubtedly has the better game, with his two bishops and his strongly-posted knight in the centre.

10	**♘d4**	**♗c5**
11	**c3**	

Sooner or later necessary in order to develop the queen's knight at d2, without leaving the d4-knight *en prise* to Black's bishop.

11	**...**	**0-0**
12	**f4**	

It would have been rather better to dislodge the black knight by 12 f3 and then to play 13 f4. Nevertheless, in this blocked position the gain of a tempo is hardly capable of improving White's game sufficiently.

12	**...**	**♕e8**
13	**♗e3**	**♗b6**
14	**♘d2**	**♗b7**

In perfect safety Black prepares the advance of his centre pawns, thus enabling his bishops to exercise pressure on the hostile king.

15	**♘2f3**	**♖d8**
16	**♕c2**	**c5** *(D)*

17 ♘b3

1 Since 15 ♖xe7 ♘xf3+ 16 gxf3 ♗xe7 17 ♔f1 ♖hg8 18 ♕xh7 ♖d1+ 19 ♔e2 ♖gg1 gives Black a winning attack.

2 23 ♗e7!? is an interesting winning attempt—23...h6 24 ♗xd6 cxd6 25 ♕d5+ ♔h7 26 ♕d3+ g6 27 ♕xd6 gives White an edge.

17 ♘e2 at once was preferable, upon which Black would probably have continued 17...h6 followed by 18...♔h8 and 19...♖g8, preparing to open the g-file by ...g5. The text move allows Black to increase his pressure on the centre still more.

17 ... c4!

Profiting by the fact that White cannot play 18 ♗xb6 on account of 18...cxb3.

18 ♘bd4 c5
19 ♘e2 ♕c6
20 ♖ad1 h6!

Continuing with the above-mentioned plan.

21 ♖f1 ♔h8!

In order that, in the event of ...d4, the c4-pawn shall not be captured by White's queen with check, a precaution whose purpose will appear later on.

22 ♔h1 ♕g6

Black intends to occupy h5 with his queen, which would make the advance of the g-pawn still more effective.

23 ♘eg1

By attempting to prevent this strategically decisive advance White allows his opponent to conclude the game with a pretty combination, based upon the hidden action of his light-squared bishop on the long diagonal.

23 ... ♕h5
24 ♘h3 *(D)*
24 ... d4!

Allowing the queen sacrifice on the 28th move, as a result of which Black wins a piece or forces mate.

B

25 cxd4 cxd4
26 ♗xd4 ♗xd4
27 ♖xd4 ♖xd4
28 ♘xd4 ♕xh3!
29 gxh3 ♘f2+
30 ♔g1 ♘xh3#

Game 25
Alekhine – Yates
London 1922
Queen's Gambit Declined

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e6
3 ♘f3 d5
4 ♘c3 ♗e7
5 ♗g5 0-0
6 e3 ♘bd7
7 ♖c1 c6
8 ♕c2 ♖e8

This move is inferior to 8...a6 because after 9 ♗d3! Black can no longer transpose into the system of defence that offers the best chances.

9 ♗d3 dxc4

Reverting to Capablanca's defence with the sole difference that his rook is at e8 instead of f8, which is not of much importance. If 9...a6 White could now advantageously

reply 10 cxd5! taking advantage of the fact that Black cannot now recapture the pawn with his knight.

On the other hand, after 9...h6 10 ♗f4! a6, the exchange at d5 would be entirely to White's advantage, e.g. 11 cxd5! (but not 11 c5 ♗xc5! 12 dxc5 e5, threatening 13...e4, and thus regaining the piece with a fine position—compare the game Euwe-Spielmann, Mährisch-Ostrau 1923) 11...♘xd5 12 ♘xd5 exd5 13 0-0 ♘f6 14 h3, etc., and White will be able to undertake an attack on the queenside by ♖b1, b4, a4 and b5 leaving his opponent without appreciable counter-chances.

10 ♗xc4 ♘d5
11 ♘e4

The right move here was 11 ♗xe7. It should be noticed that in the variation 11 ♘e4 ♕a5+, the position of the rook at e8 is rather an advantage for Black.

11 ... f5

Among the various replies to be considered by Black this is undoubtedly the least worthy of commendation. Quite apart from the fact that it in no way obstructs White's castling, it also yields the splendid square at e5 to the enemy knight without the slightest compensation. From this point Black's game may be considered strategically lost, which is not to say that the realisation of victory will be an easy matter.

12 ♗xe7 ♕xe7 *(D)*
13 ♘ed2 b5

This move, which aims at the liberation of the useless c8-bishop, is

worse than the disadvantage that it seeks to mitigate, for White will now seize control of the c-file and especially the square c5, which Black has just given up. Black would have done better to occupy White with the following diversion: 13...♘5b6 14 ♗d3 g6, preparing ...e5, or 14 ♗b3 a5 15 a4 ♘d5 and ...♘b4, although in these cases too his prospects would be doubtful.

14 ♗xd5 cxd5
15 0-0

White's next moves are based upon simple but indisputable logic. By occupying the square c5 with one of his knights, he will force its exchange against the opposing knight, after which he will be able to settle his other knight on the same square without fear of interference.

15 ... a5
16 ♘b3 a4
17 ♘c5 ♘xc5
18 ♕xc5! ♕xc5

The exchange of queens would ultimately have become inevitable. Now Black is entirely at the mercy of his opponent, who will be free to choose the best road to victory.

19 ♖xc5 b4
20 ♖fc1 ♗a6
21 ♘e5!

The knight arrives at the right moment to prevent Black opposing his rooks on the c-file, e.g. 21...♖ec8 22 ♖xc8+ ♖xc8 23 ♖xc8+ ♗xc8 24 ♘c6, with the double threat 25 ♘e7+ and 25 ♘xb4, making the win certain for White.

21 ... ♖eb8
22 f3!

Preparing the decisive advance of the white king.

22 ... b3
23 a3 h6
24 ♔f2!

The starting-point of a mating manoeuvre based on the following considerations: because Black must avoid the exchange of rooks and as his pieces are needed on the queenside to defend his pawns, the black king must sooner or later succumb to the combined assault of the four white pieces, including the king.

24 ... ♔h7
25 h4!

Hindering ...g5, after ♔g3 and ♔f4[1].

25 ... ♖f8
26 ♔g3 ♖fb8

Black has to resign himself to complete inactivity.

27 ♖c7

Threatening among other things 28 ♘d7 followed by 29 ♘c5 or ♘b6.

27 ... ♗b5
28 ♖1c5!

In order to double rooks on the 7th rank by 29 ♖e7! ♖e8 30 ♖f7 and 31 ♖cc7.

28 ... ♗a6
29 ♖5c6 ♖e8
30 ♔f4

The doubling of the rooks on the 7th rank by ♖f7 being now assured, White brings his king towards the centre.

30 ... ♔g8
31 h5!

Foreseeing the final manoeuvre, for whose success it is essential to prevent Black's king from emerging at g6 after 35 ♘d7!.

31 ... ♗f1

It is curious to observe that the bishop, despite having full freedom, cannot take part in the defence.

32 g3

A waiting move. 32 ♖f7 would now be premature, because of the reply 32...♖ac8.

32 ... ♗a6

If 32...♗e2 White would have continued his attack by 33 ♘g6 followed by 34 ♘h4 and 35 ♔e5.

33 ♖f7 ♔h7

Black is quite unable to forestall the mating attack by 33...♖f8, since White would have very speedily concluded the game by capturing the e-pawn.

34 ♖cc7 ♖g8

---

1 This note was completely garbled in the original English edition of *Alekhine's Best Games.*

35 ♘d7!

This threat to win the exchange forces the following reply.

35 ... ♔h8 *(D)*

36 ♘f6! ♖gf8

In the hope of bringing about the exchange of one rook at least.

37 ♖xg7!

This sacrificial combination leads to mate in at most seven moves.

37 ... ♖xf6
38 ♔e5! 1-0

The point of the combination! The black rook can neither retire, nor can it be defended by the other rook, without allowing a mate in two moves. But even after its capture by the white king, mate can only be delayed by desperate moves.

Game 26
Bogoljubow – Alekhine
Hastings 1922
Dutch Defence

1 d4 f5

A risky defence, which up to the present I have adopted only very infrequently in serious games.

But in the present game I had positively to play for a win in order to make sure of first prize, whereas a draw was sufficient for my opponent to secure third prize, and hence I found myself forced to run some risks which were, after all, justified by the result.

2 c4 ♘f6
3 g3

It is better to prepare the flank development of the light-squared bishop in the Dutch Defence before playing c4, because now Black can advantageously exchange his dark-squared bishop, which has only a very limited range of action in this opening.

3 ... e6
4 ♗g2 ♗b4+
5 ♗d2 ♗xd2+
6 ♘xd2

The recapture with the queen, followed by 7 ♘c3, is a little better.

6 ... ♘c6
7 ♘gf3 0-0
8 0-0 d6
9 ♕b3

This manoeuvre does not prevent Black from realising his plan, but it is already difficult to suggest a satisfactory line of play for White.

9 ... ♔h8
10 ♕c3 e5!
11 e3

If 11 dxe5 dxe5 12 ♘xe5? ♘xe5 13 ♕xe5 White's knight would be *en prise* to Black's queen.

11 ... a5!

It was very important to prevent b4 temporarily, as will be seen later.

12 b3

Not 12 a3 on account of 12...a4.

12 ... ♕e8!

13 a3 ♕h5! *(D)*

Now Black has secured an attacking position, for White cannot answer 14 dxe5 dxe5 15 ♘xe5 ♘xe5 16 ♕xe5 on account of 16...♘g4, winning outright; nor can he play 14 b4? e4 15 ♘e1 axb4.

W

14 h4

A good defensive move, which secures new squares for his f3-knight and revives the threat of 15 dxe5.

14 ... ♘g4

15 ♘g5

White seeks to dislodge Black's knight at once by 16 f3, which, however, weakens his pawn position still further. Possibly 15 b4 would now be preferable.

15 ... ♗d7

16 f3

If 16 ♗xc6 ♗xc6 17 f3, then 17...exd4! 18 fxg4 dxc3 19 gxh5 cxd2 leading to the better endgame for Black.

16 ... ♘f6

17 f4

Already compulsory, in view of the threatened 17...f4!.

17 ... e4

18 ♖fd1

In order to protect the g-pawn (which was threatened by 18...♕g4 and 19...♘h5) by ♘f1. However, the preliminary advance 18 d5!, preventing Black from forming a centre, would have yielded White more chances of a successful defence.

18 ... h6

19 ♘h3 d5!

By this move Black completely wrecks his opponent's hopes in the centre, and shortly seizes the initiative on the queenside in quite unexpected fashion.

20 ♘f1 ♘e7

Preparing 21...a4!.

21 a4 ♘c6!

Now this knight can penetrate right into the hostile camp via b4 and d3.

22 ♖d2 ♘b4

23 ♗h1

The fact that White had to conjure up this complicated manoeuvre in order to create faint chances on the kingside shows clearly the inferiority of his position.

23 ... ♕e8!

This strong move yields Black a new advantage in every case: either control of the square d5 after 24 cxd5, or the opening of a file on the queenside after 24 c5 b5!, or lastly, as in the actual game, the win of a pawn.

24 ♖g2

White is still trying for 25 g4, but even this weak counter-chance will not be vouchsafed him.

24 ... dxc4
25 bxc4 ♗xa4
26 ♘f2 ♗d7
27 ♘d2 b5!

The renewal of the struggle for the centre squares, a struggle whose vicissitudes will culminate in a stirring and original finish.

28 ♘d1 ♘d3!

Preparing the ensuing combination. 28...bxc4 would have been weak, for White's knight would later have secured a good square at e5.

29 ♖xa5

In the event of 29 cxb5 ♗xb5 30 ♖xa5 ♘d5 31 ♕a3 ♖xa5 32 ♕xa5 ♕c6 Black has a winning attack.

29 ... b4!
30 ♖xa8

If 30 ♕a1 ♖xa5 31 ♕xa5, then after 31...♕a8! 32 ♕xa8 ♖xa8 Black's rook penetrates into White's game with decisive effect.

30 ... bxc3!

As will be seen, this continuation is much stronger than 30...♕xa8 31 ♕b3 ♗a4 32 ♕b1, after which White could still defend himself[1].

31 ♖xe8 *(D)*

31 ... c2!!

The point! White cannot prevent this pawn from queening.

32 ♖xf8+ ♔h7

B

33 ♘f2

It is clear that this is the only possible move.

33 ... c1♕+
34 ♘f1 ♘e1!

Threatening an unexpected and original 'Smothered Mate'.

35 ♖h2 ♕xc4

Creating a new threat of mate in a few moves, starting with 36...♗b5, which compels White to sacrifice the exchange.

36 ♖b8 ♗b5
37 ♖xb5 ♕xb5
38 g4

The only chance for White to prolong his resistance, but Black retorts with a fresh surprise move.

38 ... ♘f3+!
39 ♗xf3 exf3
40 gxf5

Forced, for if 40 g5 Black would have obtained two united passed pawns after 40...♘g4.

40 ... ♕e2!!

---

1 30...♕xa8 31 ♕b3 ♕a1 32 ♘f1 ♖a8 33 ♘b2 ♖a3 is a simple technical win since White's position is a total wreck, so Alekhine's winning combination, while spectacular, wasn't strictly necessary.

This move leads to a problem-like position, in which White is unable to move any piece without exposing himself to immediate loss, for example 41 ♘h3 ♘g4!, 41 ♘g4 ♘xg4 or 41 ♖h3 (or h1) 41...♘g4 and wins.

Hence, after two unimportant moves, he must play e4, which leads to an immediate liquidation, with a won endgame for Black.

41 d5 ♔g8!

Not, however, the plausible move 41...h5 upon which White could have saved himself by 42 ♘h3 followed by 43 ♘g5+.

42 h5 ♔h7
43 e4 ♘xe4
44 ♘xe4 ♕xe4
45 d6

Being unable to defend his pawns White endeavours to dislocate those of his opponent, but his game is hopelessly lost.

45 ... cxd6
46 f6 gxf6
47 ♖d2 ♕e2! *(D)*

A pretty finish, worthy of this fine game. Black forces a winning pawn endgame.

48 ♖xe2 fxe2
49 ♔f2 exf1♕+
50 ♔xf1 ♔g7
51 ♔f2 ♔f7
52 ♔e3 ♔e6
53 ♔e4 d5+
0-1

Game 27
Alekhine – Réti
Vienna 1922
Ruy Lopez

1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 ♗b5 a6
4 ♗a4 ♘f6
5 ♘c3 b5
6 ♗b3 ♗c5

If it was Black's intention to develop his bishop at c5, he should have done so before playing ...b5, for after 5...b5 he has nothing better than 6...♗e7 which, however, gives him a satisfactory game. The text move, on the contrary, needlessly exposes him to grave perils.

7 ♘xe5!

The correct reply, yielding White an extremely dangerous attack in every variation.

7 ... ♘xe5
8 d4 ♗d6
9 dxe5 ♗xe5
10 f4!

This move, which would be bad if Black's b-pawn were still at b7 and White's bishop on a4 (because of 10...♗xc3+ and 11...♘xe4), shows the error of Black's 6th move.

10 ... ♗xc3+

11 bxc3 0-0

Here forced, for if 11...♘xe4, 12 ♗d5.

12 e5 *(D)*

B

If now 12...♘e8 13 0-0 d6 14 f5 with an irresistible attack for White. White appears to have secured a decisive positional advantage, for the withdrawal of the knight to e8 seems compulsory (12...♘e4 13 ♕d5! and wins), but my ingenious opponent succeeds in finding the only move to give him defensive chances, and in the sequel he shows in exemplary manner how to make the most of them.

12 ... c5!

The text move threatens, should White capture the knight, to shut off the hostile bishop by 13...c4, thereby leading into an endgame with bishops of opposite colours. What is White to play to keep his advantage? The following variations, considered during the actual game, seemed to me quite inadequate:

1) 13 exf6 ♖e8+ 14 ♔f1 c4.

2) 13 c4 d5! 14 exf6 ♖e8+ 15 ♔f1 ♕xf6! and 16...dxc4.

3) 13 0-0 c4 14 exf6 ♕xf6 15 ♕d5 ♕b6+ and 16...♗b7.

4) 13 ♗d5 ♘xd5 14 ♕xd5 ♕b6! 15 ♗e3 ♗b7 16 ♗xc5 (16 ♕xc5 ♕g6!) 16...♗xd5 17 ♗xc5 ♗xg2 18 ♖g1 ♗e4.

Black has the better game in the first three variations and has equality in the fourth.

13 ♗a3!!

The key move of a deep combination whose principal variation consists of some ten moves and which results in the gain of a pawn in a superior position. It was evidently quite impossible to foresee, at this stage of the game, that this material advantage would, in this particular position, prove insufficient for victory against the impeccable defence set up by Black.

13 ... ♕a5!

The best reply. Black indirectly defends his c-pawn whilst attacking the hostile dark-squared bishop, but White's manoeuvre initiated by 13 ♗a3! is based upon the temporary removal of the black queen from the centre.

14 0-0 ♕xa3

15 exf6 c4 *(D)*

Black is not excessively uneasy concerning the reply 16 ♕d5 (with the double threat 17 ♕g5 and 17 ♕xa8), being convinced that he will save the situation by 16...♕a5 followed by the capture of the bishop, which is cut off. But, as the sequel shows, this calculation is only partly correct.

16 ♕d5! ♕a5!

17 fxg7

Not 17 ♕xa8 owing to 17...♕b6+ and 18...♗b7, winning for Black.

17 ... ♕b6+

18 ♔h1 ♔xg7!

Again the only move. If 18...♖d8, then 19 ♗xc4! bxc4 (forced) 20 ♕xa8 ♗b7 21 ♖ab1 and White wins the exchange.

19 ♗xc4!

The point of the whole combination! This bishop, which appeared hopelessly doomed, gains a fresh lease of life, for if 19...bxc4, then 20 ♕xa8 and 21 ♖ab1, as in the preceding note. White, with his pawn plus and threats against the exposed black king, seems to have a comparatively easy win, but this is only a will-o'-the-wisp.

19 ... ♗b7!

20 ♕e5+

Equally after 20 ♕g5+ ♕g6 21 ♗d3 f5! Black would have sufficient resources available.

20 ... ♕f6

21 ♗d3 ♖fe8!

An excellent defensive move by which Black sacrifices a second pawn in order to occupy the central files with his rooks. After 21...♕xe5 22 fxe5 ♖ac8 23 ♖f4 ♖xc3 24 ♖g4+ ♔h8 25 ♖h4 Black probably could not save the game.

22 ♕h5 h6

23 ♕g4+ ♔h8

24 ♕xd7 ♖e7

25 ♕d4 ♕xd4!

26 cxd4 ♖d8

Taking advantage of the fact that White's d-pawn cannot readily be defended, e.g. 27 c3 b4! 28 cxb4 ♖xd4, followed by 29...♖xb4.

27 f5!

In order to secure an outpost by 27...♖xd4 28 f6, with good attacking chances against the hostile king, but Black prefers to temporise and to postpone the capture of the d-pawn until later, first taking a precautionary measure.

27 ... f6! *(D)*

28 ♖ae1

Reconciling himself to giving back one pawn in order to exchange the formidable black bishop. 28 ♖f4, although temporarily preserving the advantage of two pawns, would be insufficient for victory, e.g. 28...♖g7

29 ♗f1 ♖c8! 30 ♖f2 (or 30 ♖c1) 30...♖c3 followed by 31...♗d5 or 31...♖a3, and White cannot possibly defend all his pawns[1].

28 ... ♖g7!

Of course not 28...♖xe1 29 ♖xe1 ♖xd4 because of 30 ♖e8+ followed by 31 ♖e7+ and White wins.

29 ♗e4 ♖xd4
30 ♗xb7 ♖xb7
31 ♖e6

Winning a second pawn once again, but only momentarily.

31 ... ♔g7!
32 ♖xa6 ♖c4

Still more exact was 32...♖a4! although the text move is also adequate[2].

33 ♖f3

Obviously after 33 ♖f2 ♖bc7 the c-pawn cannot be defended.

33 ... ♖xc2
34 h3 ♔f7!

Forestalling the threatened 35 ♖g3+ and 36 ♖g6.

35 ♖g3 ♖f2
36 ♖g6 ♖xf5
37 ♖xh6 ♔g7
38 ♖h4 b4!

After this move, which creates a permanent threat to swap the queenside pawns, White's winning prospects are reduced to vanishing point.

39 ♖g4+ ♔f7
40 ♖g3 ♖fb5
41 ♖b3 ♔g6
42 ♔h2 ♖c5
43 ♖a4 ♖cb5 *(D)*

W

44 h4 ♖5b6
45 ♔h3 ♖b8
46 g3 f5!
47 ♖a5 ♖c8
48 ♖f3 ♖f6
49 ♔g2 ♖c3!
50 ♖a8 ♖xf3
51 ♔xf3 ♖c6
52 ♖b8 ♖c4
53 ♖b6+ ♔g7
54 h5 ♖d4
55 ♖c6! ♖e4
56 ♖g6+ ♔f7
57 g4

The supreme effort!

57 ... ♖xg4!

---

1 Nevertheless, this seems to be the best winning chance. White should continue 31 a4, attempting to eliminate the weak a-pawn, and if 31...b4 then 32 a5, fixing the pawn on a6 and isolating the b4-pawn. In this case White has good winning prospects.

2 I don't understand this comment; after 32...♖a4 33 ♖xa4 bxa4 34 a3 ♖b2 35 g4 ♖a2 36 ♖f3 White keeps his two extra pawns, since 36...♖xc2 is answered by 37 ♖f4.

At once forcing the draw.

58 ♖xg4 fxg4+
59 ♔xg4 ♔g7!
½-½

Black's king arrives just in time to stop White's a-pawn, e.g. 60 ♔f4 ♔h6 61 ♔e4 ♔xh5 62 ♔d4 ♔g5 63 ♔c4 ♔f5 64 ♔xb4 ♔e6 65 ♔b5 ♔d7 66 ♔b6 ♔c8.

A splendid example of Réti's careful defence.

Game 28
Alekhine – Sämisch
Exhibition Game, Berlin 1923
Sicilian Defence

1 e4 c5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 ♗e2

In the Vienna Tournament of 1922, playing against the same opponent, I had continued 3 d4. The text move indicates White's intention to castle before undertaking any action in the centre.

3 ... e6
4 0-0 d6

After 4...d5 5 exd5 exd5 6 d4 Black's d-pawn would be isolated and therefore weak.

5 d4 cxd4
6 ♘xd4 ♘f6
7 ♗f3!

White delays the plausible move 7 ♘c3 in order to play first c4, thus preventing any counter-attack on the c-file.

7 ... ♘e5

To secure the advantage of the two bishops, which is rather illusory in this position. This manoeuvre loses valuable time which would be better utilised in playing ...♗e7, followed by ...0-0 and ...♗d7, etc.

8 c4! ♘xf3+
9 ♕xf3 ♗e7
10 ♘c3 0-0
11 b3

White threatens to occupy the long diagonal, so Black prepares to oppose his own dark-squared bishop, a manoeuvre which, however, implies a further loss of time.

11 ... ♘d7
12 ♗b2 ♗f6
13 ♖ad1 a6

Preventing the threatened ♘db5, but in any case his d-pawn remains permanently weak.

14 ♕g3 ♕c7
15 ♔h1!

An essential preliminary to the decisive manoeuvre starting with the advance of the f-pawn.

15 ... ♖d8 *(D)*

16 f4 b6
17 f5!

White's positional advantage and attacking chances are already so

great that abandoning the square e5 to the opponent cannot present any strategic inconvenience. Moreover the text move, if Black answers it in the most plausible manner, is shown to be the prelude to a beautiful final combination.

17 ... ♗e5 *(D)*

Black's game is untenable, for White's attack is already too strong, e.g. 17...♗xd4 18 ♖xd4 ♘e5 19 f6 ♘g6 20 ♗a3! with a decisive advantage for White.

18 fxe6!!

This queen sacrifice, which Black is compelled to accept, decides the game in a few moves.

18 ... ♗xg3

If 18...fxe6, then 19 ♘xe6.

19 exf7+ ♔h8

Also forced.

20 ♘d5!!

The whole point of the sacrifice! 20 ♘e6 would not be so good, because of 20...♕b8 21 ♘d5 ♗e5 and Black could still defend himself, whereas after the text move he remains defenceless, as the following variations show:

1) 20...♕b8 21 ♘c6 ♗e5 (or 21...♕b7 22 ♘xd8) 22 ♗xe5 dxe5 23 ♘xb8 ♖xb8 24 ♘c7! ♖f8 25 ♘e6 followed by 26 ♘xf8 and 27 ♖d8, and White wins.

2) 20...♕a7 21 ♘c6 ♗e5 22 ♗xe5 dxe5 23 ♘xa7 ♖xa7 24 ♘xb6 ♖f8 25 ♘xc8 ♖xc8 26 ♖xd7 and White wins.

3) 20...♕b7 21 ♘e6! ♗e5 22 ♘xd8 and White wins.

4) 20...♕c5 21 ♘e6 ♗e5 22 ♗xe5 dxe5 23 ♘xc5 bxc5 24 ♘c7 ♖b8 25 ♘e8! is again winning for White.

As can be seen, in all these variations White's f-pawn is stronger than Black's queen! So...

1-0

Game 29
Grünfeld – Alekhine
Karlsbad 1923
Brilliancy Prize
Queen's Gambit Declined

1	**d4**	**♘f6**
2	**c4**	**e6**
3	**♘f3**	**d5**
4	**♘c3**	**♗e7**
5	**♗g5**	**♘bd7**
6	**e3**	**0-0**
7	**♖c1**	**c6**
8	**♕c2**	**a6!**
9	**a3**	

Grünfeld is probably correct in affirming that this move is the best, but this assertion simply demonstrates that White's whole system, or rather 8 ♕c2, yields no more than equality.

9 ... h6

This advance should not be made until Black has definitely made up his mind between the two systems of defence: ...dxc4, followed by ...b5 and ...c5; or ...dxc4, followed by ...♘d5. But although this move has the advantage of weakening the attack on the point h7, when White succeeds in posting his light-squared bishop on b1 (Grünfeld's variation), it is, on the other hand, insufficient after ...dxc4 and ...♘d5, since it affords White the opportunity to keep his dark-squared bishop by ♗g3, thereby leaving Black's pieces in their confined positions.

10 ♗h4 ♖e8!

An important improvement on the line of play adopted by Maroczy against Grünfeld in the Vienna Tournament of 1922. This game continued 10...dxc4 11 ♗xc4 b5 12 ♗a2 ♗b7 13 ♗b1 ♖e8 14 ♘e5! ♘f8 15 0-0 and White had much the better game. The text move gains an extremely important tempo by eliminating the subsequent mating threat at h7 and thereby enables Black to free his game speedily by playing ...c5!.

11 ♗d3

White could have played 11 h3 without loss of time, seeing that Black has nothing better than the following capture of the c4-pawn. The question is whether this move would in the end prove useful or detrimental to him. In my game against Chajes (see Game 32) I wished to try this experiment, but my opponent, who adopted an altogether abnormal system of defence, did not give me the chance.

11 ... dxc4
12 ♗xc4 b5
13 ♗a2 c5 *(D)*

W

The liberating move!

14 ♖d1

After this move Black gradually succeeds in seizing the initiative.

Upon 14 dxc5, Black would have replied 14...♘xc5, and if 15 ♗b1 ♗b7!, for the variation 16 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 17 ♕h7+ ♔f8 18 ♘xb5 axb5 19 ♖xc5 ♗xb2 would be completely in his favour.

14 0-0 cxd4 (14...♕b6 is also worthy of consideration) 15 exd4 is a little better, as played by Réti and Grünfeld against Teichmann in the same tournament. Here is the continuation of the game Grünfeld-Teichmann: 15...♗b7 16 ♖fd1 ♕b6 17 ♘e5 and now, instead of the passive move 17...♘f8, Black could have obtained a slight positional advantage by means of a pretty combination discovered by Victor Kahn: 17...♘xe5! 18 dxe5 ♕c6! 19 f3

♘g4![1] 20 ♘d5! (White has nothing better, for 20 ♗xe7 is refuted by 20...♕b6+) 20...exd5 21 ♕xc6 ♗xc6 22 fxg4 (not 22 ♗xe7 ♘xe5 23 ♗d6 ♘c4) 22...♗xh4 23 ♖xc6 ♖xe5 24 g3! (not 24 ♗xd5 ♖d8) 24...♗f6 (or 24...♗g5) 25 ♖xd5[2] ♖e1+ followed by ...♖ae8 with advantage to Black.

This variation shows once again the frailty of the line 8 ♕c2 and 9 a3.

14 ... cxd4

Simplest, for after the removal of the rook from the c-file Black could not with certainty visualise a counter-attack on the queenside.

15 ♘xd4

Hoping to break through with his attack by a subsequent sacrifice of the exchange on d7.

15 ... ♕b6

16 ♗b1

This move appears to prevent the reply 16...♗b7 owing to the possibility of 17 ♘dxb5 axb5 18 ♖xd7! with a winning attack for White.

But ...

16 ... ♗b7!

Black plays this move all the same, for 17 ♘dxb5 would be refuted by 17...♕c6!! 18 ♘d4 (forced) 18...♕xg2 with a strong counter-attack. In this way Black has successfully completed his development. There consequently remains nothing else for White than castling, admitting the failure of his premature attack.

17 0-0 ♖ac8

18 ♕d2

Hindering Black's double threat ...♗e4 or ...♘e4. 18 ♕e2 would be insufficient on account of 18...♗xa3 19 ♘cxb5 ♗b4! and Black wins a pawn.

18 ... ♘e5!

This knight will soon occupy c4, thereby fixing the weakness of the queenside created by 9 a3.

19 ♗xf6

In order to exchange off Black's dangerous b7-bishop. White's next manoeuvre is finely conceived, but insufficient to equalise.

19 ... ♗xf6

20 ♕c2 g6

Not at all to prevent a harmless check at h7 but rather to secure a retreat for his dark-squared bishop, whose action on the long diagonal will be very powerful.

21 ♕e2 ♘c4

22 ♗e4!

Feeling himself strategically inferior, Grünfeld attempts to save himself by tactical skirmishing.

Having provoked 20...g6 he now hopes for the variation 22...♘xa3 23 ♕f3 ♗xe4 24 ♘xe4 ♗xd4 25 exd4, which would win the exchange for White.

22 ... ♗g7!

But by this simple move, which is part of his plan, Black retains his advantage.

---

1 I cannot see any problem with the simple 19...♕c5+ and 20...♕xe5.

2 25 ♗xd5 ♖d8 26 ♗xf7+ ♔xf7 27 ♖xf6+ is better, with an immediate draw.

23 ♗xb7 ♕xb7
24 ♖c1

The threat of 24...♘xa3 compels White to retrace his 14th move.

24 ... e5!

This advance of the e-pawn will give Black's knight a new outpost on d3, still more irksome for the opponent than its present position.

25 ♘b3 e4

Renewing Black's threat to play 26...♘xa3.

26 ♘d4 ♖ed8!

To make the following knight manoeuvre still more effective, for now when it reaches d3 the knight will intercept the defence of the d4-knight by the white rook.

27 ♖fd1 ♘e5
28 ♘a2

After this move, which removes the knight from the field of action, White is definitely lost.

Comparatively better was 28 f3 upon which Black would have continued 28...exf3 29 gxf3 ♘c4 with attacking chances on both flanks, and a probable win after a long and difficult struggle.

28 ... ♘d3
29 ♖xc8 ♕xc8 *(D)*
30 f3

W

Too late! But already there was no satisfactory reply, since after 30 ♘c3 f5 31 f3 Black would have gained the victory by the same sacrifice which occurred in the actual game: 31...♖xd4! 32 exd4 ♗xd4+ 33 ♔f1 ♘f4 34 ♕d2[1] ♕c4+ 35 ♘e2 e3! 36 ♕e1[2] ♗xb2 37 ♖d8+ ♔f7 38 ♕d1 ♗xa3! 39 ♕d7+ ♗e7 40 ♕e8+ ♔f6 41 ♕h8+ ♔g5 42 h4+ ♔h5 43 g4+ fxg4 44 ♕e5+ g5!! and Black wins.

30 ... ♖xd4!
31 fxe4 *(D)*

If 31 exd4 ♗xd4+ 32 ♔f1 ♘f4 33 ♕xe4 (or 33 ♕d2 ♕c4+ 34 ♔e1 e3! and wins) 33 ... ♕c4+ 34 ♔e1 ♘xg2+ 35 ♔d2 ♗e3+ and Black wins. White, who does not perceive the hidden point of the sacrifice, hopes to save himself by the text move.

---

1 There is a cunning defence by 34 ♘d5, and after 34...♘xd5 35 ♖xd4 ♕c1+ 36 ♔f2 e3+ 37 ♔g3 ♕c7+ 38 f4 g5 39 ♕d1 gxf4+ 40 ♔h3 there is no clear-cut route to an advantage for Black.

2 Alekhine overlooks the simple 36 b3!, which gives White a clear advantage. All this suggests that the sacrifice on d4 is simply misconceived, and that Black would have been much better off playing the line 31 ... ♗xd4 32 exd4 ♕c4 33 d5 ♕c5+ 34 ♔f1 ♘f4, which is based on the beautiful combination 35 ♕d2 e3 36 ♕e4 e2+!! 37 ♘xe2 ♖xd5 38 ♕xc5 ♖xd1+ 39 ♔f2 ♘d3+.

B

31 ... ♘f4!
32 exf4
Evidently forced.
32 ... ♕c4!!
Winning at least a piece, but White chooses the speediest death.
33 ♕xc4 ♖xd1+
34 ♕f1 ♗d4+
and mates next move.

Game 30
Alekhine – Rubinstein
Karlsbad 1923
Brilliancy Prize
Queen's Gambit Declined

1 d4 d5
2 c4 e6
3 ♘f3 ♘f6
4 ♘c3 ♗e7
5 ♗g5 ♘bd7
6 e3 0-0
7 ♖c1 c6
8 ♕c2

This move, which was very fashionable since the Ostend Tournaments of 1907 and which had almost completely superseded the old move (8 ♗d3), will soon become totally obsolete, since every international tournament brings a fresh and sufficient line of play for Black.

In the Mährisch-Ostrau Tournament of 1923, Wolf played against the great theorist Grünfeld the simple continuation 8...♘e4 9 ♗xe7 ♕xe7 10 ♗d3 (10 ♘xe4 obviously leads to nothing, for if White captures the pawn on e4 he loses his b-pawn) 10...♘xc3 with an entirely defensible game which resulted in a draw.

But apart from 8...♘e4 there are available to Black at least four other replies whose inadequacy has not yet been demonstrated, namely 8...dxc4, 8...c5, 8...♖e8 and last but not least, 8...a6!.

8 ... a6!

In my opinion better than 8...h6 upon which White can reply advantageously 9 ♗f4, e.g. 9...♖e8 (if 9...♘e4 then 10 ♗d3! f5 11 h4, followed at need by g3 and ♘e5, with advantage to White; but not 10 ♘xe4 dxe4 11 ♕xe4 ♗b4+ 12 ♘d2 ♕a5 13 ♕c2 e5! 14 dxe5 ♘c5 and Black has a strong attack) 10 ♗d3 dxc4 11 ♗xc4 b5 12 ♗d3 a6 13 a4!. From this point, the game Alekhine-Teichmann, Karlsbad 1923 unfolded in the following way: 13...♗b7 14 0-0 ♖c8 15 ♕b3 ♕b6 16 ♘e5 ♖ed8 17 ♘g6! ♗f8 18 ♘xf8 ♘xf8 19 ♘e4 ♘xe4 20 ♗xe4 ♘d7 21 ♗d6! ♘f6 22 ♗c5 ♕c7 23 ♗f3 a5 and White, by playing for example 24 ♖fe1 or 24 ♖c2, instead of accepting the pawn sacrificed, which only led to a draw, would have retained a winning position.

8...c5 usually results in the isolation of White's d-pawn, but on the other hand it allows White to undertake a rather dangerous attack on the kingside. This variation admits of a complicated and very difficult game, with nearly equal chances.

Concerning 8...dxc4, see game 25 (Alekhine-Yates).

9 a4

As this identical variation had yielded me a win the previous evening against Grünfeld, who played here 9 a3 (see Game 29), I wished to avoid fighting against the defence which I considered then, and still consider now, the best. This is the reason which decided me in favour of 9 a4, a move that Rubinstein, my present adversary, had employed against me, without conspicuous success, in a similar position in the Hastings Tournament of 1922. That game continued as follows: 8...h6 9 ♗h4 a6 10 a4 c5 11 ♗d3 cxd4 12 exd4 dxc4 13 ♗xc4 ♘b6 14 ♗a2 ♘bd5 15 ♗b1 ♘b4 16 ♕e2 ♗d7 17 0-0 ♗c6 18 ♖fd1 ♖c8 19 ♘e5 ♘fd5 20 ♗g3 ♗g5 21 f4! ♗h4 22 ♘xc6 ♖xc6 23 ♘xd5 ♖xc1 24 ♖xc1 ♘xd5 25 ♕e4 g6 26 ♗xh4 ♕xh4 27 f5? ♕g5! and Black won easily.

It is manifest that the move 9 a4 cannot pretend to yield any advantage, since Black can answer it by 9...♘e4! with greater force than on the preceding move, White's queenside being now slightly weak.

Rubinstein, however, seeks to take advantage of the weakness by a different method.

9 ... ♖e8

If 9...h6 White replies 10 ♗f4 with advantage.

10 ♗d3 dxc4

11 ♗xc4 ♘d5 *(D)*

We now realise the idea conceived by Black—a fusion of the new defensive system (...a6) with the old system (...dxc4 and ...♘d5), in the hope of thus profiting by the weakening of the square b4 created by the advance of White's a-pawn.

W

12 ♗f4!

White in his turn deviates from the beaten track. The text move is here much stronger than in the analogous position where I played it against Selezniev at Pistyan 1922 (see Game 15) for the following reasons:

1) After 12...♘xf4 13 exf4 the position of the black rook at e8 is less favourable than on f8, where it hinders a subsequent attack on the point f7.

2) The manoeuvre ...♘b6-d5 which, in the game cited, allowed Black to undertake a counter-attack, loses its sting because White's queen

is at c2 and he can therefore gain a tempo by ♗d3, threatening the h-pawn.

In addition the move a4, unfavourable in other cases, here affords him the possibility of ♗a2 and ♗b1, a manoeuvre analogous to the Grünfeld variation (9 a3), but still more effective here because of the opening of the e-file.

We can therefore anticipate, after the ensuing exchange, a slight positional advantage for White.

12 ... ♘xf4
13 exf4 c5

This move, which goes against the general principle of *not opening up fresh lines to a better-developed opponent*, is dictated by the wish to eliminate White's troublesome pawn on f4. White, who has not yet castled, can scarcely oppose this plan, and the game speedily assumes a most animated appearance.

14 dxc5

Forced, for 14 0-0 would be met by 14...cxd4 and 15...♘b6.

14 ... ♕c7!

The usual complement to the previous move. If now 15 g3 ♕c6 16 ♗e2 e5! and Black would have freed himself once and for all.

15 0-0 ♕xf4

The capture of the white c5-pawn would also be insufficient to maintain equality, e.g. 15...♗xc5 16 ♗d3 ♘f6 17 ♘e4! or 15...♘xc5 16 ♘e5.

16 ♘e4!

This pawn sacrifice is the only way to keep the initiative. The attempt to defend the c-pawn by b4 would be inadequate, as the b-pawn could not be supported by the a-pawn, e.g. 16 ♘e2 ♕h6 17 b4 a5!.

16 ... ♘xc5

If 16...♗xc5 17 ♘eg5 g6 (forced, since if 17...♘f8 White wins by 18 ♗d3), 18 ♖fe1! ♘f6 19 g3 ♕d6 20 ♖ed1 ♕e7 21 ♘e5 with an overwhelming attack[1]. The text move simplifies the position and allows Black some chances of salvation.

17 ♘xc5 ♗xc5
18 ♗d3 b6

If 18...♗d6 then 19 ♗xh7+ and 20 ♖fd1, threatening ♖d4.

19 ♗xh7+ ♔h8

This seemingly plausible move (and not the next move, as the majority of annotators have thought) is the decisive mistake! After 19...♔f8! Black's king would be less endangered than after the text move, and it would have been very difficult for White to show how he could win, despite his positional superiority.

20 ♗e4 ♖a7

Better was 20...♖b8, although in this case White would have obtained a decisive superiority by the following line of play: 21 g3 ♕f6 (or 21...♕d6 22 ♖fd1 ♕e7 23 ♘e5 ♕c7

1 After 21...♘g4! White's attack doesn't appear too dangerous, for example 22 ♘gxf7 ♘xf2, 22 ♘exf7 ♗xf2+ 23 ♔h1 ♗e3 or 22 ♘xg4 ♕xg5 23 ♗e2 ♗e7. In this last line White has some compensation, but Black is not worse.

24 ♕c3! a5 25 ♘c6, followed by 26 ♕c3, is winning for White) 22 b4 ♗d6 (else 23 ♕c7! follows) 23 ♖fd1 ♕e7[1] 24 ♗c6 ♖d8 25 ♖d4 g6 26 ♕d2! ♔g7 27 ♖d1 and White is winning.

21 b4!

From this point up to the end of the game Black has not a moment's respite. Obviously he cannot capture the b-pawn, because of 22 ♕xc8! and wins.

21 ... ♗f8 *(D)*

Therefore this retreat is absolutely forced.

22 ♕c6

Attacking the rook and the b-pawn. Black's reply is the only way to parry this double threat.

22 ... ♖d7

23 g3! ♕b8

The alternative was 23...♕d6 after which White had the choice between two winning lines:

1) 24 ♖fd1 ♕xd1+ (or 24...♕xc6 25 ♗xc6 ♖xd1+ 26 ♖xd1 ♖e7 27 ♖d8 and wins) 25 ♖xd1 ♖xd1+ 26 ♔g2 ♗d7 27 ♕xb6 ♗xa4 28 ♕xa6 ♗d7 29 ♘g5 ♔g8 30 ♕e2 and White wins.

2) 24 ♕c4 ♔g8 (or 24...♕e7 25 ♘e5! ♖d6 26 ♗c6![2] and wins) 25 ♗c6 ♖c7 26 ♖fd1 ♕e7[3] 27 ♕d3! and White wins.

24 ♘g5!

Threatening 25 ♘xf7+!.

24 ... ♖ed8 *(D)*

25 ♗g6!!

---

1 23...e5 is much better, releasing the c8-bishop. If 24 ♕c6, then 24...♖d8, threatening both 25...♗g4 and 25...♗b7, and Black is at least equal, so White should prefer 24 ♕d2 retaining an edge.

2 I don't see why this wins after 26...♖ed8, so it seems likely that it is a notation error, and that Alekhine intended 26 ♗g6!, which really does win immediately (26 ♗c6 is also given in the French edition).

3 After 26...♖xc6 27 ♕xc6 ♖xc6 28 ♖xc6 ♗b7 29 ♖c3 (29 b5 ♗xc6 30 bxc6 ♖c8 is good for Black) 29...♗xb4 30 ♖b3 ♗c5, followed by ...♗d5, White's winning chances appear to be very small.

The *coup de grâce*. Should Black take this bishop, the following mating variation would ensue: 25...fxg6 26 ♕e4! ♗xb4 27 ♕h4+ ♔g8 28 ♕h7+ ♔f8 29 ♕h8+ ♔e7 30 ♕xg7+ ♔e8 (or 30...♔d6 31 ♖fd1+ mating next move) 31 ♕g8+ ♗f8 32 ♕xg6+ ♔e7 33 ♕xe6#. On the other hand, 25...♗b7 26 ♕c4! would transpose into identical variations. Black is consequently forced to sacrifice the exchange, after which his game is hopeless.

25 ... ♕e5
26 ♘xf7+ ♖xf7
27 ♗xf7 ♕f5
28 ♖fd1!

Simple and decisive.

28 ... ♖xd1+
29 ♖xd1 ♕xf7
30 ♕xc8 ♔h7
31 ♕xa6 ♕f3
32 ♕d3+! 1-0

Game 31
Alekhine – Maroczy
Karlsbad 1923
Queen's Gambit Declined

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e6
3 ♘f3 d5
4 ♘c3 ♗e7
5 ♗g5 0-0
6 e3 ♘e4

A defence practised on several occasions by Dr. Emanuel Lasker, and subsequently by Capablanca, in their respective matches with Marshall. It is doubtless no worse than other defences, and has the advantage of simplifying the game, without creating weaknesses in Black's camp.

In the 1922 London Tournament Maroczy tried against me 6...c5, as recommended by Rubinstein in Collijn's *Lärobok*, and obtained a distinctly inferior game. Here is the instructive continuation of the game:

6...c5 7 cxd5 exd5 8 dxc5 ♗e6 9 ♗b5! ♗xc5 10 0-0 ♘c6 11 ♖c1 ♗e7 12 ♗xc6! bxc6 13 ♘a4 ♖c8 14 ♘d4 ♗d7 15 ♗xf6! ♗xf6 16 ♘c5 ♗e8 17 ♕g4 ♖b8 18 b3 g6 19 ♖c2 ♕d6 20 ♖fc1 ♗e5 21 ♘f3! ♗g7 22 ♕a4 ♕e7 23 ♘d4 ♖b6 24 h3 ♗e5 25 ♘d3! ♗xd4 26 exd4 ♖b7 27 ♖e1 ♕g5 and now by 28 ♖e5 White could have easily maintained a winning positional advantage.

7 ♗xe7 ♕xe7
8 ♕b3

In order to avoid the variation 8 cxd5 ♘xc3 9 bxc3 exd5 10 ♕b3 ♖d8 11 c4 ♘c6!, which seems to yield Black equality. However, 8 ♕c2 is a better way to implement this idea, for after the text move Black need not have captured the knight, and could first have played 7...c6 followed by 8...f5.

8 ... ♘xc3
9 ♕xc3 c6

At New York 1924, in an identical position, Maroczy played against me 9...c5, but after 10 cxd5 cxd4 11 ♘xd4 White has an evident advantage owing to the weakness of the d5-pawn and White's control of the open c-file.

10 ♗d3 ♘d7
11 0-0 f5 *(D)*

The 'Stonewall' formation is here quite without value, for even supposing that Black's knight were to occupy the square e4, it could be dislodged by f3, or else exchanged for White's bishop. On the other hand, the square e5 will furnish White with an impregnable position for his knight, Black's bishop being of a different colour from that of the square mentioned.

12 ♖ac1!

Anticipating Black's manoeuvre 12...♘f6 followed by 13...♘e4, to which he would have replied 13 ♘e5, White seizes his moment's respite to complete his development.

12 ... g5

But this attack, quite astonishing from a master of Maroczy's reputation, hopelessly compromises the already insecure black king position.

13 ♘d2! ♖f7

This is as inexplicable as the previous move. Comparatively better was 13...♘f6 followed by 14...♗d7.

14 f3 e5

In the hope of forcing the exchange of queens on the 18th move, but without sufficiently appreciating the reply 19 ♕c7!, although in any case the game was lost for Black.

15 cxd5 cxd5
16 e4! fxe4
17 fxe4 ♖xf1+
18 ♖xf1 exd4 *(D)*

Still reckoning on 19 ♕xd4 ♕c5, but White's next move shatters this last illusion.

19 ♕c7!

Paralysing in a single move all the black pieces, after which Black's position becomes hopeless.

19 ... ♔g7
20 ♖f5! dxe4
21 ♘xe4 ♕b4

Surrendering to the inevitable. If 21...h6 White wins easily by 22 h3, followed by 23 ♔h2 and 24 ♘d6.

22 ♖xg5+ 1-0

Game 32

Alekhine – Chajes

Karlsbad 1923

Queen's Gambit Declined

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e6

3 ♘f3 d5
4 ♘c3 ♘bd7

After this move White, apart from the text move (5 ♗g5), could very well have replied 5 cxd5 exd5 6 ♗f4!, with an excellent position. This is the reason why 4...♗e7 is considered better.

5 ♗g5 ♗e7

After 5...c6 6 e3 ♕a5 7 ♘d2 ♗b4 8 ♕c2 0-0 White, should he wish to avoid the line played in the game Grünfeld-Bogoljubow (Mährisch-Ostrau 1923), namely, 9 ♗e2 e5! 10 dxe5 ♘e4!, could continue simply 9 ♗xf6 ♘xf6 10 ♗d3 ♖d8 11 0-0 with a slight positional advantage, as played by Johner against Dr. Tarrasch at Trieste 1923.

6 e3 0-0
7 ♖c1 c6
8 ♕c2 a6!
9 a3 ♖e8
10 h3

In order to avoid the loss of a move by 10 ♗d3, which would have transposed into a position from the game Grünfeld-Alekhine, which is perfectly safe for Black (see Game 29) after 10...h6 11 ♗h4.

10 ... b5

A very interesting idea which may actually have some future. But its tactical realisation here lacks precision. It is on the 9th move, before 10 h3, that Black should have played 9...b5, if such was his intention, for in that case he could have answered 10 c5 by 10...e5 11 dxe5 ♘g4 with a very promising position. On the other hand, should White, instead of 10 c5, open the c-file by 10 cxd5 or 10 cxb5, this would ultimately turn in Black's favour, White having to lose two moves to bring his king into safety.

This example emphasises once again the numerous resources afforded by the defence 8...a6! in this variation.

11 c5!

Whereas now Black will not succeed in breaking through in the centre, and the weakness of his c-pawn will make itself felt sooner or later. It is, however, without immediate consequences, on account of the blocked position of the two adversaries and the difficulties experienced by White in penetrating the hostile lines.

11 ... ♘h5
12 ♗f4!

This is the only logical reply. White must at all cost retain control of the square e5.

12 ... ♘xf4
13 exf4 *(D)*

B

13 ... a5
14 ♗d3 g6!

The best line of defence. Black guards against the possibility of f5 and prepares a solid defensive position.

15 h4!

Not with the illusion of a mating attack but simply to secure, at the right moment, the opening of the h-file which will later on become a winning factor for White.

15 ... ♗f6
16 h5 ♘f8
17 g3

Quietly strengthening a position which Black can scarcely modify appreciably.

17 ... ♖a7
18 ♘d1!

Threatening to post this knight on g4. Black's next move is intended to prepare the double advance of the f-pawn and thus to shut out White's knight from the coveted square.

18 ... ♗g7
19 ♘e3 f5

If this move has the advantage of further strengthening the castled position, it does on the other hand leave Black with indifferent chances for the endgame.

20 ♕e2!

Preparing to occupy the square e5 with a white piece.

20 ... a4

This is the only move of Black's in the game which can be criticised, seeing that without apparent reason it abandons the square b4 to the white knights. If Black had not modified the pawn structure, White's right plan would have been ♘c2, ♔f1, ♘ce1, ♗b1, ♘d3 and finally ♘de5.

21 ♘c2

Now this knight can at need be brought to e5 via b4 and d3, saving time.

21 ... ♖ae7
22 ♔f1

In order to render innocuous the threat ...♗d7 followed by ...♗xd4! and ...e5, should White play, for example, 22 ♘b4 ♕c7.

22 ... ♗f6
23 ♘e5 *(D)*

This move to be sure compromises nothing, but the logical continuation was 23 ♘b4 followed by ♗b1, ♘d3 and ♘de5. Had Black made the correct reply White would have been forced to return to this plan.

B

23 ... ♗xe5

Better was 23...♕c7! followed by 24...♗xe5, forcing White either to recapture the bishop with the queen, which would have led to an exchange of queens, or else to recapture it with one of the pawns; in both cases his chances of winning would

have been reduced to vanishing point. In these circumstances White would have withdrawn his knight to f3, intending to carry out in perfect safety the manoeuvre sketched above.

24 ♕xe5

This exchange, provoking the weakening of the dark squares in the hostile position, yields White new winning chances.

24 ... ♕c7

25 ♕f6!

An excellent manoeuvre intended to create a new weakness at h7.

25 ... ♖f7

26 ♕h4 ♕e7

27 hxg6!

The right moment for this exchange has come at last, for Black cannot recapture with the pawn, which would allow him to oppose his rooks on the h-file. Now White has a strategic advantage sufficient for victory, but its tactical realisation is far from easy.

27 ... ♘xg6

28 ♕h5

White must avoid every exchange which would simplify Black's defence.

28 ... ♕f6

29 ♗e2

White's following moves are intended to reduce to a minimum the mobility of the black pieces, in order to undertake a long range manoeuvre with his king.

29 ... ♖g7

30 ♕f3 ♘f8

31 ♕e3 ♖ee7

32 ♘b4 ♗d7

33 ♗h5 *(D)*

This move leads to a curious position in which Black's queen, both rooks and the bishop are immobilised. The problem of winning still needs to be solved, for at present the doubling and even the trebling of the white pieces on the h-file would lead to nothing. The rather complicated plan which White will strive to pursue, which must, of course, be modified in accordance with Black's manoeuvres, can be summarised as follows:

1st phase – Bringing the king to the centre where, after the later exchange of queens and rooks on the h-file, it will threaten a rapid penetration of the hostile camp via a5. These tactics will logically induce a corresponding displacement of the black king, the more plausible since its presence in the centre will consolidate the weak points c6 and e6.

2nd phase – Compelling Black's pieces to remove themselves in succession from the kingside by tactical threats aimed either at the king himself or at the enemy pawns (39th and

41st moves). The prospect of the occupation of the square e5 by a white knight, thereby immobilising the black knight at d7, increases still more the difficulty of concerted action by the black pieces, which is already difficult enough on account of the limited space available to them.

3rd phase – Finally, at an opportune moment, namely, when Black's pieces are at their greatest distance from the kingside, doubling rooks on the h-file. The rooks, after the forced exchange of queens and bishops, will penetrate into the heart of the hostile position.

As we shall see by the sequel, the methodical execution of this strategic plan requires no less than twenty-eight moves!

33 ... ♘g6
34 ♘d3

Not at once 34 ♔e2 on account of 34...e5!.

34 ... ♗e8
35 ♔e2 ♔f8
36 ♔d2 ♖b7

Making way for the king.

37 ♗f3 ♔e7
38 ♖he1 ♘f8
39 ♘b4

Threatening 40 ♗xd5.

39 ... ♔d8
40 ♔d3 ♖ge7
41 ♕d2!

Threatening, after 42 ♘a6!, the entry of the queen at a5.

41 ... ♖a7
42 ♖h1 ♖ec7

In order to utilise the bishop for the defence of the h-pawn when the knight abandons it to guard the square e5.

43 ♖h2 ♗g6
44 ♕e3 ♔c8

Black, in order to make his rooks available for the defence of the kingside, proposes to defend his c-pawn with his king, but this manoeuvre demands far too much time, and White is now ready for the final assault.

45 ♖ch1 ♔b7
46 ♔d2 ♖e7
47 ♘d3 ♘d7
48 ♗h5!

By this exchange of Black's best defensive piece, White takes an important step forward.

48 ... ♖a8
49 ♗xg6 hxg6

After 49...♕xg6, Black's h-pawn would later on prove difficult to defend.

50 ♖h7 ♖ae8 *(D)*

For the moment Black's defence is still adequate, but White's next move discloses the difficulties of the enemy position.

51 ♘e5!

The point of this move rests in the fact that for the first time in this game White can profitably consider the *recapture at e5 with a pawn.* In fact, if 51...♘xe5 52 fxe5 ♕f8, then 53 ♕g5! and White wins the g-pawn to start with. Black's reply is therefore forced.

51 ... ♘f8
52 ♖h8!

Now that it is possible for White to penetrate down the h-file, the position demands the exchange of queens and not of rooks.

52 ... ♖g7
53 ♘f3! ♖b8

To secure freedom of movement for the knight, in case of need.

54 ♘g5 ♖e7

Black is quite defenceless against White's next move.

55 ♕e5

After the compulsory exchange of queens, the doubling of the rooks on the eighth rank will be decisive.

55 ... ♕xe5
56 fxe5 ♔a8
57 ♖g8 b4

In the hope of obtaining some last chance after 58 axb4 ♖eb7.

58 ♖hh8! ♖ee8
59 axb4 ♔a7
60 ♔c3 ♔a6
61 ♘f7!

More energetic than the plausible move 61 ♘xe6. White now goes straight for mate.

61 ... ♖a8
62 ♘d6 ♖eb8
63 ♖h1! ♘d7
64 ♖a1!! 1-0

Game 33
Alekhine – Réti
New York 1924
King's Indian Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 g6
3 g3

Nowadays 3 ♘c3 d5 4 ♗f4, followed by e3, is considered a promising line.

3 ... ♗g7
4 ♗g2 0-0
5 ♘c3 d6
6 ♘f3 ♘c6

If Black has nothing better (and this seems to be the case) than to induce the advance of White's pawn to d5—where, to be sure, it shortens for the time being the diagonal of the bishop, but, on the other hand, brings considerable pressure upon Black's position—then his plan of development surely is not to be recommended.

7 d5 ♘b8
8 0-0 ♗g4

The exchange of this bishop is not reasonable and merely lessens the power of resistance in Black's position. Also unsatisfactory would be 8...e5 on account of 9 dxe6 fxe6 10 ♗g5, as played in my game against Sir G. Thomas in Karlsbad 1923. On the other hand, the move 8...a5 comes into consideration in order to temporarily secure the square c5 for the knight; but in this case also White would maintain his superior position, by means of h3, ♗e3, ♕c2, b3, a3 and, finally, b4.

9 h3

It was important to clarify the situation before the opponent completed his development.

9 ... ♗xf3

10 exf3

Much better than to recapture with the bishop, when either the e2-pawn would have remained inactive a long time or, if advanced, would have restricted the action of White's own pieces. After the text move, however, the pawn takes over guarding the important square e5, and, moreover, Black must reckon with an eventual hostile action on the e-file opened by this move.

10 ... e6

The e-pawn had to be exchanged, but it would have been relatively better for Black to have done so through 10...e5. Then White would have had only one good reply (11 dxe6), in as much as 11 f4 exf4 12 ♗xf4 ♘bd7 clearly would have been quite tolerable for Black. After the actual move, on the other hand, White has the pleasant choice between two good continuations.

11 f4

Even more favourable than 11 dxe6 fxe6 12 ♖e1 ♕d7, when it would have been by no means easy to profit from the weaknesses of Black's centre.

11 ... exd5

12 cxd5 *(D)*

Now, however, Black must make a choice between three distinct evils:

1) A weakness on c7 if he allows the pawn position to remain intact;

2) A weakness on c6 if, after the sequence ...c5; dxc6, he should recapture with the pawn and later on be forced to play ...d5;

3) And, finally, the line actually selected by him, through which he obtains an isolated d-pawn, the protection of which, made difficult through the powerful co-operation of the hostile bishops, will soon result in a decisive weakening of his queenside.

12 ... c5

13 dxc6 ♘xc6

14 ♗e3 ♕d7

15 ♕a4

A most effective square for the queen, from which it will exert troublesome pressure against Black's queenside.

15 ... ♖ac8

16 ♖ad1

Both players act out the same idea, namely that the b-pawn must be removed beyond the reach of the opponent's bishop. Incidentally, 16 ♗xa7 would not do here, of course, on account of 16...♖a8.

16 ... b6

17 b3

This move has the additional purpose of further protecting the queen in anticipation of the subsequent complications. How important this is will soon become apparent.

17 ... ♖fd8

18 ♖d3

It would have been premature to play ♘b5 at once, on account of 18...d5. Now, however, White threatens to make this move after doubling rooks and therefore Black endeavours, through an exchange, to relieve the pressure exerted by the white queen.

18 ... ♘e7?

In this way, indeed, it cannot be done and Black immediately finds himself at a material disadvantage. Somewhat better would have been 18...♘a5 19 ♕a3 ♗f8 20 ♖fd1, with a difficult game for Black, to be sure, but yet making defence possible.

19 ♘b5! d5

Clearly forced.

20 ♘xa7

This line was made possible by White's 17th move.

20 ... ♖a8

21 ♗xb6 ♕xa4

Black has nothing better, because after 21...♖db8 White would have continued simply with 22 ♕xd7 ♘xd7 23 ♗e3 ♖b7 24 ♗xd5 ♘xd5 25 ♖xd5 ♖axa7 26 ♗xa7 ♖xa7 27 ♖fd1, with a decisive advantage.

22 bxa4 ♖d7

23 ♘b5 ♖xa4

Threatening to play 24...♖b4 25 ♖b3 ♖xb3 26 axb3 ♖b7.

24 ♘c3 ♖a6

25 ♖b1 ♖b7

26 ♗c5 ♖xb1+

27 ♘xb1 ♘c6 *(D)*

W

The position is now clarified, White having maintained his passed pawn while Black's d-pawn remains weak.

28 ♘c3!

The quickest method of winning. While he relinquishes the a-pawn, White in return is forces an entrance for his rook into the enemy camp, whereby the decisive pawn attack is made possible. The tame 28 a3 would have permitted the opponent a more stubborn resistance after 28...♖a5 29 ♗e3 ♖b5.

28 ... ♖a5

29 ♗e3 ♘b4

After 29...d4 there would follow not 30 ♗xd4 ♘xd4 31 ♖xd4 ♘d5!, with drawing chances, but 30 ♗xc6! dxc3 31 a4, winning.

30 ♖d2 h6

If at once 30...♘e4 then 31 ♘xe4 dxe4 32 ♖d8+ ♗f8 33 f5 and wins.

31 a4!

Threatening 32 ♗b6 and thereby forcing Black's next move.

31 ... ♘e4
32 ♘xe4 dxe4
33 ♖d8+ ♔h7
34 ♗xe4 ♖xa4 *(D)*

If 34...f5 then 35 ♖d7![1] ♔h8 (or 35...fxe4 36 ♗d4 ♖d5 37 ♖xg7+ ♔h8 38 ♖d7+, followed by the exchange of rooks, and wins) 36 ♗d4 ♗xd4 37 ♖xd4 fxe4[2] 38 ♖xb4 and wins.

35 f5!

The start of the decisive pawn charge. For the present, 36 fxg6+ fxg6 37 ♖d6 is threatened.

35 ... ♖a6
36 h4 h5

Forced on account of the threat 37 h5.

37 g4! ♖a5

Or 37...hxg4 38 h5 and wins.

38 fxg6+ fxg6
39 gxh5 ♖xh5
40 ♗g5!

Winning at least the exchange.

40 ... ♗c3
41 ♖d7+ ♔g8
42 ♗xg6 1-0

Since, after 42...♖h8, White wins immediately by the advance of the h-pawn.

Game 34
Alekhine – Janowski
New York 1924
Irregular Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 d6
3 ♘c3 ♗f5?

This move would be reasonable if White had already developed his knight to f3, after which the control of e4 would temporarily remain in Black's hands. But in the actual situation, the bishop, after White's e2-e4, will have no future whatsoever. The late Janowski certainly had a very fine feeling for handling the pair of bishops—but was never a great openings connoisseur, as his contemporaries sometimes liked to represent him.

4 g3

Even 4 f3 and 5 e4 would have strategically refuted Black's bishop move.

4 ... c6
5 ♗g2 ♘bd7
6 e4 ♗g6
7 ♘ge2 e5

---

1 35 ♖a8 is much simpler.
2 Or 37...♖xa4 38 ♗b1! ♔g7 39 ♔g2, followed by 40 ♖c4 and 41 ♗c2, winning as 41...♖a2 can be met by 42 ♗b3.

8 h3

Preparing ♗e3. From now on Black has only the choice between more or less unsatisfactory moves.

8 ... ♕b6
9 0-0 0-0-0 *(D)*

This supplies White with an objective for a direct attack, which, owing to the unfortunate position of the black pieces, will have catastrophic consequences. Instead, 9...♗e7 10 ♗e3 ♕c7 would have permitted a steadier resistance.

W

10 d5!

Demolishing all Black's hopes for eventual delivery by means of ...d5. The temporary release of the square c5 is, in comparison with this main motive, altogether immaterial.

10 ... ♘c5
11 ♗e3 cxd5
12 cxd5 ♕a6

Acceptance of the pawn sacrifice would have led to a clearly losing position—for instance, 12...♕xb2 13 ♗xc5 dxc5 14 ♕a4 ♕b6 15 f4 exf4 16 gxf4, but the continuation in the text is likewise without prospects.

13 f3

Simple and decisive—Black no longer has a defence against b4. If, for instance, 13...♕d3, the White replies 14 ♕c1.

13 ... ♔b8
14 b4 ♘cd7
15 a4 ♕c4
16 ♕d2

Good enough, but considering White's tremendous positional advantage, there was no need for combining. The simple 16 ♖b1, followed by ♕d2 and ♖fc1, would have won without the slightest effort.

16 ... ♕xb4

In such a position one may 'eat' anything!

17 ♗xa7+ ♔a8
18 ♖fb1 ♕a5
19 ♗e3 ♘c5
20 ♖b5 ♕c7
21 a5 ♘fd7

Black has weathered the first onslaught more or less successfully, but in as much as White can attack the hostile king with all his seven pieces, while Black's kingside is still undeveloped and his g6-bishop has long since forgotten that it is able to move, White's win is merely a matter of time.

22 ♘c1 ♖c8 *(D)*
23 ♘b3 ♘a6

If 23...♘xb3 then 24 a6! forcing 24...b6 (taking on d2 or a1 would allow mate after 25 axb7+), and only then 25 ♖xb3.

24 ♘a4 ♗e7

Black makes up his mind to give up the exchange, knowing that, if

24...♔b8 White, with 25 ♖c1 ♕d8 26 ♖c6, would have proceeded to institute a decisive attack.

25 ♘b6+

The crisis. After 25...♘xb6 26 axb6 followed by 27 ♖xa6+, White would win immediately.

25 ... ♔b8
26 ♖c1 ♘dc5
27 ♘xc5 dxc5
28 ♘xc8

The first material gains.

28 ... ♖xc8
29 ♗f1 ♕d7
30 ♖b6 c4

Or 30...♗d8 31 ♖b2 still winning the pawn.

31 ♖xc4 ♖xc4
32 ♗xc4 ♕xh3
33 ♕g2

Technically simpler than 33 ♗xa6, which would have won also.

33 ... ♕xg2+
34 ♔xg2 ♗d8
35 ♖b2 ♔c8
36 ♗xa6 bxa6
37 ♗b6 ♗g5
38 ♖c2+ ♔b7
39 d6 f5
40 d7 1-0

Game 35
Alekhine – Opočensky
Paris 1925
Slav Defence

1 d4 d5
2 c4 c6
3 ♘c3

My second match with Dr. Euwe, in which the seemingly promising answer 3...dxc4 was refuted in a convincing manner, has proved that the text move is at least as good as the fashionable 3 ♘f3.

3 ... ♘f6
4 e3 ♗f5
5 cxd5 ♘xd5

If 5...cxd5 then, of course, 6 ♕b3 with advantage.

6 ♗c4 e6
7 ♘ge2

Introduced by Rubinstein against Bogoljubow at Hastings 1922, and creating for Black a number of difficulties because of the inactive position of his light-squared bishop and his backward development.

7 ... ♘d7
8 e4 ♘xc3
9 ♘xc3 ♗g6
10 0-0 ♕h4 *(D)*

After the more natural 10...♗b4, White would maintain his positional advantage by playing simply 11 f3. The text move prepares for queenside castling, and at the same time guarantees to the bishop the square h5 in case White plays f4-f5.

11 d5!

This central action required exact calculation as Black will now force

the weakening move g3. But White had practically no other way of keeping the initiative—after 11 f3 0-0-0 Black's prospects would have been excellent.

11 ... exd5
12 g3 ♕f6
13 exd5 ♗c5?

Black's first and already decisive mistake. He now loses the possibility of castling and finally succumbs because of his inability to co-ordinate the action of his rooks. Necessary was first 13...♘e5 and only after 14 ♗e2 should he play 14...♗c5. If in that case 15 ♔g2, renewing the threat f4, then 15...h5! after which White would have been practically forced to answer 16 h4 followed by ♗g5. The position in that case would remain full of dynamite, but would be by no means hopeless for Black.

14 ♖e1+ ♔f8
15 ♗f4 ♘b6
16 ♗b3 h5
17 h4

From the 14th move onwards White has only one idea—to prevent Black's rooks co-operating with one another.

17 ... ♔g8
18 dxc6 bxc6
19 ♖c1

After this Black cannot prevent the exchange of one of his bishops against the knight.

19 ... ♗d4
20 ♘e4 ♗xe4
21 ♖xe4 c5

Or 21...♗xb2 22 ♖c5! ♘d5 23 ♗xd5 cxd5 24 ♖xd5 with a decisive advantage.

22 ♕e2

Starting the final attack against f7.

22 ... g6
23 ♗g5 ♕d6

Attacking g3.

24 ♕f3 ♕f8 *(D)*

25 ♖xd4!

Eliminating the only active enemy piece and thus breaking down any resistance.

25 ... cxd4
26 ♖c6! ♔h7

After 26...♔g7 White would have sacrificed another rook: 27 ♖xg6+! ♔xg6 (27...fxg6 28 ♕b7+ followed by mate) 28 ♕f6+ ♔h7 29 ♗xf7

♖g8 30 ♕f5+ ♔g7 31 ♕g6+ ♔h8 32 ♗f6+ and mate next move.

27 ♗xf7 ♖c8
28 ♖xg6 1-0

Game 36
Tarrasch – Alekhine
Baden-Baden 1925
Giuoco Piano

1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 ♗c4 ♗c5
4 c3 ♗b6
5 d4 ♕e7
6 0-0 ♘f6(!)

This move, introduced by me instead of the usual 6...d6, leaves White less choice because his e-pawn is now attacked.

7 ♖e1 d6
8 a4 a6
9 h3

A more or less necessary preparation for ♗e3.

9 ... 0-0
10 ♗g5

As White gains no advantage by provoking Black's next move, he would have done better by playing 10 ♗e3 at once.

10 ... h6
11 ♗e3 *(D)*

If 11 ♗h4 then of course 11...♔h8 followed by ...♖g8 and ...g5.

11 ... ♕d8!

This paradoxical move—the most difficult in the game—is very effective. The double idea is to prepare an eventual action in the centre starting with ...exd4 followed by ...d5

and, at the same time, free the e-file for the rook.

12 ♗d3 ♖e8
13 ♘bd2 ♗a7(!)

Played in view of White's possible ♘c4.

14 ♕c2 exd4

At the right time, as White cannot well retake with the pawn because of 15...♘b4.

15 ♘xd4 ♘e5
16 ♗f1 d5!

After this Black becomes at least as strong in the centre as his opponent. The tactical justification of the move is shown by the variation 17 f4 ♘g6 18 e5 ♘h5! ∓.

17 ♖ad1 c5
18 ♘4b3 ♕c7
19 ♗f4

Also after 19 exd5 ♘xd5 20 ♘c4 ♘xc4 21 ♗xc4 ♘xe3 22 ♖xe3 ♖xe3 23 fxe3 ♕e7 Black would have kept slightly the better prospects.

19 ... ♘f3+!
20 ♘xf3 ♕xf4
21 exd5?

The decisive mistake, after which the game ends rapidly. I expected instead 21 e5 and hoped to be able to

exploit the advantage of the two bishops after 21...♗f5 22 ♕d2 ♕xd2 23 ♖xd2 ♘e4 24 ♖dd1 (24 ♖xd5? ♗e6) 24...♖ad8.

21 ... ♗f5!

An important intermediate move, after which there is no adequate defence. 21...♗xh3 would have been much less convincing because of 22 gxh3 ♕xf3 23 ♗g2.

22 ♗d3 *(D)*

Or 22 ♕d2 ♕xa4 23 ♘c1 ♗c2! 24 ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 25 ♖e1 ♘e4 26 ♕f4 c4 27 ♘d4 ♗xd4 28 cxd4 ♕b4! with a winning advantage for Black.

B

22 ... ♗xh3

And not 22...♗xd3 23 ♕xd3 c4 because of 24 ♕d2.

23 gxh3 ♕xf3
24 ♖xe8+

After the immediate 24 ♗f1 and the following exchange of rooks by Black he would, of course, have lost his only hope—the passed pawn. But after the text move Black decides the game by a mating attack.

24 ... ♖xe8
25 ♗f1 ♖e5
26 c4

26 d6 would obviously not alter matters.

26 ... ♖g5+
27 ♔h2 ♘g4+
28 hxg4 ♖xg4

Threatening unavoidable mate.

0-1

Game 37
Réti – Alekhine
Baden-Baden 1925
King's Fianchetto

1 g3 e5
2 ♘f3

An experiment which Réti never repeated after the present game. White intends to play the Alekhine's Defence with colours reversed, i.e. with one tempo more. But the way he uses that tempo (g3) could have turned to his disadvantage (see next note).

2 ... e4
3 ♘d4 d5

Black is satisfied with the free development of his pieces and roughly equal middlegame prospects. But he could obtain more by playing 3...c5! 4 ♘b3 c4 5 ♘d4 ♗c5 6 c3 ♘c6 thus bringing *ad absurdum* White's 'development'.

4 d3 exd3
5 ♕xd3 ♘f6
6 ♗g2 ♗b4+

Trying at all costs to bring as rapidly as possible all Black's pieces into action. But nowadays I would probably have thought more about the security of the dark squares in my position and would therefore

have avoided the following bishop exchange.

7 ♗d2 ♗xd2+
8 ♘xd2 0-0
9 c4!

Apart from his eccentric first move, Réti plays the opening very well; Black would not have any advantage by answering 9...c5 because of 10 ♘4b3 threatening both 11 ♘xc5 and 11 cxd5.

9 ... ♘a6

Comparatively the best; but it cannot be denied that White now obtains a sort of pressure on the half-open c-file.

10 cxd5 ♘b4
11 ♕c4 ♘bxd5
12 ♘2b3 c6
13 0-0 ♖e8
14 ♖fd1 ♗g4
15 ♖d2

After 15 h3 Black would have moved his bishop to e4 via h5 and g6.

15 ... ♕c8
16 ♘c5 ♗h3!
17 ♗f3

By his previous move Black had offered a pawn, the acceptance of which would have been fatal for White, for instance 17 ♗xh3 ♕xh3 18 ♘xb7 ♘g4 19 ♘f3 ♘de3! 20 fxe3 ♘xe3 21 ♕xf7+ ♔h8! 22 ♘h4 ♖f8 and wins.

17 ... ♗g4 *(D)*

Giving the opponent the choice between three possibilities:

1) to exchange his beloved 'fianchetto' bishop;

2) to accept an immediate draw by repetition of moves (18 ♗g2 ♗h3 19 ♗f3, etc.) which at such an early stage always means a moral defeat for the first player, and;

3) to place the bishop on an inferior square (h1). He finally decides to play 'for the win' and thus permits Black to start a most interesting counter-attack.

18 ♗g2 ♗h3
19 ♗f3 ♗g4
20 ♗h1

At last!

20 ... h5!

In order, by the exchange of h-pawns, to weaken g3.

21 b4 a6
22 ♖c1 h4
23 a4 hxg3
24 hxg3 ♕c7
25 b5

Consistent, but very risky to say the least. By playing 25 e4 ♘b6 26 ♕b3 ♘bd7! White could meet the immediate threats against his king, but the obstruction of the bishop's diagonal would at the same time end his hopes on the other wing.

25 ... axb5
26 axb5 *(D)*
26 ... ♖e3!

B

It seems almost incredible that this spectacular move not only stops White's attack but even brings him serious trouble. And yet it is so. It is obvious enough that the rook cannot be taken because of 27...♕xg3+, followed by 28...♘xe3 and wins; and also that White has to do something in order to parry 27...♖xg3+!.

27 ♘f3

As the following shows, this natural move loses perforce. Also insufficient was 27 ♔h2 due to 27...♖aa3! 28 ♘cb3 (not 28 fxe3 ♘xe3 followed by ...♘f1+) 28...♕e5! 29 bxc6 bxc6 with a powerful attack as 30 fxe3 would still be bad because of 30...♕h5+ followed by 31...♕h3. The only chance of salvation was 27 ♗f3! ♗xf3 28 exf3! cxb5 29 ♘xb5 ♕a5! still with advantage for Black, as 30 ♖xd5? would lose immediately after 30...♖e1+ 31 ♖xe1 ♕xe1+ followed by 32...♖a1[1].

27 ... cxb5
28 ♕xb5 ♘c3!
29 ♕xb7

After 29 ♕c4 the answer 29...b5! would be decisive.

29 ... ♕xb7

And not 29...♘xe2+ because of 30 ♖xe2! ♕xb7 31 ♖xe3! with some saving chances for White.

30 ♘xb7 ♘xe2+
31 ♔h2 *(D)*

Or 31 ♔f1 ♘xg3+ 32 fxg3 ♗xf3 33 ♗xf3 ♖xf3+ 34 ♔g2 ♖aa3 35 ♖d8+ ♔h7 36 ♖h1+ ♔g6 37 ♖h3 ♖fb3! and wins.

B

31 ... ♘e4!

The beginning of a new combination—which, however, is the absolutely logical consequence of the previous manoeuvres—aiming, after a series of 12 practically forced moves, at the capture of the knight on b7. Black's rook is still taboo as 32 fxe3? ♘xd2! loses the exchange.

---

1 This last comment is incorrect. After 32 ♔g2 ♖a1 33 ♖d8+ ♔h7 (33...♘e8 34 ♔h3) 34 ♕h4+ ♔g6 35 f4 there is no mate and Black is dead lost. It follows that Black should play 32...♘xd5 33 ♕xd5 ♖a1 34 ♕d8+ with an immediate draw, which seems to be the correct result of the whole combination.

32 ♖c4!

Comparatively the best defence.

32 ... ♘xf2

Insufficient would be 32...♘xd2 because of 33 ♘xd2!, or 32...♗xf3 due to 33 ♖xe4!. The situation is still very complicated.

33 ♗g2 ♗e6!

34 ♖cc2

Here, and in the following, White, as it is easy to see, has no choice.

34 ... ♘g4+

35 ♔h3

Not 35 ♔h1 owing to 35...♖a1+.

35 ... ♘e5+

36 ♔h2 ♖xf3!

37 ♖xe2 ♘g4+

38 ♔h3 ♘e3+

39 ♔h2 ♘xc2

40 ♗xf3 ♘d4

If now 41 ♖e3 (or 41 ♖f2) then 41...♘xf3+ 42 ♖xf3 ♗d5 (the final point!) winning a piece.

0-1

I consider this and the game versus Bogoljubow at Hastings 1922 (see Game 26) the most brilliant tournament games of my chess career. And by a peculiar coincidence they both remained undistinguished as there were no brilliancy prizes awarded in either of these contests!

Game 38

Alekhine – Treybal

Baden-Baden 1925

Queen's Gambit Declined

1 d4 d5

2 c4 e6

3 ♘c3 ♘f6

4 ♗g5 ♘bd7

5 e3 ♗e7

6 ♘f3 0-0

7 ♖c1 c6

8 ♗d3 dxc4

9 ♗xc4 ♘d5

10 ♗xe7 ♕xe7

11 ♘e4

A very safe, but harmless move, for which I had a marked predilection during a certain period of my career, including the Capablanca match. Now I have come to the conclusion that the old 11 0-0, although not extremely promising, still offers more fighting chances than the knight move.

11 ... ♘7f6

After this answer, however, Black will have difficulties in freeing his game by means of ...e5 or ...c5 and therefore White's position will soon become much preferable. Good methods in order to obtain equality are: 11...♘5f6 and after 12 ♘g3 either 12...♕b4+ (Capablanca) or even 12...e5 (Dr. Lasker).

12 ♘g3 ♕b4+

13 ♕d2 ♕xd2+

14 ♔xd2 ♖d8

15 ♖hd1 ♗d7

16 ♘e5 ♗e8

17 ♔e2 ♔f8

18 f4 g6

It is very seldom advisable in the endgame to place the pawns on the squares of the same colour as their own bishop. A more logical plan was 18...♘d7 eventually followed by ...f6.

19 ♔f3 ♖ac8

20 ♗b3 ♖c7
21 ♘e2 ♘e7
22 g4 ♖dc8 *(D)*

W

23 ♘g3!

After this, Black's preparations for ...c5 prove useless, as this move would now have fatal consequences after 24 g5—for instance 24...♘fd5 25 dxc5 ♖xc5 26 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 27 ♘e4 ♖c7 28 ♘d6, with a tremendous positional advantage for White, or 24...♘d7 25 ♘xd7+ ♗xd7 26 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 27 dxc5 ♔e8 28 ♔f2 and White would retain the extra pawn.

23 ... ♘fd5

Hence this purely passive move, which permits White the following effective knight manoeuvre.

24 ♘e4 ♖d8

After 24...f6 White would exchange two minor pieces for a rook and two pawns, thereby obtaining a won position—for instance, 25 ♘c5! fxe5 26 ♘xe6+ ♔g8 27 ♘xc7 e4+ (otherwise 28 e4) 28 ♔xe4 ♖xc7 29 ♔f3 followed by e4.

25 ♘c5 b6
26 ♘a6 ♖cc8
27 e4 *(D)*

B

27 ... f6

A desperate attempt to get some freedom for his cramped pieces. After 27...♘f6 (or 27...♘c7 28 ♘xc7 followed by 29 d5 ±[1]) 28 g5 ♘d7 29 ♘g4 ♔g7 30 h4 he would rapidly perish from asphyxia.

28 exd5 fxe5
29 d6!

Forcing a decisive gain of material; if now 29...e4+, then 30 ♔xe4 ♖xd6 31 ♔e5! ♖cd8 32 ♘c7 and wins.

29 ... ♖xd6
30 fxe5 ♖d5

30...♖dd8 31 ♗xe6 would be even more hopeless.

31 ♗xd5 ♘xd5
32 a3

---

1 This is not so clear after 29...exd5 30 exd5 ♖d6! 31 dxc6 ♘xc6!, so White would do better to step up the pressure by 29 g5, as in Alekhine's main line, although the exchange of knights has relieved a little of the pressure on Black's position.

The beginning of the rather instructive technical part. First and foremost, White must exchange the opponent's central knight.

32 ... g5
33 ♘b4 ♘e7
34 ♘d3 ♘d5
35 h4! gxh4

If 35...h6 then 36 hxg5 followed by ♘f2-e4 (or h3).

36 ♘f4 ♘xf4
37 ♔xf4

White's next manoeuvre will be the elimination of the h4-pawn and the return of the king to the centre, in order to release the rook from the protection of the d-pawn.

37 ... ♖d8
38 ♔g5 ♔g7
39 ♔xh4 ♖d5
40 ♔g5 ♖d8
41 ♔f4 ♖d7
42 ♔e3 ♖b7
43 b4

The start of the third phase—the fixing of Black's weak spots.

43 ... a6
44 ♖f1 ♖a7
45 ♖f6 ♖e7
46 a4 ♔g8
47 a5 b5
48 d5!

This pawn sacrifice, in order to permit the victorious entrance of the king into the enemy's camp, is the absolutely logical conclusion of the whole procedure.

48 ... exd5

Or 48...cxd5 49 ♖c8 followed by ♖a8.

49 e6 ♔g7
50 g5 h5
51 ♔d4 ♖c7
52 ♔c5 ♖c8
53 ♔b6 d4
54 e7! 1-0

Although this game and the next one do not exhibit any particularly thrilling points, I have included them in this collection because they illustrate in a convincing way the methods to follow in order to exploit an advantage in space obtained in the opening stage.

Game 39
Sir G. Thomas – Alekhine
Baden-Baden 1925
Alekhine Defence

1 e4 ♘f6
2 d3

A very tame continuation, which does not offer prospects of any opening advantage.

2 ... c5
3 f4 ♘c6
4 ♘f3 g6
5 ♗e2 ♗g7
6 ♘bd2(?)

After this unnatural move White's game remains very cramped. A much lesser evil was 6 c4 ceding the square d4 but preventing the double advance of Black's d-pawn.

6 ... d5
7 0-0 0-0
8 ♔h1 b6
9 exd5 ♕xd5

Even better than 9...♘xd5, which would permit the answer 10 ♘e4.

10 ♕e1

The pawn sacrifice 10 ♘e5 would prove insufficient after 10...♘xe5 11 fxe5 ♕xe5 12 ♘c4 (or 12 ♗f3 ♖b8 13 ♘c4 ♕c7) 12...♕e6! 13 ♗f3 ♘d5.

10 ... ♗b7
11 ♘c4 ♘d4
12 ♘e3 ♕c6
13 ♗d1 ♘d5!

Practically forcing the exchange of three minor pieces, and thus increasing by the simplest method the positional advantage already acquired.

14 ♘xd4

The consequences of an attempt to win a pawn by 14 ♘xd5 would be sad: 14...♕xd5 15 ♕xe7 ♖fe8 16 ♕g5 ♘xf3 17 ♗xf3 ♕xg5 18 fxg5 ♗xf3 19 gxf3 ♖e2 ∓.

14 ... cxd4
15 ♘xd5 ♕xd5
16 ♗f3 ♕d7
17 ♗xb7 ♕xb7
18 c4

Otherwise he would remain with the awful weakness at c2.

18 ... dxc3
19 bxc3 ♖ac8
20 ♗b2

Only slightly better would be 20 ♗d2.

20 ... ♖fd8
21 ♖f3 ♗f6 *(D)*

Releases the queen from any worry about e7.

22 d4

This represents positional capitulation, after which Black will have a comparatively easy win because of his full control of the light squares. But owing to the threat of ...♕a6 in

connection with the doubling of rooks on the d-file, White already had no real choice.

22 ... ♕d5
23 ♕e3 ♕b5!
24 ♕d2 ♖d5
25 h3 e6
26 ♖e1 ♕a4
27 ♖a1 b5
28 ♕d1 ♖c4

Also good was 28...♕xd1+, but Black is not in a hurry. White will not be able to avoid the exchange.

29 ♕b3 ♖d6
30 ♔h2 ♖a6
31 ♖ff1 ♗e7
32 ♔h1 ♖cc6!

Intending to force White to exchange queens after ...♕c4 followed by ...♖a4 and ...♖ca6.

33 ♖fe1 ♗h4!

Chasing the rook from the e-file, becauseif, for instance, 34 ♖e2, then 34...♕xb3! 35 axb3 ♖xa1+ 36 ♗xa1 ♖a6 37 ♗b2 ♖a2 38 b4 (38 ♔h2 a5!) 38...♗g3 39 d5 ♗xf4 (simpler than 39...exd5 40 c4!), winning easily.

34 ♖f1 ♕c4
35 ♕xc4

Otherwise Black would play, as mentioned above, 35...♖a4, etc.

35 ... ♖xc4
36 a3 ♗e7
37 ♖fb1 ♗d6!

Also forcing the g-pawn on to a dark square.

38 g3 ♔f8
39 ♔g2 ♔e7
40 ♔f2 ♔d7
41 ♔e2 ♔c6

After having protected the b-pawn Black threatens ...♖ca4.

42 ♖a2 ♖ca4
43 ♖ba1 ♔d5 *(D)*

W

44 ♔d3 ♖6a5
45 ♗c1 a6
46 ♗b2 h5

Threatening, of course, 47...h4.

47 h4 f6!

After this White is without defence against ...e5.

48 ♗c1 e5
49 fxe5 fxe5
50 ♗b2

Or 50 dxe5 ♗xe5 51 ♗f4 ♗xf4 52 gxf4 ♔e6! (the simplest), and wins.

50 ... exd4
51 cxd4 b4!
0-1

The late Nimzowitsch—who was rather reluctant to comment on the games of his colleagues—distinguished this one by including it in his remarkable book, *My System.*

Game 40
Alekhine – Marshall
Baden-Baden 1925
Irregular Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 d5

This move is very seldom adopted in master play and in fact cannot be recommended. It partly succeeds, however, in the present game, because of the not quite accurate opening play of White.

3 cxd5 ♘xd5
4 e4

As this advance could not be prevented by Black, it should have been delayed, and only executed after the development of the kingside pieces. A good plan here was 4 g3 followed by ♗g2, reserving e4 for a more favourable moment.

4 ... ♘f6
5 ♗d3

Also after 5 ♘c3 Black could have obtained a roughly equal game by answering 5...e5.

5 ... e5!
6 dxe5 ♘g4
7 ♘f3 ♘c6
8 ♗g5!

White realises that he cannot obtain any kind of advantage by trying

to keep the extra pawn. If, for instance, 8 ♗f4 then 8...♘b4! 9 ♗b5+ ♗d7[1] 10 ♗xd7+ ♕xd7 11 ♕xd7+ ♔xd7 12 0-0 ♘c2 13 ♖d1+ ♔c8 14 h3 (or 14 ♘g5 ♗c5!) 14...♘h6 and White's positional advantage would not compensate for the loss of the exchange.

8 ... ♗e7
9 ♗xe7 ♕xe7
10 ♘c3 ♘cxe5
11 ♘xe5 ♕xe5

But here Black decidedly overestimates his position. Instead of the text move which—as the following convincingly proves—only exposes his queen to a pawn attack, he could obtain a game with even prospects by continuing 11...♘xe5 12 0-0 0-0 13 ♗e2 ♗e6.

12 h3 ♘f6 *(D)*

13 ♕d2!

It is certainly surprising to what extent this simple queen manoeuvre—by which White strengthens his dark squares—improves his chances for the middlegame. From now on Black will be gradually dragged into a lost position without having made a move that could be considered an actual mistake.

13 ... ♗d7
14 ♕e3!

Not only taking control of the squares d4 and c5 but, above all, preventing Black castling queenside.

14 ... ♗c6
15 0-0-0 0-0

As Black cannot bring his king to safety on the queenside (if 15...♕a5, then 16 ♗c4! ±) he has practically no choice.

16 f4 ♕e6

After 16...♕a5 17 e5 Black would (just as in the actual game) lose a pawn by continuing 17...♘d5 18 ♘xd5 ♗xd5 19 ♗xh7+, followed by ♕d3+ and ♕xd5.

17 e5

With the main threat 18 f5.

17 ... ♖fe8
18 ♖he1 ♖ad8

Better was 18...♘d7 after which White would have continued his attack by 19 g4. The rook move permits White to win by a forced series of moves.

19 f5 ♕e7
20 ♕g5 ♘d5
21 f6 ♕f8
22 ♗c4 *(D)*

The action of this bishop on the diagonal a2-g8 proves immediately decisive. It is important to notice

1 After 9... c6! White loses a piece because of the various threats at c2, d3 and f2.

B

that Black cannot insert the intermediate move 22...h6 because of 23 fxg7! winning a piece.

22 ... ♘xc3
23 ♖xd8 ♖xd8
24 fxg7!

Much more convincing than 24 e6 ♖d5!.

24 ... ♘xa2+

Or 24...♕e8 25 ♗xf7+! ♔xf7 26 ♖f1+[1] ♔e6 27 ♖f6+ ♔d5 28 ♖f8 and wins.

25 ♔b1!

And not 25 ♗xa2 ♕c5+.

25 ... ♕e8
26 e6!

Now this is even stronger than 26 ♗xf7+.

26 ... ♗e4+
27 ♔a1

Also possible was 27 ♖xe4 ♖d1+ 28 ♔c2 ♕a4+ 29 b3 ♘b4+ 30 ♔xd1, but the text move is simpler.

27 ... f5

Despair, as 27...fxe6 would lose to 28 ♗xe6+ ♕xe6 29 ♕xd8+ ♔xg7 30 ♕d4+ followed by 31 ♖xe4.

28 e7+ ♖d5
29 ♕f6! ♕f7
30 e8♕+

followed by mate in two.

Game 41
Alekhine – Schwartz
Blindfold Exhibition, London 1926
King's Indian Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 g6
3 g3 ♗g7
4 ♗g2 0-0
5 ♘c3 d6

If instead 5...c6, then 6 d5.

6 ♘f3 ♘c6
7 d5 ♘a5

The position of this knight will cause trouble. But 7...♘b8 is also not satisfactory, as was shown by my game against Réti at New York 1924 (Game 33).

8 ♕d3 b6

Intending to bring the knight as quickly as possible to c5. First 8...e5 was slightly better as the answer 9 b4 would not be effective because of 9...e4.

9 ♘d4 ♘b7
10 ♘c6 ♕d7
11 0-0 a5
12 b3

The routine method of dislodging the knight from c5.

12 ... ♘c5
13 ♕c2 ♗b7
14 h3

---

1 26 g8♕+! ♕xg8 27 e6+ ♔f8 28 ♖f1+ is even more convincing.

Preventing Black's manoeuvre ...♘g4-e5.

14 ... ♖ae8 *(D)*

Neither this move nor the following exchange was advisable. Instead, he should prefer 14...♘fe4 15 ♗b2 ♘xc3 to facilitate the defence by eliminating some material.

15 a3 ♗xc6
16 dxc6 ♕c8
17 b4 axb4
18 axb4 ♘a6

After this the knight will be buried alive. But also 18...♘ce4 19 ♘b5! was anything but pleasant.

19 ♖a4! ♘b8

Otherwise White would force this retreat by 20 ♕a2.

20 b5 h6
21 ♖a7 e5
22 ♔h2

In order not to have to reckon with the answer ...♘h5 in case of f4.

22 ... ♔h7
23 f4 ♖e7
24 fxe5 ♖xe5
25 ♗f4 ♖ee8

After 25...♖h5 26 ♘d5 ♘xd5 27 cxd5 the rook would be trapped.

26 ♘d5 ♘xd5
27 ♗xd5 ♕d8
28 h4 ♕e7
29 e3 ♔h8
30 ♔g2

Preventing 30...g5 by the possibility (after 31 hxg5 hxg5) of ♖h1+.

30 ... f5
31 ♖e1 ♔h7
32 e4 ♗e5
33 exf5 gxf5 *(D)*

34 c5!

The beginning of a ten-move combination (of which the point is 43 ♗e6!) forcing the win of a piece.

34 ... bxc5
35 b6 ♖c8
36 ♕c3! ♖fe8

It is obvious that 36...♗xc3 37 ♖xe7+ would be hopeless.

37 ♗xe5 dxe5
38 ♕xe5!

Without this possibility the previous moves would be pointless.

38 ... ♕xe5
39 ♖xe5 ♖xe5
40 ♖xc7+ ♖xc7
41 bxc7 ♖e8
42 cxb8♕ ♖xb8

43 ♗e6!

Decisive.

43 ... ♔g6
44 c7 ♖f8
45 c8♕ ♖xc8
46 ♗xc8 c4
47 ♗a6 c3
48 ♗d3 ♔f6
49 ♔f3 ♔e5
50 ♔e3 h5
51 ♗c2 ♔f6
52 ♔f4 ♔g7
53 ♔xf5 ♔h6

Still hoping that the 'blind' opponent will stalemate him by 54 ♔f6...

54 ♔f4! 1-0

I consider this game to be one of my best achievements in blindfold chess.

Game 42
Rubinstein – Alekhine
Semmering 1926
Brilliancy Prize
Queen's Indian Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e6
3 ♘f3 b6
4 g3 ♗b7
5 ♗g2 ♗b4+

This simplification is hardly advisable, as White's c1-bishop should develop less activity in the future than Black's f8-bishop. More promising, therefore, is 5...♗e7.

6 ♘bd2

For the reasons just mentioned, 6 ♗d2 seems to be the logical answer.

6 ... 0-0
7 0-0 d5

As the following shows, this is sufficient to equalise. A good manoeuvre was also 7...♖e8 followed by ...♗f8.

8 a3 ♗e7
9 b4 c5

The right way to keep the balance in the centre. 9...a5 10 b5 would be positionally unsatisfactory.

10 bxc5 bxc5
11 dxc5

Also 11 ♖b1 ♕c8 12 ♕b3 ♗a6 would be satisfactory for Black.

11 ... ♗xc5
12 ♗b2 ♘bd7
13 ♘e5 ♘xe5
14 ♗xe5 ♘g4!

This diversion is by no means as harmless as it looks. White loses the game chiefly because he underestimates its importance.

15 ♗c3

And not 15 ♗b2 ♕b6 winning material.

15 ... ♖b8 *(D)*

At this moment 15...♕b6 would have been answered by 16 e3. The text move prepares an eventual advance of the d-pawn.

W

16 ♖b1

Although this move cannot yet be considered a decisive mistake, it certainly facilitates the opponent's plans. Unsatisfactory would be also 16 h3 ♘xf2! 17 ♖xf2 ♕g5! 18 ♘f1[1] ♗xf2+ 19 ♔xf2 dxc4, which would be to Black's advantage. But by continuing 16 cxd5 ♗xd5! 17 ♘e4! (and not 17 e4 ♘xf2! 18 ♖xf2 ♗xf2+ 19 ♔xf2 ♕b6 20 ♔f1 ♗b7 ∓), with the subsequent dislodging of the threatening black knight, White could still obtain an even game.

16 ... d4!

17 ♖xb7?!

Rubinstein does not anticipate Black's surprising 18th move and consequently will find himself at a material disadvantage. The only possibility here was 17 ♗b4 ♗xg2 18 ♔xg2 ♕c7 reaching a position which would be in Black's favour too, but hardly in a decisive way.

17 ... ♖xb7

18 ♗xb7 ♘xf2!

By this pseudo-sacrifice Black forces the win of at least a pawn with a crushing position. Of course, the immediate 18...dxc3 would be ineffective because of 19 ♘e4[2].

19 ♔xf2

Other moves were no better, to say the least. For instance:

1) 19 ♕a1 (19 ♖xf2? dxc3 and wins) 19...dxc3 20 ♘b3 ♘g4+ 21 ♘xc5 ♕d4+[3].

2) 19 ♗a5 ♘xd1 20 ♗xd8 d3+ 21 e3 ♘xe3! with an easy win for Black in both cases.

19 ... dxc3+

20 e3

Or 20 ♔e1 cxd2+ 21 ♕xd2 ♕b6 with a rapidly winning attack.

20 ... cxd2

21 ♔e2 ♕b8

22 ♗f3 ♖d8

23 ♕b1 ♕d6

Gaining the square b4 for the bishop

24 a4 f5

25 ♖d1 ♗b4

26 ♕c2 ♕c5

27 ♔f2 a5

28 ♗e2 g5

29 ♗d3 f4!

If now 30 ♗xh7+ ♔h8 31 ♕e4, then 31...♕xe3+ 32 ♔g2 f3+ 33 ♔h3 ♕e2! 34 ♕g6 g4+ 35 ♔h4 ♗e7+ 36 ♔h5 ♕xh2+, and Black wins.

0-1

---

1 There seems no reason why White should not play the more active 18 ♘f3, which avoids losing the pawn on c4. It follows that Black should prefer 17...♕c7 18 ♗b4 ♗xf2+ 19 ♔xf2 ♖fc8, when 20 cxd5? loses to 20...a5!. However, even here 20 ♖c1 is rather unclear.

2 At first sight Black can continue 19...♘xf2 20 ♘xf2 ♗xf2+ 21 ♔xf2 ♕b6+, but White replies 22 c5! ♕xb7 23 ♕c2 ♕b2 24 ♖c1 ♕xa3 25 ♕xc3 ♕xc3 26 ♖xc3 with a very likely draw after the inevitable exchange of queenside pawns.

3 This line is not clear-cut after 22 ♔h1 ♕xc5 23 ♕xc3, but the improvement 20...♗e3! is crushing.

Game 43
Rubinstein – Alekhine
Dresden 1926
Brilliancy Prize
Queen's Indian Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 ♘f3 e6
3 ♗f4 b6
4 h3

It was certainly not necessary to prevent Black's ...♘h5 at this moment. The weakening of the square g3 gave me the idea of a quite unusual but, as the following proves, very effective system of development.

4 ... ♗b7
5 ♘bd2 ♗d6!

After this, White has the unpleasant choice between (1) the exchange, which strengthens Black's position in the centre; (2) 6 e3, which, after 6...♗xf4, would spoil his pawn position; and (3) 6 ♗g5 when Black would secure the advantage of the pair of bishops by means of 6...h6.

6 ♗xd6 cxd6
7 e3 0-0
8 ♗e2

And not 8 ♗d3 as he intends to play ♘xe4 after Black's ...d5 and ...♘e4.

8 ... d5
9 0-0 ♘c6
10 c3

If 10 ♘e5 then 10...♘e7 followed by ...d6.

10 ... ♘e4!

Black has already obtained the initiative.

11 ♘xe4 dxe4
12 ♘d2 f5
13 f4

Otherwise Black would continue ...♕g5, preventing the text move for a long time.

13 ... g5!

Black must play most energetically before White finds time to coordinate the activity of his pieces.

14 ♘c4 d5
15 ♘e5 ♘xe5

Much better than 15...gxf4 16 ♘xc6! followed by 17 ♖xf4.

16 dxe5

In case of 16 fxe5 Black would eventually break through by means of ...f4.

16 ... ♔h8
17 a4?! *(D)*

White simply has no time for this counter-attack. His only chance of a successful defence was 17 g3 followed by 18 ♔h2. After White has missed this defensive opportunity, Black gradually develops crushing pressure.

B

17 ... ♖g8
18 ♕d2 gxf4!

At the right time, since White cannot retake with the pawn on account of 19...♕h4 with the double threat 20...♕xh3 or 20...♖xg2+!.

19 ♖xf4 ♕g5
20 ♗f1 ♕g3!

Forcing the following king move and thus preparing the win of a tempo at the 23rd move.

21 ♔h1 ♕g7
22 ♕d4 ♗a6!
23 ♖f2

White obviously has no choice.

23 ... ♕g3!

Compare the note to Black's 20th move.

24 ♖c2 ♗xf1
25 ♖xf1 ♖ac8

Still working with gain of tempo, as he now threatens 26...♖c4.

26 b3 ♖c7
27 ♖e2 ♖cg7
28 ♖f4 ♖g6! *(D)*

W

After this move a highly original position is obtained, the outstanding features of which are the following: Black's immediate threat is 29...♖h6 30 ♕d1 ♕g7 winning the e5-pawn, as 31 ♕d4 would be answered by 31...♖xh3+. If White tries to parry this by playing 29 ♕d1, Black still answers with 29...♖h6!, thus putting the opponent in a position of a complete zugzwang. As a matter of fact:

1) The f4-rook could not move because of 30...♕xe5.

2) The e2-rook is tied by the defence of the squares e3 and g2.

3) The king could not move because Black could take on h3.

4) The queen could move neither along the first rank (due to the reply 30...♕g7!), nor along the d-file (because of 30...♖xh3+!).

5) Finally, in the event of 30 c4 Black would win by 30...d4!, and in the event of 30 b4 by 30...♕g7 31 ♕d4 ♖c8! followed by 32...♖c4.

Therefore White offers a pawn in the hope of exchanging a pair of rooks and thus weakening the enemy attack.

29 ♕b4 ♖h6
30 h4

Now this move is absolutely compulsory.

30 ... ♕g7!

Much better than the rather prosaic 30...♖xh4+. If now 31 ♕d6, then 31...♖g6 32 ♖ff2 f4! 33 exf4 e3! and wins.

31 c4 ♖g6
32 ♕d2 ♖g3!

Threatening 33...♖h3+ 34 ♔g1 ♕g3 and, if immediately 33 ♔g1, then 33...d4! 34 exd4 e3! 35 ♕c2 (or ♕b2) 35...♖h3 followed by ...♕g3 and wins. White is helpless.

33 ♕e1 ♖xg2

0-1

Game 44

Euwe – Alekhine

Second Exhibition Game, Amsterdam 1926

Nimzo-Indian Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e6
3 ♘c3 ♗b4
4 ♘f3 b6
5 g3

In the second exhibition game, played after our match in 1937, Dr. Euwe played 5 ♗g5 but after the right answer (5...h6 6 ♗xf6 ♗xc3+ 7 bxc3 ♕xf6), had to play very exactly in order to avoid being at a disadvantage. But also the fianchetto development in the text is perfectly harmless.

5 ... ♗b7
6 ♗g2 0-0
7 0-0 ♗xc3
8 bxc3 d6?!

After this, White profits by the fact that Black's b7-bishop is unprotected, and forces an advantageous transaction in the centre. Had Black made the right move (8...♕c8), he would have come out of the opening stage with rather the better prospects.

9 d5! exd5

Although this pawn cannot be kept, it is nevertheless better to start an open middle-game fight than to allow, after 9...e5, the formation 10 ♘h4 followed by e4, f4, and so on, which is clearly advantageous for White.

10 ♘h4 ♘e4

After 10...c6 11 cxd5 ♘xd5 12 c4 ♘b4 13 a3 ♘4a6 14 ♗b2 White would dominate the board.

11 cxd5 ♖e8 *(D)*

If 11...♘xc3, then 12 ♕d3 ♘a4 13 ♗e4! h6 14 ♕d4 ♘c5 15 ♘f5 f6 16 ♗d2 with a decisive positional advantage.

12 ♗b2

I don't agree here with Dr. Euwe, who in the Dutch booklet devoted to these games rather severely criticises his 12th and 13th moves. In any case, the pawn sacrifice suggested by him instead of the text move is anything but convincing, as after 12 ♕d3 ♘c5 13 ♕c2 b5 14 c4 Black would have an adequate defence by continuing 14...bxc4 15 ♗b2 ♘bd7 16 ♘f5 ♘f6.

12 ... b5

As 12...♕f6 (or 12...♕g5) would be inferior, because of the answer 13 ♕a4, Black has practically no other way to prevent c3-c4.

13 a4

Natural and good. After 13 ♕d4, recommended by Dr. Euwe, Black would have the choice between:

a) the sacrifice of a pawn, in order to keep control over c4: 13...c5 14 dxc6 ♘xc6 15 ♕d3 ♘e5 16 ♕xb5 ♕b6! 17 a4 ♗c6;

b) the exchange of queens, which would offer fair defensive possibilities: 13...♕f6 14 f3 ♕xd4+ 15 cxd4 ♘d2 16 ♖f2 ♘c4 17 e4 ♘d7.

13 ... ♕g5!

Correctly deciding to eliminate White's d-pawn at the cost of a further delay in the development of the queenside.

14 axb5 ♕xd5

15 ♕a4?

But here White over-estimates his chances. He should, instead, by exchanging queens, force a favourable endgame which, however, would have been far from hopeless for Black. For instance, 15 ♕xd5 ♗xd5 16 ♖a4! ♘f6 17 e3 ♗xg2 18 ♔xg2 ♘bd7 19 ♖fa1 ♖eb8 20 c4 ♖b7 21 ♗d4 ♘b6 22 ♖b4 ♘fd7 23 ♘f5 (at last!) 23...g6 24 ♘e7+ ♔f8 25 ♘c6 ♘c5, with an adequate defence. And if 15 c4 (instead of 15 ♕xd5) Black would not have taken the poisoned pawn, but would simply have answered 15...♕xd1, followed by 16...a6!, with an easy defence. After the text move, which contains only a rather obvious trap, White's advantage instantly vanishes.

15 ... ♘d7

Of course not 15...♕d2? because of 16 b6 ♗c6 17 b7! and wins.

16 c4 ♕d2

17 ♕a2

Under the circumstances comparatively the best.

17 ... a6!

Forcing a further simplification. 17...♕xe2 would be inferior because of 18 ♘f5 f6 19 ♘xg7![1].

18 ♗c1

The pawn sacrifice 18 b6 would be ineffective, for instance 18...♘xb6 19 ♘f5 ♕g5! 20 ♘xg7 ♖e7 21 ♗h3 ♗c8, followed by ...f6 ∓.

18 ... ♕xa2

19 ♖xa2 axb5

20 ♖b2

Slightly better than the alternative 20 ♖xa8 ♗xa8 21 cxb5 ♘c3.

20 ... ♖ab8

21 cxb5?

After this, Black succeeds in emerging from the complications a pawn to the good. After 21 ♗xe4 ♖xe4 22 cxb5 ♗d5!, he would have remained with only a positional advantage.

21 ... ♘c3

22 ♗c6 *(D)*

Now the only way to try to keep the balance of the position.

22 ... ♖xe2!

An unpleasant surprise for White, justified by the variation 23 ♗xd7 ♖xb2 24 ♗xb2 ♘e2#!

23 ♖b3

Hardly preferable would be 23 ♗d2 ♘a4 24 ♖a2 ♘dc5.

---

1 This line includes a complete oversight by Alekhine, since 19...♔xg7 20 ♗xf6+ ♘exf6 defends the queen. Instead 19 c5+ and 20 c6 wins for White.

B

23 ... ♗xc6
24 ♖xc3 ♗xb5
25 ♖xc7 ♘e5

Not the most effective way to profit from the material advantage. By 25...h6! Black could prevent both 26 ♘f5 (because of 26...♖e5) and 26 ♗f4 (because of 26...g5)—thus leaving White with practically no effective answer.

26 ♘f5?

The complications introduced by this move end in Black's favour. 26 ♗f4 was necessary, with the possible line 26...h6 27 ♗xe5 ♖xe5 28 ♖b1 ♖be8 29 ♘f3 ♖d5 when Black should win, but only after a long endgame.

26 ... ♘f3+
27 ♔g2

Or 27 ♔h1 ♖e5.

27 ... ♘e1+!
28 ♔h3 ♖e5

This would also have been the answer to 28 ♔g1[1].

29 ♖h1

He could resist longer—but without any real hope—by giving up the exchange immediately: 29 ♖xe1 ♖xe1 30 ♘xd6.

29 ... ♘d3
30 ♘e7+ ♔f8
31 ♗a3

The last convulsions!

31 ... ♘xf2+
32 ♔g2 ♘xh1
33 ♗xd6 ♖e6
34 ♗c5

Or 34 ♘c6+ ♖xd6 35 ♘xb8 ♖d1, winning.

34 ... ♖e8!
35 ♘f5+ ♔g8 *(D)*

W

36 ♘e7+

If 36 ♘d6 then 36...♗d3! 37 ♔xh1 ♖e1+ 38 ♔g2 ♖8e2+ 39 ♔h3 h6 40 ♖xf7 ♖c2[2] 41 ♗f2 ♖e6 and wins.

36 ... ♔h8

---

1 28 ♔g1 ♖e5 29 f4! offers White defensive chances, so Black might be better off retracing his steps by 28 ♔g1 ♘f3+ 29 ♔g2 ♖e5!, whereupon he wins the exchange.

2 I don't understand this move, which allows White to fight on by 41 ♗d4!, whereas the alternative 40...♖h1 41 ♖f2 ♖xf2 42 ♗xf2 ♗f1+ wins at once.

37 ♔xh1 ♗d3
38 ♔g2 h6
39 ♔f3 ♔h7
40 h4 h5
0-1

Game 45
Alekhine – Euwe
Third Exhibition Game, Amsterdam 1926
King's Indian Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 g6
3 ♘c3 ♗g7

At the period when this game was played, the Grünfeld variation was somewhat out of fashion. Nowadays thanks to Botvinnik, Flohr, Keres and other masters of the younger generation, it is played more often, although without any remarkable success.

4 e4 0-0
5 ♗e3

If 5 f4 d6 6 ♘f3, then 6...c5! with a good game for Black.

5 ... d6
6 f3 e5
7 d5

Better is 7 ♘ge2 and only after 7...♘c6 (or 7...♗e6), 8 d5 winning tempi. Black would in that case have to face awkward development problems.

7 ... c6
8 ♕d2 cxd5
9 cxd5 ♘e8

Preparing the counter-attack ...f5 and preventing at the same time White's attempt to open the h-file (since 10 h4 may be met by 10...f5 11 h5 f4 followed by ...g5).

10 0-0-0 f5
11 ♔b1

It is obvious enough that the king must be removed as soon as possible from the open file.

11 ... ♘d7?!

Giving White the welcome opportunity to create—without taking many chances—interesting complications by temporarily sacrificing some material. By continuing 11...a6 12 ♗d3 b5 13 ♘ge2 f4 14 ♗f2 ♘d7 followed by ...♘b6 Black would have obtained a perfectly satisfactory position.

12 ♘h3!

In order to answer both 12...♘df6 and 12...♘b6 by 13 ♘g5, for instance 12...♘b6 13 ♘g5 f4 14 ♗xb6 ♕xg5 15 ♗f2 ♗d7 16 ♖c1 ♘c7 (or 16...a6 17 ♗b6) 17 g4!, with excellent prospects on account of the open c-file.

12 ... a6

Also if Black had prevented the following manoeuvre by 12...f4, White's prospects would have remained decidedly the more favourable.

13 exf5 gxf5 *(D)*
14 g4!

The point of his 12th move, by which he obtains the key square, e4, for his pieces.

14 ... fxg4

Relatively better than 14...f4 15 ♗f2, which offers absolutely no counter-chances for Black.

15 ♘g5 ♘df6

16 ♗d3 ♕e7

In case of 16...gxf3 I should have continued the attack by 17 ♖df1! and if 17...h6, then 18 ♘e6 ♗xe6 19 dxe6 ♘g4 20 ♘d5 with enough threats to frighten an elephant to death.

17 f4

Both 17 ♖df1 and 17 ♖hg1 were also considered. But the prospects connected with the move selected (the eventual opening of the f-file, or f5 followed by ♘e6) were extremely tempting.

17 ... e4

By this counter-sacrifice Dr. Euwe secures the diagonal h8-a1 for his bishop, and at the same time diminishes the danger threatening his king by forcing the exchange of a couple of minor pieces. Still, even so White retains the better chances after recapturing the sacrificed pawn.

18 ♘gxe4

But this is not the most energetic method. White should have played 18 ♘cxe4, and if in that case 18...♘xe4 19 ♗xe4 h6, then 20 ♘e6 ±; or 18...h6 19 ♘e6 ♗xe6 20 dxe6 ♕xe6 21 ♘g3 threatening 22 f5. Black would hardly have found a way to protect his numerous weaknesses sufficiently.

18 ... ♘xe4
19 ♘xe4

Now forced as 19 ♗xe4? is impossible because of 19...♗xc3.

19 ... ♗f5
20 ♘g3

Blockading the g-pawn in order to play h3 at the first opportunity. After 20 ♘g5 Black would protect e6 by means of ...♘c7.

20 ... ♗xd3+
21 ♕xd3 ♕f6

A refined tactical manoeuvre, very much in Dr. Euwe's style; he provokes White's ♖d2 in order to deprive (after h3 gxh3; ♖xh3) the first rank of its natural protection. But against the correct reply all this refinement would prove useless.

22 ♖d2 ♕f7

Because of the threat 23 ♘h5.

23 h3 gxh3
24 ♖xh3 ♕g6
25 f5?!

Only after this second inaccuracy does Black suddenly get a kind of counter-attack. Very strong here was 25 ♘e4! and after 25...♘f6 simply 26 ♘xd6 ♖ad8 27 ♗c5; other replies would allow White to strengthen his position further by means of ♖g3 or ♖dh2.

25 ... ♕g4
26 ♖dh2 ♖c8!

In case of 26...♘f6 (which seemingly protects everything) White would play 27 ♗c1! with the strong threat 28 ♖h4. The occupation of the c-file gives Black new opportunities.

27 f6!

The main idea of this transaction is shown by the following variation: 27...♘xf6 28 ♘f5 ♕c4! 29 ♘e7+ ♔f7 30 ♕f5! ♔xe7 31 ♕e6+ ♔d8 32 ♗b6+ ♖c7 33 ♖c3 ♕f1+ 34 ♔c2 and wins.

27 ... ♖xf6!
28 ♕xh7+ ♔f8
29 ♖h1 *(D)*

This rather sad necessity is the direct consequence of Black's fine 21st move. But in spite of this partial success, the position of the second player is still full of danger. If, for instance, 29...♕b4, then simply 30 a3 and 30...♖f1+? would be refuted by 31 ♖xf1+. And 29...♖f3 is also not satisfactory because of 30 ♗h6! (with the point 30...♖xg3? 31 ♖xg3 ♕xg3 32 ♕f5+). Therefore Black decides to simplify matters.

B

29 ... ♕g6+

It would have been slightly better to delay this exchange by playing first 29...♖c7 in which case White, by continuing 30 ♘h5! ♕f5+ 31 ♕xf5 ♖xf5 32 ♘f4, would maintain strong pressure[1].

After the text move he has a direct win.

30 ♕xg6 ♖xg6
31 ♘f5 *(D)*

B

Simply threatening 32 ♘xg7. If now 31...♖c7 then 32 ♗d4! ♗xd4 33 ♘xd4 and Black is without resource[2].

31 ... ♗e5
32 ♖f3! ♘f6

Or 32...♖f6 33 ♗g5 ♖f7 34 ♗e7+! ♖xe7 35 ♘xd6+ and wins.

33 ♖h8+ ♖g8
34 ♖xg8+ ♔xg8
35 ♘e7+ 1-0

---

1 After 32...♖cf7 33 ♘e6+ ♔e7 I see no real advantage for White—the d5-pawn is weak and Black can liquidate by ...♖f1+. Moreover, 30...♕xh3 31 ♘xf6 ♕xh7 32 ♘xh7+ ♔g8 offers excellent drawing chances.

2 After 33...♘g7 Black still has good drawing chances since 34 ♘e6+ ♘xe6 35 dxe6 fails to 35...♖cg7!, followed by ...♔e7. After the move played Black is really lost.

Game 46

Alekhine – Nimzowitsch

New York 1927

Nimzo-Indian Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e6
3 ♘c3 ♗b4
4 ♕c2 d6

The only fashionable move nowadays (see, for instance, my second match with Dr. Euwe) is 4...d5.

5 ♗g5 ♘bd7
6 e3 b6
7 ♗d3 ♗b7
8 f3

By retaining control of e4, White makes it very difficult for the opponent to form a suitable plan of further development.

8 ... ♗xc3+
9 ♕xc3 c5
10 ♘h3!

Black expected here either 10 ♘e2 or 10 ♖d1, both permitting him to simplify matters by means of 10...♘d5!. The move selected permits White to make effective use of his bishops.

10 ... h6
11 ♗f4

And not 11 ♗h4 because of the possibility of ...g5-g4.

11 ... ♕e7
12 ♗g3!

Black threatened 12...e5 eventually followed by ...e4.

12 ... e5?

This not too unnatural attempt to clarify the situation in the centre is probably already the decisive error. After the straightforward 12...0-0, White would not have found it very easy to exploit Black's unmistakable dark-squared weaknesses.

13 dxe5 dxe5
14 0-0-0 g6

14...e4 15 ♗e2 would be useless, and the immediate 14...0-0-0 would have been met by 15 ♗f5 g6 16 ♗xe5! gxf5 17 ♖xd7 followed by 18 ♗xf6 or 18 ♗xh8, with a decisive advantage[1].

15 ♗c2

This bishop will prove very useful on the diagonal a4-e8.

15 ... 0-0-0
16 ♗a4 *(D)*

16 ... ♖he8
17 ♘f2 ♕e6

Black wants to dislodge the ominous bishop on a4, but this plan costs

1 This is a simple oversight, since after 17...♘xd7 18 ♗xh8 f6 the bishop is trapped and Black wins a piece.

a lot of time which White will utilise to decisively strengthen his pressure on the d-file. A slightly better chance of salvation was offered by 17...♘h5 and if 18 ♖d2 then 18...♘xg3 19 hxg3 ♖h8! 20 ♖hd1 ♘b8[1].

18 ♘d3 ♖e7
19 ♖d2 ♖de8
20 ♖hd1

If now 20...♘h5 then simply 21 ♗xd7+ ♖xd7 22 ♘xc5 and White wins.

20 ... ♗c6
21 ♗c2! ♘h5 *(D)*

In this rather harmless-looking position—with only one pawn exchanged and none of White's pieces further than his third rank—Black is already completely helpless against the threats of 22 ♘xc5 followed by 23 ♖d6, or alternatively 22 b4. If, for instance, 21...♔c7 (in order to protect d6), then 22 b4! cxb4 23 ♘xb4 ♘c5 24 ♘d5+ ♗xd5 25 cxd5 ♕d6 26 f4! and wins. After the text move Black loses a queen and a pawn for a rook and knight, after which the rest is merely a matter of technique.

Although this game is one of my happiest achievements in the domain of opening strategy, it has passed almost unnoticed, merely because of its length and the predilection of most of the chess journalists for short 'brilliancies'. Yet it was certainly not my fault that Nimzowitsch (whose hopes for the second prize were more than strongly compromised by this loss) decided to fight a desperate struggle to the bitter end.

W

22 ♘xc5! ♘xc5
23 ♖d6 ♘xg3
24 hxg3 ♕xd6
25 ♖xd6 ♖c7
26 b4 ♘b7
27 ♖xc6

It is obvious that from now on every reduction of material will be in White's favour.

27 ... ♖xc6
28 ♗a4 ♖ee6
29 ♗xc6 ♖xc6
30 ♕xe5

This particular exchange opens new fields of action for both White's queen and king.

30 ... ♖xc4+
31 ♔d2 h5
32 a3

White's next object will be to tie up Black's rook and knight. He succeeds in this aim by bringing his

1 However, in this line 20 ♘g4! f6 21 ♕d3 ♘b8 22 ♕xg6 ♖xd2 23 ♔xd2 destroys Black's position.

queen into a very strong position in the middle of the board (see 43rd move).

32 ... ♖c7
33 ♕e8+ ♘d8
34 e4 ♖d7+
35 ♔e3 ♖c7
36 ♔f4

Also good was 36 ♔f2 followed by ♔g1-h2 and eventually f4-f5. But White wants his king to participate in the final battle.

36 ... ♖c3
37 a4 ♖c2
38 ♕e7 ♖c7
39 ♕f6 ♖c2
40 ♕e7 ♖c7
41 ♕d6 ♘e6+
42 ♔e5

Or 42 ♔e3, followed by ♔f2-g1, as mentioned in the previous note.

42 ... ♘d8
43 ♕d5! ♖c6
44 ♔f4

Now White decides to provoke the move ...a5, which will create a new weakness on b6.

44 ... ♘e6+
45 ♔e3 ♖c3+
46 ♔e2 ♖c7
47 f4 ♘d8
48 ♔e3 ♖c3+
49 ♔d4 ♖c7 *(D)*
50 ♔e5! a5

Now practically forced, as after 50...♖c6 51 f5!, there would not be a satisfactory move left.

51 ♕a8+ ♔d7
52 b5 ♔e7

Instead 52...♖b7 53 ♔f6 would have been perfectly useless.

53 f5!

And not 53 ♕b8? due to the reply 53...♘e6! winning the queen because of the mating threat at c5.

53 ... f6+
54 ♔d4 ♖d7+
55 ♔e3 gxf5
56 exf5

After this Black's h-pawn will inevitably fall.

56 ... ♘f7
57 ♕f3 ♘e5

This knight's position, though good, is insufficient compensation for the further material loss.

58 ♕xh5 ♖d3+
59 ♔f2 ♖d2+
60 ♔f1 ♖d4
61 ♕h7+ ♔d6

If 61...♘f7 then 62 ♕g8 followed by ♕b8 winning the black pawn on b6.

62 ♕b7 ♘d7
63 ♕c6+ ♔e7
64 ♕e6+ ♔d8
65 ♕b3 ♖b4
66 ♕d1 ♔e7
67 ♕e2+ ♔d8
68 ♕a2 ♔e7
69 ♔e2! ♖e4+

Or 69...♔d8 70 ♕g8+ followed by g4-g5.

70 ♔f3 ♖b4
71 ♔e3 ♘c5
72 ♕g8 ♘d7
73 g4!

This now brings a prompt decision.

73 ... ♖xa4
74 g5 fxg5
75 ♕xg5+ ♔d6
76 ♕g6+ ♔c7
77 ♕c6+ ♔d8
78 f6 ♖a1
79 g4 ♖f1
80 g5 ♖f5
81 ♕a8+ ♔c7
82 ♕c6+ ♔d8
83 g6! 1-0

If now 83...♖xf6 then 84 g7 and if 83...♘xf6, then 84 ♕d6+ followed by 85 g7.

Game 47
Alekhine – Marshall
New York 1927
Brilliancy Prize
Queen's Pawn Game

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e6
3 ♘f3 ♘e4

This unnatural and time-wasting move can be successfully answered in several ways. One of the simplest is 4 ♕c2 and in the event of 4...d5 or 4...f5, then 5 ♘c3.

4 ♘fd2

With the obvious idea of exchanging on e4 and developing the other knight at c3. The present game proves rather convincingly the soundness of this scheme.

4 ... ♗b4

A typical Marshall trap: if now 5 a3 then 5...♕f6! with an immediate win!

5 ♕c2 d5

5...f5 6 a3 forces the exchange of both Black's developed pieces.

6 ♘c3 f5
7 ♘dxe4

After this White will easily force the opening of the central files, by means of f3 and eventually e4. And as he is better developed, this opening must secure him a substantial positional advantage.

7 ... fxe4
8 ♗f4

This bishop will protect the kingside against any sudden attack.

8 ... 0-0
9 e3 c6

White was threatening, by means of 10 a3, to force the exchange of the b4-bishop for the knight (as then 10...♗d6? would lose to 11 ♗xd6 ♕xd6 12 cxd5 exd5 13 ♘xd5!).

10 ♗e2 ♘d7
11 a3

I considered this as being sounder than the line 11 0-0 ♘f6 12 f3 ♘h5! 13 fxe4 ♘xf4 14 ♖xf4 ♖xf4 15 exf4 dxc4.

11 ... ♗e7

After the exchange at c3 his dark squares would have remained helplessly weak.

12 0-0 ♗g5 *(D)*

There is hardly anything better for Black.

13 f3! ♗xf4
14 exf4 ♖xf4

Instead 14...exf3 15 ♖xf3 ♘f6 16 c5! would be an unpleasant alternative because of the weakness at e6. By the text move, together with the three following moves, Marshall tries to save his compromised game through combinative play.

15 fxe4 ♖xf1+
16 ♖xf1 e5

Or 16...dxc4 17 ♗xc4 ♘b6 18 ♕f2!, with a clear advantage.

17 ♕d2!

The initial move of the decisive manoeuvre. If now 17...♕b6 then 18 c5 ♕a5 19 exd5 exd4 20 b4! dxc3 21 ♕g5 ♕c7 22 d6 h6 23 ♕e7 and wins.

17 ... c5

Trying to increase the tension at any cost, as pawn exchanges would have proved rapidly disastrous.

18 dxe5!

Instead 18 ♘xd5 cxd4 19 ♕b4 would have been erroneous because of 19...♘f6.

18 ... d4 *(D)*
19 ♕f4!

This sacrifice in connection with the 'quiet' 21st move is doubtless the safest and quickest method to force victory. Not, however, 19 ♘d5?, allowing 19...♘xe5 and 20...♕d6.

19 ... dxc3

Forced.

20 ♕f7+ ♔h8
21 bxc3!

This alone proves the correctness of the sacrifice. Instead 21 e6 would have been tempting, but premature, because of 21...♘f6 22 e7 ♕g8 23 ♖xf6 ♗g4! 24 ♕xg8+ ♔xg8 25 ♖d6 ♖e8! ∓.

21 ... ♕g8
22 ♕e7 h6
23 ♗h5!

And not 23 e6 ♘f6 24 e5 ♘h7!.

23 ... a5

If 23...♕xc4 then 24 ♗f7.

24 e6 g6
25 exd7 ♗xd7
26 ♖f7 1-0

Game 48
Alekhine – Tartakower
Kecskemet 1927
Caro-Kann Defence

1 e4 c6
2 d4 d5

3 ♘c3 dxe4
4 ♘xe4 ♘f6
5 ♘g3

In the Hastings Tournament of 1936/7 I successfully tried against W. Winter the pawn sacrifice 5 ♗d3, which was recommended by Dr. Tarrasch shortly before his death. This game continued 5...♕xd4 6 ♘f3 ♕d8 7 ♕e2 ♘xe4 (here 7...♘bd7, as four(!) amateurs in consultation played against me in Majorca, January 1935, would be slightly premature—because of the unpleasant answer 8 ♘d6#) 8 ♗xe4 ♘d7 9 0-0 ♘c5 10 ♖d1 ♕c7 11 ♘e5! ♘xe4 12 ♕xe4 ♗e6 13 ♗f4 ♕c8 14 ♘c4! g5!? 15 ♗xg5 ♖g8 16 ♗f4 ♗xc4 17 ♕xc4 ♕g4 18 g3 e5 19 ♖e1 (a more elegant solution was 19 ♕b3!, as taking on f4 would have led to an immediate disaster after 20 ♕xb7) 19...0-0-0 20 ♖xe5 and Black resigned after a few more moves.

5 ... e5

Most probably sufficient to equalise. But in order to achieve this Black must play the next moves with care.

6 ♘f3 exd4
7 ♘xd4

Also 7 ♕xd4 ♕xd4 8 ♘xd4 ♗c5 9 ♘df5 0-0 10 ♗e3, played by me against Capablanca in New York 1927, does not give any real chances of favourable complications.

7 ... ♗c5

Already a rather serious loss of time. Indicated was the immediate 7...♗e7, followed by castling, with a satisfactory position.

8 ♕e2+! ♗e7

Or 8...♕e7 9 ♕xe7+ ♗xe7 10 ♘df5, which gives White some advantage.

9 ♗e3 c5?!

This attempt to prevent White castling queenside fails completely. A much lesser evil was 9...0-0 10 0-0-0 ♕a5 11 ♔b1 ♘d5 12 ♕f3 with no immediate danger for Black.

10 ♘df5 0-0
11 ♕c4!

An important move which prepares with tempo (attacking the c5-pawn) the development of the f1-bishop.

11 ... ♖e8

Also after the immediate 11...b6 White would gradually obtain a winning attack by continuing 12 ♖d1 followed by ♕h4.

12 ♗d3 b6
13 0-0-0 ♗a6 *(D)*

It is obvious that alternatives would also lead to a more or less rapid catastrophe.

14 ♘h6+!

By making this forcing combination White calculated that his opponent cannot obtain three pieces for

the queen, but—as a consequence of the weakness of the long light diagonal—only two; the remainder is compulsory for Black.

14 ... gxh6
15 ♗xh7+! ♘xh7

If 15...♔h8 then 16 ♕xf7 followed by 17 ♘f5 with a mating attack.

16 ♕g4+ ♔h8
17 ♖xd8 ♖xd8

Or 17...♗xd8 18 ♕f3.

18 ♕e4 ♘c6
19 ♕xc6 ♗f8
20 ♘f5 ♗c4
21 ♗xh6 ♗d5
22 ♕c7 ♖ac8
23 ♕f4 ♖c6
24 ♗xf8 ♖xf8
25 ♕e5+ ♘f6
26 ♘d6! 1-0

Game 49
Kmoch – Alekhine
Kecskemet 1927
Queen's Pawn Game

1 d4 d5
2 ♘f3 c6
3 e3

After this tame move Black has no difficulty with his c8-bishop. More usual and better is 3 c4, leading to the Slav Defence of the Queen's Gambit Declined.

3 ... ♗f5
4 ♗d3 e6
5 0-0

The exchange here or on the next move certainly cannot be recommended.

5 ... ♘d7
6 c4 ♘gf6
7 ♕c2

It is easily comprehensible that White wants to clarify the situation in the centre as soon as possible. 7 ♘c3 would have been simply answered by 7...♗e7.

7 ... ♗xd3
8 ♕xd3 ♘e4

In order to eliminate as many minor pieces as possible, since White will sooner or later obtain some more space by playing e4.

9 ♘fd2 ♘df6
10 ♘c3

After 10 ♘xe4 ♘xe4 11 f3 ♘f6 12 e4 dxc4 13 ♕xc4 ♕b6 14 ♘c3 ♖d8 15 ♖d1 ♗e7, to be followed by ...0-0, White's position would have remained rather shaky.

10 ... ♘xd2
11 ♗xd2 ♗e7
12 e4

The freedom White obtains by this move will be neutralised by the necessity for him to permanently protect his d-pawn. But he hardly had another plan at his disposal as blocking attempts would fail, e.g. 12 c5 e5! or 12 f4 c5!, which are both rather in Black's favour.

12 ... dxe4
13 ♘xe4 0-0
14 ♗c3 ♕c7 *(D)*

b6 was also a good square for the queen.

15 ♖ad1 ♖ad8
16 ♖d2?

White loses this game not because of the opening, which was

more or less satisfactory, but chiefly because of his altogether passive and conventional play. Here, for example, he could quite safely play 16 f4 preventing the black queen from occupying that square. From now on Black's chances can be considered as decidedly superior.

16 ... ♕f4!
17 ♘xf6+ ♗xf6
18 ♖fd1 ♖d7
19 ♕g3

The exchange of queens would doubtless increase White's drawing prospects, but Black can easily avoid it.

19 ... ♕f5
20 f4

The main object of this move seems to be the prevention of ...♗g5 or ...e5 at some point in the future.

20 ... ♖fd8
21 ♕e3 h5!

Not only giving a loophole for the king but also restricting White's kingside (22 h3 can now be met by 22...h4).

22 b4

This facilitates Black's job, since he will immediately eliminate the c4-pawn, and thus obtain full control over d5.

22 ... b5!
23 ♕f3

This attempt to save by tactical means a strategically very sick position leads to a rapid debacle. But also after the quieter 23 c5 ♖d5, followed by ...g5!, the game could hardly last very long.

23 ... bxc4
24 ♕xc6 ♕xf4
25 ♕xc4 e5! *(D)*

Obtaining a decisive material advantage.

26 ♕e2 exd4
27 ♖d3

If this blockade would be possible Black would have had to face some technical difficulties. But as it is, he succeeds in forcing an immediate win by a keenly calculated combination.

27 ... dxc3!

The chief variation of this transaction is both pretty and convincing: 28 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 29 ♕e8+ ♔h7 30 ♕xd7 ♕e4!! 31 ♕xf7 (or 31 ♕d5 ♕xd5 32 ♖xd5 c2 and wins, as 33

♖c5 is refuted by 33...♗d4+) 31...c2 32 ♕xh5+ ♔g8 and wins.

28 ♖xd7 ♖xd7
29 ♖xd7

Loses instantly.

29 ... ♗d4+
30 ♔h1

Or 30 ♖xd4 ♕xd4+ 31 ♔f1 ♕f4+ 32 ♔e1 ♕xb4.

30 ... ♕c1+

0-1

Game 50

Capablanca – Alekhine

Buenos Aires Wch (1) 1927

French Defence

1 e4 e6
2 d4 d5
3 ♘c3 ♗b4
4 exd5 exd5
5 ♗d3 ♘c6
6 ♘e2 ♘ge7
7 0-0 ♗f5
8 ♗xf5

Other moves like 8 a3 or 8 ♘g3 would also prove perfectly harmless. This game shows once more that, if White has any fighting ambitions in this variation, he must avoid the pawn exchange at the 4th move.

8 ... ♘xf5
9 ♕d3 ♕d7
10 ♘d1

The beginning of a long series of slightly inferior moves. The natural developing move 10 ♗f4, which Black intended to meet by 10...0-0-0, would have led to a more lively struggle.

10 ... 0-0
11 ♘e3 ♘xe3
12 ♗xe3

White's minor pieces are now obstructing the vital e-file. This is a convincing proof of the inexactitude of his opening strategy.

12 ... ♖fe8
13 ♘f4

As the answer proves, the knight has no future on this square. 13 ♗f4 followed by c3 was natural and good enough for a draw.

13 ... ♗d6 *(D)*

W

Thus Black proposes a transaction whose results would be very satisfactory for himself. If, namely, 14 ♘xd5 ♗xh2+ 15 ♔xh2 ♕xd5 16 c4, then 16...♕h5+ 17 ♔g1 ♖ad8 18 d5 ♖d6 and White's king position would be in danger.

14 ♖fe1

White continues to play superficially. Indicated was first 14 c3.

14 ... ♘b4
15 ♕b3?

After this he will be obliged at least to spoil his pawn position in a rather ugly way. The lesser evil was 15 ♕d2 ♕f5 16 ♖ec1 h5! (Black is

threatening ...♖e4 followed by ..h4) with some positional advantage for Black.

15 ... ♕f5

16 ♖ac1? *(D)*

After this further error, the game can hardly be saved as Black now wins a pawn, with a fairly good position. Necessary was 16 ♘d3 after which Black, it is true, would have obtained a far superior endgame by continuing 16...♘xd3 17 ♕xd3 ♕xd3 18 cxd3 ♗b4 19 ♖ec1 c6, eventually followed by ...a5!, etc.

16 ... ♘xc2!

17 ♖xc2 ♕xf4

This is the possibility overlooked by Capablanca at his 16th move. He expected only 17...♗xf4 after which he would have re-established the balance by 18 ♖c5.

18 g3

It is merely a matter of taste whether this or 18 ♕xd5 ♕xh2+ 19 ♔f1 c6 is preferable.

18 ... ♕f5

Tempting was also 18...♕f3 19 ♕xb7 h5 20 ♕b5 h4 21 ♕e2 ♕f5, with a good attack. But the decision to keep the material advantage can certainly not be blamed.

19 ♖ce2 b6

20 ♕b5 h5

21 h4 ♖e4

Threatening 22...♖xh4.

22 ♗d2(!)

This temporary sacrifice of a second pawn offers comparatively the best saving chances—in case Black accepts it. Perfectly hopeless would have been 22 ♕d3 ♖ae8 23 ♗d2 ♕e6.

22 ... ♖xd4

This acceptance—which had to be calculated very carefully—was by no means necessary. Simple and convincing was instead 22...♖ae8 as after the exchange of the white queen for two rooks by 23 ♕xe8+ ♖xe8 24 ♖xe8+ ♔h7 Black, owing to his considerable positional advantage, would have but little difficulty in forcing the win.

23 ♗c3 ♖d3

Also after 23...♖g4 (23...♖c4? 24 ♖e5!) 24 ♗e5 White would have finally won back one of his minus pawns.

24 ♗e5 ♖d8

25 ♗xd6 ♖xd6

This is technically simpler than the unaesthetic 25...cxd6 26 ♕c6!.

26 ♖e5 ♕f3

Of course not 26...♕g6 27 ♖g5.

27 ♖xh5 ♕xh5

And here 27...♖e6 would be another method of suicide (28 ♕e8+!).

28 ♖e8+ ♔h7

29 ♕xd3+ ♕g6

30 ♕d1 *(D)*

30 ... ♖e6!

An interesting conception. Black gives back his plus pawn in order to combine the advance of the passed d-pawn with a mating attack. 30...d4 would be much less convincing because of the answer 31 ♕f3 threatening both 32 ♕a8 and 32 h5.

31 ♖a8 ♖e5!

Intending to place the queen behind the rook and at the same time preparing the formation of the pawn chain b6-c5-d4.

32 ♖xa7 c5
33 ♖d7?!

Shortens the agony. I expected, instead, 33 ♔g2 d4 34 ♖a3 ♕e6! 35 ♕f3 c4 followed by the decisive advance of the d-pawn.

33 ... ♕e6
34 ♕d3+ g6
35 ♖d8 d4
36 a4

Despair!

36 ... ♖e1+

This direct attack is convincing enough. But Black could also have taken immediate advantage of the exposed position of the adventurous rook—for instance, 36...♕e7! 37 ♖b8 ♕c7 38 ♕b3 ♖e6 39 ♖a8 ♕b7 and the rook would be lost because of the threat 40...♖e1+.

37 ♔g2 ♕c6+
38 f3 ♖e3
39 ♕d1 ♕e6
40 g4 ♖e2+
41 ♔h3 ♕e3
42 ♕h1 ♕f4!

After this there is no way of preventing the following rook move.

43 h5 ♖f2

0-1

Game 51
Capablanca – Alekhine
Buenos Aires Wch (11) 1927
Queen's Gambit Declined
(Cambridge Springs Defence)

1 d4 d5
2 c4 e6
3 ♘c3 ♘f6
4 ♗g5 ♘bd7
5 e3 c6
6 ♘f3 ♕a5
7 ♘d2 ♗b4
8 ♕c2 dxc4
9 ♗xf6 ♘xf6
10 ♘xc4 ♕c7
11 a3 ♗e7
12 ♗e2

White does not need to hurry to prevent ...c5 by playing 12 b4, since that advance would be still premature because of 12...c5 13 ♘b5 ♕b8 14 dxc5 ♗xc5 15 b4 ♗e7 16 ♘a5 ±.

12 ... 0-0
13 0-0 ♗d7

Here, too, 13...c5 would have been inadvisable for analogous reasons.

14 b4 b6

First 14...♖fd8 would be safer, followed by ...♗e8. Black's plan to continue by 15...a5 16 bxa5 b5 will be parried by the following answer.

15 ♗f3!

If now 15...a5, then 16 ♘e5! axb4 17 ♘b5 with the advantage.

15 ... ♖ac8
16 ♖fd1 ♖fd8
17 ♖ac1 ♗e8
18 g3

A good positional move, the immediate object of which is to prevent the answer ...♕f4 in case of e4.

18 ... ♘d5
19 ♘b2 ♕b8

More exact was the immediate 19...♕b7 keeping in mind the possibility of ...♕a6.

20 ♘d3 ♗g5

With the eventual threat ...♘xe3.

21 ♖b1 ♕b7 *(D)*

22 e4 ♘xc3

23 ♕xc3 ♕e7?!

Disadvantageous, since Black's dark-squared bishop will now be driven temporarily out of play. Correct was 23...♖c7 and if 24 ♗g2 then 24...♗f6 25 e5 ♗e7 26 ♖bc1 ♕c8 after which Black could quietly wait for further developments.

24 h4! ♗h6
25 ♘e5

Threatening 26 ♘g4.

25 ... g6
26 ♘g4?!

Now it is White's turn to miss the best move! After 26 ♘c4! ♗g7 27 e5 h5 28 ♘d6 Black would have nothing better than to start to fight for a draw by sacrificing the exchange for a pawn; 28...♖xd6 29 exd6 ♕xd6 30 ♕c4! ±[1].

26 ... ♗g7
27 e5 h5
28 ♘e3 c5!

Black profits from the opportunity to finally free his e8-bishop, correctly realising that White will be unable to take real advantage of the open b-file.

29 bxc5

If 29 dxc5 then 29...bxc5 30 ♖xd8 ♕xd8 31 bxc5 ♕c7.

29 ... bxc5 *(D)*

30 d5

This attempt to complicate the position—most unusual for Capablanca—turns decidedly to Black's

1 At the end of this line 30...♖d8 wins the d4-pawn, so this variation looks favourable for Black—note that 31 ♖bc1 ♗xd4 attacks g3, so White has no time to capture on c6.

advantage. An easy draw was obtainable by 30 ♖b7 ♖d7 31 ♖xd7 ♗xd7 32 d5 (or 32 dxc5 ♗e8 33 c6 ♕c7) 32...exd5 33 ♘xd5 ♕e6 34 ♘f4 ♗xe5 followed by a general liquidation resulting in opposite-coloured bishops.

30 ... exd5
31 ♘xd5 ♕e6

Of course not 31...♕xe5 32 ♕xe5 ♗xe5 33 ♘e7+, etc.

32 ♘f6+?!

As the following shows, the exchange thus forced only facilitates Black's task, as his passed pawn will largely compensate him for the dangerous white pawn on f6. Comparatively better was 32 ♖b7 ♗xe5 33 ♕a5 ♔g7 34 ♖xa7 and Black's advantage—the bishop pair—would not yet have been decisive.

32 ... ♗xf6
33 exf6 ♖xd1+
34 ♖xd1 ♗c6!

White cannot exchange bishops, as in that case he would lose his only pride—the pawn at f6.

35 ♖e1 ♕f5
36 ♖e3 c4!
37 a4

Realising the inferiority of his position, White begins to 'swindle'. If now 37...♗xa4, then 38 ♗e4 ♕g4 (38...♕d7 39 ♖f3 ♔h7? 40 ♕e5 would even lose) 39 ♗f3 ♕d7 40 ♖e7 ♕d3 41 ♕xd3 cxd3 42 ♖xa7, with a draw in view. But after the following simple answer Black's position is even better than before, as he obtains the full control over b4.

37 ... a5
38 ♗g2 ♗xg2
39 ♔xg2 ♕d5+
40 ♔h2 ♕f5
41 ♖f3 ♕c5 *(D)*

42 ♖f4

After 42 ♖e3 ♕b6 White would not have any useful move at his disposal (43 ♖f3 ♕c6!)[1].

1 After 43 ♖f3 ♕c6 44 ♕e3 White would seem to have enough counterplay to draw, for example 44...♔h7 45 ♖f5! ♕d6 46 ♖xh5+ gxh5 47 ♕g5 ♕f8 48 ♕xh5+, and if 48...♕h6 then 49 ♕f5+.

42 ... ♔h7

This was not necessary here: it was much more important to prevent White's next move by 42...♕b6. But the tempting 42...♕b4 43 ♕e3 ♕xa4 would be insufficient because of 44 ♖f5! ♕b4 45 ♖xh5 gxh5 46 ♕h6 ♕f8 47 ♕g5+, with perpetual check.

43 ♖d4 ♕c6?

A miscalculation, which allows White the chance to save the game. 43...♕b6! was still correct, and if 44 ♖f4 then 44...♔g8 obtaining the same position as he could have had two moves earlier.

44 ♕xa5

Forced, but good enough.

44 ... c3

If instead 44...♕xf6 45 ♖f4 then after 45...♕g7 46 ♕d5, or 45...♕e6 46 ♕c3 followed by a5, there is no danger for White in either case.

45 ♕a7! ♔g8

Other moves also cannot force the win against correct replies, for instance:

1) 45...♕xf6? 46 ♖f4 ♕xf4 47 gxf4 c2 48 ♕xf7+ ♔h8 (48...♔h6? 49 f5! even wins for White) 49 ♕f6+.

2) 45...♕c7 46 ♕xc7 ♖xc7 47 ♖d1.

3) 45...♖c7 46 ♕b8 c2 47 ♖d8 ♕xf6! 48 ♖h8+!! (this is the move I had overlooked when I started the combination by playing 43...♕c6) 48...♕xh8 49 ♕xc7, with salvation in all cases.

46 ♕e7

If now 46...c2 then 47 ♖d8+ ♖xd8 48 ♕xd8+ ♔h7 49 ♕e7 ♕e6 50 ♕c7, forcing a draw.

46 ... ♕b6 *(D)*

W

47 ♕d7?

Capablanca does not take full advantage of the opportunity given to him by my 43rd move, and the game again takes its natural course. By playing 47 ♖d7! he could have obtained a draw, as after 47...♕xf2+ (if 47...♖f8, then 48 a5 ♕xa5 49 ♖a7 ♕d5 50 ♖d7 ♕a5 and the white rook, because of the threat ♕xf8+!, would eternally persecute the enemy queen) 48 ♔h1! (48 ♔h3 would lose, since in the main variation the black queen would reach the square e6 with check) 48...♕a2 49 ♖d8+ ♖xd8 50 ♕xd8+ ♔h7 51 ♕f8 and there would not be anything better than perpetual check, White's f6-pawn remaining invulnerable. A most unusual escape!

47 ... ♕c5!

48 ♖e4

This is now the only way to parry 48...c2.

48 ... ♕xf2+

49 ♔h3 ♕f1+

50 ♔h2 ♕f2+

51 ♔h3 ♖f8

52 ♕c6

Again the only move.

52 ... ♕f1+
53 ♔h2 ♕f2+
54 ♔h3 ♕f1+
55 ♔h2 ♔h7!
56 ♕c4

If 56 ♕xc3 then 56...♕f2+ 57 ♔h1 ♖d8 58 ♕e1 ♕f3+ 59 ♔h2 ♖d1 and wins[1].

56 ... ♕f2+
57 ♔h3 ♕g1!

The decisive manoeuvre. As an alternative 57...c2 would be insufficient because of 58 ♖f4! followed by ♖f1[2].

58 ♖e2 *(D)*

Instead, 58 g4 would have led to a pretty win: 58...c2! 59 ♕xc2 ♖e8!!.

B

58 ... ♕f1+?

For the second time Black overlooks an easy win! The correct sequence of moves (which I actually intended when playing 57...♕g1!) was 58...♕h1+ 59 ♖h2 ♕f3! after which White could not play 60 ♖c2 due to 60...♕f5+ and he would be helpless against the threat 60...♕xf6 (if 60 ♕f4, then 60...♕d1!)[3].

59 ♔h2 ♕xf6
60 a5?

Instead of securing the draw by 60 ♖c2 ♖e8 61 ♔g2! (threatening either 62 ♖xc3 or 62 ♖f2) Capablanca commits another error and should now lose instantly.

60 ... ♖d8?

An immediate decision could be obtained by 60...♕f1! 61 ♕e4 ♖d8 (or ...♖b8). After the text move the win should again become quite a problem.

61 a6?

After 61 ♔g2 Black could only obtain a queen ending with three pawns against two which, with the right defence, should most probably end in a draw. Now at last, it is the end!

---

1 At the end of this line White can fight on by 60 ♖f4! ♕d3 61 ♕e4 and there is no immediate win for Black. In view of this, Black should prefer 57...♖b8! 58 ♖b4 ♖e8, which really does finish White off.

2 In fact 58 ♖f4 ♕d2 59 ♖f1 fails straight away after 59...♕d7+ 60 ♔h2 ♖c8 61 ♕f4 ♕d1, but White can defend by means of 58 ♖e7! ♕xf6 59 ♖c7 and Black cannot win.

3 There remains the question as to whether or not Black can win after 60 ♖e2 ♕xf6 61 ♔g2! ♖b8 (61...♖d8 62 ♖f2 ♖d2 63 ♖xd2 cxd2 64 ♕d5 draws) 62 a5, when White threatens to advance his pawn and force the exchange of the queenside pawns.

61 ... ♕f1!
62 ♕e4 ♖d2
63 ♖xd2 cxd2
64 a7 d1♕
65 a8♕ ♕g1+
66 ♔h3 ♕df1+

If now 67 ♕g2 then the reply is 67...♕h1#.

0-1

In my opinion this game has been praised too much, the whole world over. It was doubtless very exciting both for the players, who were continuously short of time, and the public. But its final part represents a true comedy of errors in which my opponent several times missed a draw and I missed about the same number of winning opportunities. In short, but for its outstanding sporting importance (it became, in fact, the crucial point of the match) I would hardly have included it in this collection.

Game 52
Capablanca – Alekhine
Buenos Aires Wch (21) 1927
Queen's Gambit Declined

1 d4 d5
2 c4 e6
3 ♘c3 ♘f6
4 ♗g5 ♘bd7
5 e3 ♗e7
6 ♘f3 0-0
7 ♖c1 a6

Although with this less usual defence I obtained quite a success in this match (+1, =7, -0), I now consider it as unsatisfactory because of the possible answer 8 cxd5, adopted by Capablanca in the 23rd, 25th and 27th games.

8 a3?!

This tame rejoinder will be convincingly refuted (as a winning attempt, of course) in the present game. It has since completely disappeared from master practice.

8 ... h6
9 ♗h4 dxc4
10 ♗xc4 b5!

More natural and a better move than 10...b6 which, however, in the 13th, 15th, 17th, and 19th games proved sufficient for maintaining the balance of the position.

11 ♗e2 ♗b7
12 0-0

In the event of 12 b4 Black would have obtained the initiative by playing 12...a5! 13 ♕b3 axb4 14 axb4 g5 15 ♗g3 ♘d5.

12 ... c5
13 dxc5 ♘xc5
14 ♘d4

As White has not an atom of advantage, the logical course for him was to simplify matters by means of 14 ♕xd8 ♖fxd8 15 ♖fd1. Entirely wrong would be, instead of the text move, 14 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 15 ♘xb5, because of 15...♕xd1 16 ♖fxd1 ♘b3 17 ♖c7 ♗xf3 18 ♗xf3 axb5 19 ♗xa8 ♖xa8 ∓.

14 ... ♖c8

Preventing ♘xb5 once and for all.

15 b4

Weakening, without any necessity, the square c4. Simpler was 15 ♗f3 ♕b6 16 ♕e2.

15 ... ♘cd7! *(D)*

16 ♗g3

In the event of 16 ♗f3, I intended to play 16...♕b6 17 ♘e4 ♖xc1 18 ♕xc1 ♖c8 after which the white queen would have had no good square at her disposal, for instance: 19 ♕b1? (or 19 ♕d2?) 19...♘xe4, 19 ♕b2 g5 20 ♘xf6+ ♗xf6, or 19 ♕d1 (or 19 ♕e1) 19...g5—all to Black's advantage. The text move is therefore comparatively the best[1].

16 ... ♘b6

17 ♕b3

In order to answer 17...♘c4 by 18 ♖fd1 ♕b6 19 a4.

17 ... ♘fd5

A good move connected with the positional threat 18...♘xc3 19 ♖xc3 ♗d5 20 ♕b2 ♖xc3 21 ♕xc3 ♕a8, followed by ...♖c8, with advantage to Black. White's answer is practically forced

18 ♗f3 ♖c4!

19 ♘e4 ♕c8

20 ♖xc4

I am inclined to consider this exchange the decisive positional error, as from now on Black, taking advantage of the formidable position of his knight at c4, will gradually concentrate all his pieces for action in the centre. White's correct move was 20 ♕b1 threatening both 21 ♘d6 and 21 ♗d6; if in that case 20...♖d8 then 21 ♘d2 ♖xc1 22 ♖xc1 ♕a8 23 ♗c7 and White would succeed in exchanging some further material without further compromising his position.

Still, the text move can by no means be considered an actual blunder and Capablanca lost this game only because he did not realise in time the dangers of his position and was, in the issue, regularly outplayed.

20 ... ♘xc4

21 ♖c1 ♕a8!

Threatening either 22...♘xb4 or 22...♘dxe3, and thus forcing White to abandon control of the central light squares.

22 ♘c3

If 22 ♘c5 then 22...♗xc5 23 bxc5 ♖c8 24 ♗e2 ♖xc5 25 ♗xc4 ♕c8, winning a pawn.

22 ... ♖c8

Threatening 23...♘d2.

23 ♘xd5 ♗xd5

24 ♗xd5 ♕xd5

25 a4

---

1 A curious note, because the lines given after 19 ♕b2 and 19 ♕d1/e1 are hardly clear-cut. Instead Black should reply with 19...♗xe4 and only then ...g5, which simply wins a piece.

The wish to reduce the number of pawns on the queenside is natural, but White's position still remains compromised, inasmuch as his b-pawn will become a welcome object of attack in the endgame.

25 ... ♗f6

26 ♘f3

Of course not 26 ♖d1 because of 26...bxa4 27 ♕xa4 ♘b2 28 ♕xa6 ♖a8 and wins.

26 ... ♗b2! *(D)*

W

In order to play ...e5 without restricting the activity of the bishop. The tactical justification of this move is shown by the following variations:

1) 27 ♖d1 bxa4! 28 ♕xa4 ♘b6 29 ♖xd5 ♘xa4 30 ♖d1 ♘c3 31 ♖e1 ♖c4 32 ♗d6 ♘e4 33 ♗e7 f6 34 ♖b1 ♔f7 35 ♔f1 ♗c3, with an easy win in the endgame.

2) 27 ♖b1 ♘a3! 28 ♕xb2 ♘xb1 29 ♕xb1 ♕b3 30 ♕f1 bxa4 31 h3 a3 and wins.

27 ♖e1 ♖d8

28 axb5 axb5

29 h3

This emergency exit is absolutely necessary.

29 ... e5

30 ♖b1 e4!

The beginning of the end.

31 ♘d4

Or:

1) 31 ♘e1 ♕d2 32 ♕c2 (32 ♔f1 ♖a8 33 ♖d1 ♖a3 and Black wins) 32...♕xc2 33 ♘xc2 ♖d2 34 ♘e1 ♘a3 and wins.

2) 31 ♘h2 ♕d3! 32 ♖xb2! ♕xb3 33 ♖xb3 ♖d1+ 34 ♘f1 ♘d2 35 ♖a3 ♘xf1 and White is helpless.

31 ... ♗xd4

32 ♖d1

Loses immediately. But also after 32 exd4 ♕xd4 the game could not have lasted long.

32 ... ♘xe3!

0-1

This and the 34th game are, in my opinion, the most valuable of the match.

Game 53

Alekhine – Capablanca

Buenos Aires Wch (32) 1927

Queen's Gambit Declined

1 d4 d5

2 c4 e6

3 ♘c3 ♘f6

4 ♗g5 ♘bd7

5 e3 c6

6 cxd5 exd5

7 ♗d3 ♗e7

8 ♘ge2

This knight development was played here for the first time. Because of White's success in the present game, it became fashionable in the following years. In my opinion it

is neither better nor worse than the usual ♘f3, but if White elects to castle on the queenside, he has to be particularly careful because Black's counter-attack on this wing may easily become more dangerous than his own initiative on the kingside.

8 ... 0-0

In this kind of position ...h6 is generally played before castling in order not to allow White to answer this pawn move by h4. If Black had done this, my answer would have been not 9 ♗h4 but 9 ♗f4.

9 ♘g3 ♘e8

There is hardly another method of emancipation, as 9...♖e8 would have been very strongly met by 10 ♘f5.

10 h4

The natural consequence of the whole opening plan.

10 ... ♘df6
11 ♕c2 ♗e6
12 ♘f5 ♗xf5
13 ♗xf5 ♘d6
14 ♗d3

Of course not 14 ♗xf6 ♘xf5 with equality. This text move forces Black to weaken his king position.

14 ... h6
15 ♗f4

In case of 15 0-0-0 Black would have been able to try a counter-attack starting with 15...b5.

15 ... ♖c8 *(D)*

Black intends, as soon as his opponent castles queenside, to generate activity on the c-file, and thereby overlooks the combinative reply. A more logical course was 15...♖e8 intending ...♘fe4.

16 g4!

This advance, made possible by the fact that 16...♘xg4? 17 ♗xd6 followed by 18 ♗f5 would lose the exchange for Black, considerably strengthens White's position and leaves Black but little choice.

16 ... ♘fe4
17 g5 h5
18 ♗xe4

White decides to accept Black's (forced) pawn sacrifice, although he realises that the ensuing ending will be extremely difficult to win—if it is possible at all, considering the very effective position of the black rook on White's second rank. A promising alternative was 18 ♗xd6 ♘xd6 19 0-0-0 (not 19 g6 immediately, because of 19...♗xh4 with counterplay) 19...♘b5 20 ♔b1 ♘xc3+ 21 ♕xc3 and, in spite of the opposite-coloured bishops, Black would not have found it easy to obtain a draw.

18 ... ♘xe4
19 ♘xe4 dxe4
20 ♕xe4 ♕a5+
21 ♔f1

White cannot risk the variation 21 ♔e2 ♕b5+ 22 ♔f3 ♖fe8.

21 ... ♕d5!

The point of Black's counterplay: after the forced exchange of queens the only open file will become a very important factor in his favour.

22 ♕xd5 cxd5
23 ♔g2 ♖c2
24 ♖hc1

It is obviously of importance to eliminate one pair of rooks. If now 24...♖xb2, White would secure a strong endgame advantage by means of 25 ♖cb1!.

24 ... ♖fc8
25 ♖xc2 ♖xc2
26 ♖b1 ♔h7

Black prepares to take advantage of the fact that the light squares in White's position are insufficiently protected. White's following moves show the only appropriate defence against this plan.

27 ♔g3 ♔g6
28 f3 f6!

And not 28...♔f5? because of 29 e4+. Both sides, so far, are treating the difficult endgame in the correct manner.

29 gxf6 ♗xf6
30 a4

Preparing to relieve the rook from the defence of the queenside pawns.

30 ... ♔f5
31 a5 ♖e2 *(D)*

Black is threatening now (in the event of 32 b4 for instance) 32...g5! 33 hxg5 ♗xg5 34 ♗xg5 ♔xg5 after which 35 f4+ ♔f5 36 ♔f3 ♖h2 37 ♖g1 ♖h3+ 38 ♖g3 ♖xg3+! would only lead to a drawn king and pawn ending.

32 ♖c1

If White wants to play for a win he is compelled to give back (at least temporarily) the extra pawn. But a more efficient and, taking into consideration his two last moves, logical, method of doing it, was 32 a6!. After 32...bxa6 (32...b6 33 ♗b8) the reply 33 ♖a1! would have prevented 33...g5 because of 34 hxg5 ♗xg5 35 e4+!, while after 33...♖xb2 34 ♖xa6 ♖b7 35 ♖a5 White's positional advantage would become decisive. After the move selected, Black will be able to put up a long and not altogether hopeless resistance.

32 ... ♖xb2
33 ♖c5 ♔e6
34 e4 ♗xd4

Here, as on several future occasions in this game, Black could have played differently, but it is doubtful if it would have altered the final result. If, for instance, 34...dxe4, then 35 d5+ ♔f5 36 d6+ ♔e6 37 fxe4 ♖b3+ 38 ♔g2 ♗xh4 39 ♖xh5 followed by 40 ♖h7 and Black's fight against the central passed pawns would prove extremely difficult.

35 ♖xd5 ♗c3

By playing 35...♗f2+ 36 ♔h3 ♖b3 37 ♖e5+ ♔f7 he could temporarily save the pawn, but his position after 38 ♗g5! would still look very compromised[1].

36 ♖xh5 a6

If36...♗e1+ 37 ♔h3 ♖f2 then 38 ♖e5+! followed by 39 ♖f5+, or 39 ♖d5+ and ♖d3, maintaining the plus pawn.

37 ♗c7 ♗e1+

Or 37...♖b5 38 ♖g5!.

38 ♔g4 ♖g2+

39 ♔h3

Of course not 39 ♔f4 ♗d2#!

39 ... ♖f2

40 ♔g4 ♖g2+

41 ♔h3 ♖f2

42 f4! ♖f3+

43 ♔g2

Another method of suicide could have occurred here: 43 ♔g4 ♖g3#.

43 ... ♖f2+

44 ♔h3 ♖f3+

45 ♔g2 ♖f2+

46 ♔g1 *(D)*

B

46 ... ♖c2

47 ♗b6 ♖c4

This facilitates White's task, as it enables his king to give effective support to the central pawns. Better was 47...♗g3 after which White would have tried to win by means of 48 ♖e5+ ♔d6 (48...♔f7 49 h5!) 49 ♖g5.

48 ♔g2!

By this move White at last obtains a clearly won position. It is obvious that after 48...♖xe4? 49 ♔f3 Black would lose immediately.

48 ... g6

49 ♖e5+ ♔d7

50 h5! gxh5

51 ♔f3 h4

51...♖c3+ 52 ♔e2 ♗g3 53 ♗e3 h4 54 ♖h5, would not be any better.

52 ♖h5 ♖c3+

53 ♔g4 ♖c4

54 ♔f5!

Apparently falling into the trap, but in reality selecting the surest and quickest way to make use of the passed pawns.

54 ... ♗xa5

55 ♖h7+

Of course not 55 ♗xa5 ♖c5+ 56 ♔g4? because of the reply 56...♖xh5 followed by 57...h3 winning.

55 ... ♔c6

56 ♗xa5 ♖c5+

57 ♔e6! ♖xa5

58 f5 ♖a3

59 f6 ♖f3

---

1 I find this hard to believe; after 38...b5! Black obtains a passed pawn on the queenside, which should provide enough counterplay to draw.

60 f7 b5
61 ♖h5!

The neat final point of this colourful ending.

61 ... h3
62 ♖f5 ♖xf5
63 exf5 1-0

As if now 63...h2 64 f8♕ h1♕, then 65 ♕a8+ wins.

Game 54
Alekhine – Capablanca
Buenos Aires Wch (34) 1927
Queen's Gambit Declined

1 d4 d5
2 c4 e6
3 ♘c3 ♘f6
4 ♗g5 ♘bd7
5 e3 c6
6 a3

The main object of this quiet move is to avoid the Cambridge Springs Defence, but it should hardly promise White more than a comfortable equality. I selected it here merely in order to leave book variations as rapidly as possible.

6 ... ♗e7
7 ♘f3 0-0
8 ♗d3 dxc4

A sound alternative was 8...h6 9 ♗h4 c5.

9 ♗xc4 ♘d5
10 ♗xe7 ♕xe7

Another possibility was the simplifying 10...♘xc3.

11 ♘e4 ♘5f6
12 ♘g3 c5

12...b6 followed by ...♗b7, as played by Maroczy against me at San Remo in 1930, is worth consideration. The text manoeuvre has the slight drawback of not yet solving the problem of developing the c8-bishop.

13 0-0 ♘b6
14 ♗a2 cxd4
15 ♘xd4 g6

In order to be able to answer e4 by ...e5 without ceding the square f5 to the white knights.

16 ♖c1

Threatening eventually to play ♘b5.

16 ... ♗d7
17 ♕e2 ♖ac8
18 e4 e5 *(D)*

W

19 ♘f3 ♔g7

Black should here exchange both rooks, as after 19...♖xc1 20 ♖xc1 ♖c8 21 ♖xc8+ ♘xc8 the move 22 ♘g5 could have been sufficiently met by 22...♗e8. The text move, and especially the next one, suddenly brings his position into danger.

20 h3 h6?
21 ♕d2!

This harmless-looking move is in reality very hard to meet. White's

main threat is 22 ♕a5, and if Black should try to parry this by 21...♗c6 (or 21...♗b5), then an unexpected diversion on the kingside would lead to a rapid end: 22 ♘h4! ♘xe4 (22...♗xe4 23 ♕e3! or 22...♗d7 23 ♕a5) 23 ♘hf5+ gxf5 24 ♘xf5+ ♔f6 25 ♕xh6+ ♔xf5 26 g4#!

The only move which offers some chance of a successful defence is that suggested by Dr. Lasker, 21...♘a4!. In that case, White would simply strengthen his position—for instance, by means of 22 ♖fd1.

21 ... ♗e6?

The position has proved too difficult for Black; he now loses a pawn and, after a desperate struggle, the game and the match. The following sharp combinations, as well as the subsequent queen and rook ending, are both exciting and instructive.

22 ♗xe6 ♕xe6
23 ♕a5 ♘c4

Or 23...♕b3 24 ♕xe5 ♘c4 25 ♕d4 ±.

24 ♕xa7 ♘xb2
25 ♖xc8 ♖xc8
26 ♕xb7 ♘c4
27 ♕b4 ♖a8
28 ♖a1 ♕c6!

Threatening to blockade the a-pawn by 29...♖a4, and also (at least apparently) to win the e-pawn. But White's next two moves put the situation in a true light.

29 a4! ♘xe4
30 ♘xe5

Thus White avoids the pitfall 30 ♘xe4 ♕xe4 31 ♖c1 ♖c8 32 ♘xe5?! ♘e3! 33 ♕xe4 ♖xc1+ 34 ♔h2 ♘f1+ followed by ...♘g3+ and ...♘xe4, after which Black would even win.

30 ... ♕d6!

In the circumstances comparatively best, as both pairs of knights will soon disappear from the board.

31 ♕xc4 ♕xe5
32 ♖e1 ♘d6
33 ♕c1! ♕f6
34 ♘e4 ♘xe4
35 ♖xe4 *(D)*

B

The winning procedure which follows is a rather elaborate one, and consists of combining threats using the passed pawn with an attack against the somewhat exposed black king. First and foremost, White will succeed in controlling the important diagonal, a1-h8.

35 ... ♖b8
36 ♖e2 ♖a8
37 ♖a2 ♖a5
38 ♕c7! ♕a6

Obviously, the only way to prevent the advance of White's passed pawn.

39 ♕c3+ ♔h7
40 ♖d2

With the deadly threat 41 ♖d8.

40 ... ♕b6
41 ♖d7

The sealed move. Black's next manoeuvres offer the only chance, if not to save the game, at least to permit a longer resistance.

41 ... ♕b1+
42 ♔h2 ♕b8+
43 g3 ♖f5
44 ♕d4

Threatening 45 a5! followed by ♖d8.

44 ... ♕e8
45 ♖d5 ♖f3

The queen ending would be, of course, tantamount to resignation.

46 h4

White does not need to stop the black queen's following manoeuvre, which finally leads to an easily won rook ending.

46 ... ♕h8
47 ♕b6!

At this moment the exchange would be premature, as it would allow Black to bring his rook behind the passed pawn.

47 ... ♕a1
48 ♔g2 ♖f6

If 48...♖a3, then White wins as follows: 49 ♖d7 ♔g8 (49...♔g7 50 ♕e6! or 49...♕a2 50 ♕f6) 50 ♕d8+ ♔g7 51 ♕e7 ♕a2 52 ♕e5+ ♔h7 53 ♕f6.

49 ♕d4

Now the right moment to exchange has come, as it is the white rook that will get behind the passed pawn.

49 ... ♕xd4
50 ♖xd4 ♔g7

Instead 50...♖a6 would have lost immediately after 51 ♔f3 followed by ♔e4-d5.

51 a5 ♖a6
52 ♖d5 ♖f6
53 ♖d4 ♖a6
54 ♖a4 ♔f6
55 ♔f3 ♔e5
56 ♔e3 h5
57 ♔d3 ♔d5
58 ♔c3 ♔c5
59 ♖a2 ♔b5
60 ♔b3

White makes use of every opportunity, by repetition of moves, to gain time with the clock, so as to avoid a slip just before the capture of the title.

60 ... ♔c5
61 ♔c3 ♔b5
62 ♔d4

If now 62...♔b4, then White plays 63 ♖al!.

62 ... ♖d6+
63 ♔e5 ♖e6+
64 ♔f4 ♔a6
65 ♔g5 ♖e5+
66 ♔h6 ♖f5 *(D)*

W

67 f4

The simplest method to force capitulation was 67 ♔g7 ♖f3 68 ♔g8 ♖f6 69 ♔f8! ♖f3 (or 69...♖f5 70 f4) 70 ♔g7 ♖f5 71 f4.

67 ... ♖c5!
68 ♖a3 ♖c7
69 ♔g7 ♖d7
70 f5

Another inexact move. A more direct way was first 70 ♔f6 and only after 70...♖c7, 71 f5 gxf5 72 ♔xf5 ♖c5+ 73 ♔f6 ♖c7 74 ♖f3 ♔xa5 75 ♖f5+ and wins.

70 ... gxf5
71 ♔h6 f4
72 gxf4 ♖d5
73 ♔g7 ♖f5
74 ♖a4 ♔b5
75 ♖e4! ♔a6
76 ♔h6 ♖xa5

Alternatively, 76...♔b7 77 ♖e5 ♖xf4 78 ♔g5! ♖f1 79 ♔xh5 f5 80 ♔g5 f4 81 ♖f5 f3 82 ♔g4 and White wins.

77 ♖e5 ♖a1
78 ♔xh5 ♖g1
79 ♖g5 ♖h1
80 ♖f5 ♔b6
81 ♖xf7 ♔c6
82 ♖e7 1-0

Game 55
Marshall – Alekhine
Exhibition Game, New York 1929
Queen's Indian Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e6
3 ♘f3 ♗b4+
4 ♗d2 ♕e7
5 e3

Here White can obtain control of e4 by playing 5 ♕c2, but in that case Black would select another system: 5...♗xd2+ 6 ♘bxd2 d6 followed by ...e5.

5 ... b6
6 ♗d3 ♗b7
7 ♕c2 ♗xd2+

In order to advance a pawn to the centre and thus indirectly prevent White's e4.

8 ♘bxd2 c5

If now 9 e4, then 9...♘c6 ∓.

9 0-0 ♘c6
10 a3 0-0
11 ♖ad1 g6

Preventing d5, which, especially after White's last rook move, could eventually be disagreeable.

12 ♖fe1

A refined preparation for ♘e4, which at this moment would not be satisfactory because of 12...♘xe4 13 ♗xe4 d5! 14 cxd5 exd5 15 ♗xd5 ♘xd4 ∓.

12 ... ♖ac8
13 ♘e4 ♖fd8 *(D)*

13...♖fe8 was technically simpler since after 14 d5 exd5 White himself would have been obliged to exchange knights. But the move selected is at least good enough to maintain the balance of position.

14 d5

Very bold and quite in Marshall's style; he cedes Black a queenside pawn majority without getting any real compensation elsewhere, since his pieces are not sufficiently co-ordinated to support an effective action in the centre. One must admit,

however, that White's position, owing to the elasticity of Black's pawn-structure, was already slightly inferior. Black threatened—after some further preparation, such as ...d6—to start an action on the c-file by ...cxd4 followed by ...♘a5.

14 ... exd5

15 cxd5! ♘xe4

15...♘xd5 would have had unfortunate consequences, e.g. 16 ♗c4 ♘db4 17 ♕c3! ♕xe4 18 ♗xf7+ ♔f8 19 axb4 ±.

16 ♗xe4 ♘a5

Of course not 16...♘e5 because of 17 d6.

17 ♘d2

Black threatened 17...f5.

17 ... c4!

Profiting by the fact that d5-d6 is still not good. It becomes obvious that the transaction initiated by White's 14th move was rather favourable to his opponent.

18 ♗f3 ♕e5

Threatening 19...c3.

19 ♘e4 d6

Black could also prevent the following rook move by 19...♘b3, after which White would have hardly anything better than 20 ♕c3, but he did not think this was necessary since, owing to his advantage in space, the middlegame complications should normally end to his advantage.

20 ♖d4

It would not be like Marshall to exchange queens by 20 ♕c3 in order to obtain a distinctly inferior endgame. Looking at this rook one cannot believe that, in the prime of its existence, it intends to commit suicide soon—and yet it is so!

20 ... b5

Now threatening to continue with 21...♘b3.

21 ♘d2 ♗a6

In order to leave a square for the knight in case of ♕c3.

22 ♖e4 ♕g7

23 ♖e7

The road to death.

23 ... ♘b7! *(D)*

24 ♘e4

Most probably a difficult decision—but under the circumstances the wisest course, for the alternative 24 ♗g4 ♖c5! (24...c3 25 ♗xc8 cxd2

26 ♖d1 ±) 25 e4[1] ♕f6 26 ♖d7 ♖xd7 27 ♗xd7 ♕e7 (threatening ...♖xd5) 28 ♗c6 ♘a5 would lead to material losses without any hope of a counter-attack.

24 ... ♔f8!

A mistake would be 24...♕f8 25 ♘f6+ ♔g7 because of 26 ♕c3, with advantage for White.

25 ♖xb7 ♗xb7

26 ♖d1

Although Black is now a clear exchange ahead and his queenside majority is as threatening as ever, the win is by no means as easy or as rapid as one would imagine. White is in a position—in case of 26...♕e5, for instance—to build a good defensive position with possibilities of a pawn counter-attack on the kingside by means of 27 ♘c3 a6 28 ♖d4. Still, by that line Black, with further circumspection and patience, would most likely have increased his advantage in a decisive way, without having to suffer from the melodramatic complications arising from his risky next move.

26 ... a5?

Preventing 27 ♘c3 (because of 27...b4) and looking for a quick victory. From now on, Marshall takes advantage of the hidden possibilities of his position in a really remarkable fashion, reminding one of his most glorious performances.

27 ♗g4! ♖c7

Of course not 27...f5 because of 28 ♘g5 but also not, for instance, 27...♖a8, because of 28 a4!.

28 ♕d2!

After this the situation begins to look dangerous for Black, since the a-pawn cannot be defended in a direct way.

28 ... h6!

This is the temporary salvation, for by preventing ♘g5 Black threatens 29...f5.

29 ♗f3 ♖cc8

And after this 30 ♕xa5 can be simply answered by 30...♕xb2.

30 h4!

The next attacking wave, which Black tries to meet in an equally energetic way.

30 ... ♕e5

If instead, 30...f5 then 31 ♘c3 b4 32 axb4 axb4 33 ♘e2 c3 34 bxc3 bxc3 35 ♕c2 followed by the promising manoeuvre ♘d4 (or ♘f4)-e6.

31 h5! gxh5

Also after 31...g5 32 g4 followed by ♘g3-f5, or ♗g2 and f4, Black's defence would remain difficult.

32 ♘g3 c3

33 bxc3 ♕xc3

33...♖xc3 would be met by 34 e4!.

34 ♕e2 b4

35 axb4 axb4

At last Black has succeeded in obtaining the 'winning' passed pawn, but in the meantime the white forces have been concentrating against the

---

1 White has a forced win here by 25 ♗e6! ♖f8 26 ♘e4, so Black should have met 24 ♗g4 by 24...♕f6!, with a roughly equal position.

hostile king, which can be defended only by the queen, the other black pieces being, at the moment, simply onlookers.

36 ♗e4! *(D)*

B

Covering the diagonal b1-h7 and opening prospects to the queen. In this second half of the game Marshall always finds the best moves, and he is somewhat unlucky that Black's resources finally prove sufficient to meet his furious assault.

36 ... ♕e5!

Hereafter begins a very difficult queen manoeuvre, whose object is to provoke white pawn moves so as to enable at least one rook to participate in a counter-attack.

37 f4 ♕f6

Otherwise White plays 38 ♕xh5 with tempo.

38 ♘xh5 ♕h4!

And not 38...♕e7 39 ♕b2! ♕xe4 40 ♕h8+ ♔e7 41 ♕f6+ ♔e8 42 ♕h8+ ♔d7 43 ♘f6+ followed by 44 ♕xd8+ and ♘xe4.

39 g3

The weakening of the second rank will finally prove fatal—but if 39 ♗f3 the response 39...♕e7 would now offer an adequate defence, since 40 ♕b2 is met by 40...♕xe3+.

39 ... ♕h3!

Possible and good because 40 ♗g2 can be met by 40...♗a6!.

40 ♗f3! ♖c3! *(D)*

W

An unexpected defence against White's two main threats (41 ♗g4 and 41 ♕b2) and one that involves, in the first case, an eventual sacrifice of two exchanges: to 41 ♗g4 Black would reply 41...♖xe3! 42 ♕xe3 ♕xg4 43 ♖e1 ♕xh5! 44 ♕e7+ ♔g7 45 ♕xd8 (or 45 ♕xb7 ♕f3 and wins) 45...♕xd5 winning. With his next move the then American Champion plays out a new trump, which, however, will prove the last.

41 ♕d2!

How now to meet the threat 42 ♕d4 without losing the passed pawn? My lucky star—or Marshall's unlucky one—helped me to find the right answer—but it took no less than half an hour.

41 ... ♖e8!

The value of this sealed rejoinder is well illustrated by comparing its

consequences with the possible results of another plausible move: 41...♗a6 42 ♕d4 ♖c2! 43 ♕h8+ ♔e7 44 ♕f6+ ♔d7 (44...♔e8 45 ♘g7+) 45 ♕xf7+ ♔c8 46 ♕e6+ ♕xe6 47 dxe6 b3 48 ♗e4 and, to say the least, White would not lose.

42 ♕d4

Instead 42 ♕b2 would not help either, because of 42...♗a6.

42 ... ♖c2

43 ♖d2

Simplification is nearly always sad for the materially weaker party, but there was no choice, as is shown by the variation 43 ♕h8+ ♔e7 44 ♕f6+ ♔d7 45 ♗g4+! ♕xg4 46 ♕xf7+ ♔d8 47 ♕xe8+ ♔xe8 48 ♘f6+ ♔e7 49 ♘xg4 b3 and wins.

43 ... ♖xd2

44 ♕xd2 ♗a6!

45 ♕e1

Practically resignation. Almost an hour's reflection persuaded Marshall that the intended 45 ♕xb4 leads to a forced loss as follows: 45...♕f1+ 46 ♔h2 ♕f2+! (but not 46...♕xf3 47 ♕xd6+ ♔g8 48 ♘f6+ ♔h8 49 ♕xa6! and Black would not win) 47 ♔h3 (or 47 ♗g2 ♗f1 48 ♕xd6+ ♔g8 49 ♘f6+ ♔h8 and wins) 47...♗c8+ 48 ♗g4 ♗xg4+ 49 ♔xg4 ♕e2+ 50 ♔h4 ♕h2+ 51 ♔g4 f5+! and wins.

45 ... b3

The passed pawn's holiday!

46 ♗d1 b2

47 ♕b4

Leads to a similar finish to that mentioned above.

47 ... ♕f1+

48 ♔h2 ♕f2+

49 ♔h3 ♗c8+

50 f5 ♗xf5+

51 ♗g4 ♗xg4+

52 ♔xg4 ♕e2+

53 ♔h4 ♕h2+

54 ♔g4 f5+

0-1

In this kind of game the loser certainly deserves as much credit as the winner.

Game 56

Alekhine – Steiner

Bradley-Beach 1929

Brilliancy Prize

Queen's Gambit Accepted

1 d4 d5

2 c4 dxc4

3 ♘f3 ♘f6

4 e3 e6

5 ♗xc4 c5

6 0-0 a6

7 ♕e2 ♘bd7

If 7...♘c6, the best answer according to the latest practice (Euwe-Alekhine, 5th match-game, 1937, and Alekhine-Böök, Margate 1938) would still be 8 ♘c3!.

8 ♘c3 ♕c7

If Black did not want to risk the 'fianchetto' development which, in fact, is hardly recommendable, (for instance, 8...b5 9 ♗b3 ♗b7 10 ♖d1 ♗e7 11 e4! b4 12 e5 bxc3 13 exf6 ±, as in the game Alekhine-Letelier, Montevideo 1938), he should simply play 8...♗e7, since the position of the queen on c7, in case of the following d-pawn advance, will prove a very unfortunate one.

9 d5! exd5
10 ♗xd5

One of Black's troubles will consist of the fact that if he exchanges this bishop, White would always recapture with tempo.

10 ... ♗d6
11 e4 0-0
12 ♗g5 ♘g4

In order to develop his queenside pieces, Black is forced to lose time with this knight, and, moreover, facilitate the dangerous advance of White's f-pawn.

13 h3 ♘ge5 *(D)*

W

14 ♘h4!

In view of Black's cramped position the right policy is to avoid exchanges. Besides, Black is now forced to prevent the move ♘f5, and consequently has even less choice than before.

14 ... ♘b6
15 f4 ♘c6
16 f5!

A paradoxical, but most effective, continuation of the attack, by which White 'sacrifices' the central square e5. Instead, the 'natural' advance 16 e5 would have left White—strange as it may seem—with but an insignificant positional advantage after 16...♗e7.

16 ... ♘e5
17 ♕h5 ♖e8

Parrying the threat 18 f6 which now would be met by 18...g6 19 ♕h6 ♗f8.

18 ♖f4 ♗e7

This will be refuted by a pretty combination, but, as Black was still unable to take the powerful bishop (18...♘xd5? loses to 19 ♘xd5 ♕c6 20 ♘f6+ gxf6 21 ♗xf6) there was no longer an adequate defence.

19 f6! *(D)*

B

Because of Black's last move, White is permitted to effect this advance in spite of the possible defence 19...g6 20 ♕h6 ♗f8—and this because of the following combination: 19...g6 20 ♘xg6!! hxg6 (or 20...♘xg6 21 ♗xf7+! ♔xf7 22 ♕xh7+ ♔e6 23 ♕xg6 and wins) 21 ♗xf7+! ♔xf7 22 fxe7+ ♔e6 (or 22...♔g8 23 ♖f8+ ♖xf8 24 exf8♕+ ♔xf8 25 ♕h8+ ♔f7 26 ♕h7+, winning the queen) 23 ♖f6+ ♔xe7 (or

23...♔d7 24 ♖d1+) 24 ♕h7+ ♔d8 25 ♖d6#.

After the following retreat, which permits the opening of the f-file, the game is also practically over.

19 ... ♗f8
20 fxg7 ♗xg7
21 ♖af1 ♗e6
22 ♘f5

Threatening also ♖h4.

22 ... ♗xd5
23 ♘xg7! ♘g6
24 ♘xe8 ♖xe8
25 ♘xd5 1-0

Game 57
Alekhine – Bogoljubow
Wiesbaden Wch (1) 1929
Slav Defence

1 d4 d5
2 c4 c6
3 ♘f3 ♘f6
4 ♘c3 dxc4
5 a4 e6

It has been my peculiar luck that this illogical move, instead of the natural 5...♗f5, has been adopted against me, with a disastrous effect, no less than four times, namely (besides the present game) by Bogoljubow again (Nottingham 1936), by Dr. Euwe (19th match-game, 1935), and by the late German master, Helling, in Dresden 1936.

6 e4 ♗b4
7 e5 ♘d5

In the three other games mentioned the reply was 7...♘e4 which is at least as bad as the text move.

8 ♗d2 ♗xc3

If, instead, 8...b5 then 9 ♘e4 ♗e7 10 b3!, winning back the pawn with decidedly the better position.

9 bxc3 b5
10 ♘g5!

An important move with many objects, one of which, and not the least important, is to prevent Black's 10...0-0, because of the answer 11 ♕b1! followed by 12 axb5 ±.

10 ... f6

Prevents the manoeuvre ♘e4-d6+, but at the cost of seriously compromising Black's central position.

11 exf6 ♘xf6

Or 11...♕xf6 12 axb5 cxb5 13 ♘e4 ♕e7 14 ♗g5, followed by ♕h5+ ±.

12 ♗e2 a6

12...0-0 13 axb5 h6 (if 13...cxb5, then 14 ♗f3 ♘d5 15 ♕b1) 14 b6! ♕xb6 15 ♘f3 would prove positionally hopeless in the long run.

13 ♗f3! *(D)*

B

With the threat 14 axb5, which is by no means easy to parry. If, for instance, 13...♘d5, then 14 ♕b1! g6 15 ♘xh7 ♖xh7 16 ♕xg6+ ♖f7 17 ♗h5 followed by 18 ♕g8+ and wins.

Or 13...♖a7 14 ♗f4 ♖b7 15 axb5 axb5 16 ♖a8[1], also with a winning attack.

13 ... h6

Already mere desperation.

14 ♗h5+ ♘xh5
15 ♕xh5+ ♔d7
16 ♘f7 ♕e8
17 ♕g6 ♖g8
18 ♗f4 ♗b7

Or 18...♖f8 19 ♘e5+ ♔d8 20 ♕e4.

19 ♗g3 ♔e7
20 ♗d6+

A bit of cat-and-mouse play.

20 ... ♔d7
21 0-0 c5
22 dxc5 ♗d5
23 axb5 axb5
24 ♖xa8 ♗xa8
25 ♖a1 ♘c6
26 ♘e5+! 1-0

Since if now 26...♘xe5 27 ♖a7+ ♔c6, then 28 ♕e4#.

Game 58
Alekhine – Bogoljubow
Wiesbaden Wch (5) 1929
Slav Defence

1 d4 d5
2 c4 c6
3 ♘f3 ♘f6
4 ♘c3 dxc4
5 a4 ♗f5
6 ♘e5 e6

A simple and good move, but by making it here (and in the third match game, in which I adopted the less logical answer 7 f3), Bogoljubow, as the following shows, did not fully understand its real value.

7 ♗g5 ♗e7

Decidedly too passive: the right continuation is 7...♗b4 (introduced by me in a consultation game, played against Bogoljubow and Dr. Seitz immediately after the match) 8 f3 h6! (as in my eleventh match game against Dr. Euwe, Groningen 1937) obtaining at least an even game.

8 f3 h6
9 e4!

This move, which, in the position with Black's king's bishop at b4 would have been met by 9...hxg5 10 exf5 b5! 11 fxe6 fxe6 12 ♕c2 0-0! ∓, in the actual position virtually shuts out Black's light-squared bishop for the rest of the game.

9 ... ♗h7

Or 9...hxg5 10 exf5 exf5 11 ♗xc4 0-0 12 h4!, with advantage to White.

10 ♗e3 ♘bd7
11 ♘xc4 0-0
12 ♗e2 c5

The following exchanges are decidedly in White's favour as they do not eliminate the main defect of Black's position—the awkward position of his light-squared bishop.

13 dxc5 ♗xc5

---

1 This allows some sort of defence by 16...♘d5, so 16 ♗xb8 ♖xb8 17 ♗xc6+ ♔f8 (17...♗d7 18 ♘xe6 ♕e7 19 ♗xd7+ ♕xd7 20 0-0 wins) 18 ♕e2 is stronger, with a massive advantage for White.

14 ♗xc5 ♘xc5
15 b4 ♘a6

15...♕xd1+ was also unsatisfactory after 16 ♖xd1 ♘xa4 17 ♘xa4 b5 18 ♘cb6! axb6 19 ♗xb5 with advantage to White.

16 ♕xd8 ♖fxd8 *(D)*

17 ♘a2!

The only way to keep the positional advantage, as 17 b5 would cede the important square c5, and 17 ♖b1 would have permitted Black a promising counter-attack starting by 17...♘d5!.

17 ... ♘b8

White threatened 18 ♘a5 ♖ab8 19 ♘xb7.

18 ♔f2 ♘c6
19 ♖hd1 ♘d4

Instead, 19...♖xd1 20 ♖xd1 ♖d8 would have been rapidly fatal: 21 b5 ♖xd1 22 ♗xd1 ♘d8 23 ♘d6, followed by 24 ♘b4 and 25 ♘c8!.

20 ♖ac1 ♔f8

The first step towards the emancipation of the h7-bishop by means of ...♗g8, ...♘e8, ...f6, etc. But this plan will obviously take a long time, which White will use for a decisive strengthening of his pressure on the queenside. From now on the game develops in a perfectly logical manner.

21 ♗f1 ♘e8
22 ♘c3

A strong alternative here was 22 ♘a5, for instance 22...♖ab8 23 ♘c3 b6 24 ♖xd4! ♖xd4 25 ♘c6 ♖bd8 26 ♔e3 ♖4d6 27 ♘xd8 ♖xd8 28 ♘b5 or 22...b6 23 ♘b7 ♖d7 24 ♗b5! ♖xb7 25 ♖xd4, with a tremendous positional advantage in both cases.

22 ... f6
23 ♘a5 ♖ab8 *(D)*

This natural-looking reply gives White the opportunity for the following combination, which wins a pawn straight away. Better was 23...b6 24 ♘b7 ♖d7 25 ♗b5 ♖xb7 26 ♖xd4 ♖c7 27 ♘e2 ♖xc1 28 ♘xc1 ♖c8 29 ♘d3, with some possibilities of defence in spite of White's indisputable advantage.

24 ♘b5!

Eliminating the enemy's central knight just at the right moment: if Black could have found time for a further consolidation by means of

...e5, there would be very little left of White's pressure on the queenside.

24 ... ♘xb5

Obviously forced.

25 ♖xd8 ♖xd8
26 ♘xb7! ♖b8

Or 26...♖d2+ 27 ♔e3 ♘bd6 28 ♔xd2 ♘xb7 29 ♖c8, followed by 30 ♖a8 and ♖xa7, winning.

27 ♘c5 ♔e7

Because of the threat 28 ♘d7+ the knight was still unable to move. The following endgame, with an extra pawn and a far better position, is actually a walk-over for White.

28 axb5!

Much more effective than 28 ♗xb5 because now Black's a-pawn becomes extremely weak.

28 ... ♘d6
29 ♖a1 ♘c8
30 ♗c4 ♗g8

After 30...e5 White would win immediately by 31 ♗e6.

31 f4 ♗f7
32 e5

All Black's pieces will be gradually stalemated, and the white king will soon be in a position to pay a significant visit to the adversary's knight in its very residence.

32 ... fxe5
33 fxe5 ♖b6
34 ♔e3 ♗e8
35 ♖a3 ♗d7
36 ♔d4 ♗e8

Black has nothing left but to wait patiently for the execution.

37 h4 ♗d7
38 ♗e2 ♖b8
39 ♘xd7 ♔xd7
40 ♗f3!

Preventing the manoeuvre ...♖b7 c7, which would allow Black to prolong the agony.

40 ... ♖b6
41 ♔c5 ♖b8
42 h5 ♔d8
43 ♗c6 ♔e7
44 ♖h3 ♔f7
45 ♗e4 ♔e7
46 ♔c6!

Now the enemy knight must perish.

46 ... ♔d8
47 ♖d3+ ♔e7
48 ♔c7 1-0

Game 59

Bogoljubow – Alekhine

Wiesbaden Wch (8) 1929

Queen's Indian Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 b6

Although this system of development is by no means easy to refute, it can hardly be considered absolutely correct as it allows White at an early stage of the game to get full control of the central squares; and the fact that Black can attack the pawn centre by means of ...c5 should not offer him full compensation for the lack of space he will have to suffer over the next 10-15 moves. Undoubtedly sounder is therefore 2...e6.

3 ♘c3 ♗b7
4 f3 d5
5 cxd5 ♘xd5
6 e4 ♘xc3
7 bxc3

White's position now looks rather promising, but he spoils it in a very few moves by adopting a totally wrong middlegame plan.

7 ... e6
8 ♗b5+

Neither better nor worse than the immediate 8 ♗d3, as Black's ...a6 will not prove weakening to his position.

8 ... ♘d7
9 ♘e2 ♗e7
10 0-0 a6
11 ♗d3 c5
12 ♗b2?

A really bad move which shows an entire misconception of the needs of the position. Instead, White had the choice between at least two good bishop moves—12 ♗e3 and 12 ♗f4. Also 12 a4 (in order to fix Black's slight weakness at b6) came into consideration. From now on Black gradually gets the initiative.

12 ... ♕c7
13 f4

This allows Black to win a couple of tempi by attacking the insufficiently protected central pawns. A lesser evil was 13 e5, temporarily restricting Black's knight.

13 ... ♘f6
14 ♘g3 h5! *(D)*

By his last aimless moves White has provoked an immediate kingside attack.

15 ♕e2 h4
16 ♘h1 ♘h5
17 ♕g4

In spite of his previous indifferent play White probably could still have

held the game if he had recognised his mistake at the 12th move and had returned his bishop to c1. The seemingly more aggressive move that White actually played, in reality relieves Black from the worry about his a-pawn, and thus permits him to castle queenside with an overpowering position.

17 ... 0-0-0
18 ♖ae1

If 18 f5 then 18...♘f6 (19 ♕xg7 ♖h7), followed by 19...e5 with advantage.

18 ... ♔b8
19 f5

This attempt to blockade the centre proves unsuccessful as Black can secure strong diagonals for both his bishops. But the game was already strategically lost.

19 ... e5
20 d5 c4!

Securing the future of the e7-bishop.

21 ♗c2 ♗c5+
22 ♘f2 g6!

And after this the b7-bishop will also develop a deadly activity on the diagonal c8-h3.

23 fxg6 ♖dg8
24 ♗c1

A much too belated sign of remorse!

24 ... ♗c8
25 ♕f3 ♖xg6
26 ♔h1

White is anxious to save his queen (which Black threatened to win by 26...♗g4) and overlooks the following mating combination. However, his position was hopeless anyhow—if, for instance, 26 ♗e3 then 26...♗xe3 27 ♖xe3 ♘f4 28 g3 hxg3 29 hxg3 f5 followed by 30...♕h7 and mate[1].

26 ... ♘g3+!
27 hxg3 hxg3+
28 ♘h3 ♗xh3
29 gxh3 ♖xh3+
30 ♔g2 ♖h2#

Game 60
Bogoljubow – Alekhine
Amsterdam Wch (22) 1929
Ruy Lopez

1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 ♗b5 a6
4 ♗a4 d6
5 c3

The fashionable move here—especially after Keres's win against me in Margate 1937—is 5 c4. But for how long? Black seems to be able to obtain quite a satisfactory position by continuing 5...♗d7 6 ♘c3 ♘f6 7 d4 ♘xd4 8 ♗xd7+ ♕xd7 9 ♘xd4 exd4 10 ♕xd4 ♗e7 and ...0-0.

5 ... ♗d7
6 d4 g6
7 ♗g5

As the following shows, White has no means of exploiting the diagonal b3-g8, and, on the other hand, f7 will prove a suitable square for Black's g8-knight. It looks as though, after 5 c3, White's opening advantage is bound to vanish within a few moves and that, therefore, the usual 5 ♗xc6+ followed by 6 d4 offers him more fighting chances.

7 ... f6
8 ♗e3 ♘h6
9 0-0 ♗g7
10 h3

In order to prevent ...♘g4 in case of ♘bd2.

10 ... ♘f7
11 ♘bd2 0-0
12 dxe5

White rightly recognises that a further maintaining of the tension in the centre would be rather to Black's advantage, and aims at simplification. The problem of the defence has been solved in this game in quite a satisfactory way.

12 ... dxe5

Also 12...fxe5—hoping to exploit the f-file—could be played. White

1 After 30 exf5 ♕h7 31 ♖b1, not only is there no mate, but Black has wrecked his own position. However, Alekhine's assessment can be vindicated by substituting 29...♕c5 30 ♖fe1 ♗h3!, threatening both 31...♗g2 and 31...♘g2.

would in that case probably try to bring a knight to d5 after the moves 13 ♗b3 h6 14 a4 followed by ♘f1, ♗d2, ♘e3, etc. I preferred the text move because of the tempting possibility of quickly attacking White's centre by means of ...f5.

13 ♗c5

In order to provoke ...b6, which slightly weakens Black's queenside pawn structure.

13 ... ♖e8
14 ♗b3 b6
15 ♗e3 ♕e7
16 ♕e2

Or 16 ♗d5 ♖ad8 17 ♕e2 ♘b8, followed by ...♗e6.

16 ... ♘d8 *(D)*

17 ♗d5

Still playing for simplification, which Black cannot well avoid as 17...c6 would lose a pawn after 18 ♗xf7+ followed by 19 ♗xb6.

17 ... ♗c6
18 c4?

But this is certainly not in accordance with the requirements of the position, as the pawn at d5 will become very weak after ...f5. 18 ♗xc6 ♘xc6 19 ♖fd1 was necessary, with only a slight advantage for Black because of the possibility (after due preparation) of ...f5.

18 ... ♗xd5
19 cxd5

Even worse would be 19 exd5 f5.

19 ... f5
20 ♘c4 ♘b7

Black is by no means in a hurry to play ...f4 as the combined threat of this advance and an eventual ...fxe4 will limit White's choice of moves much more than any direct action.

21 ♖ac1 ♖ad8!

Deliberately allowing the following transaction, which only apparently relieves White of his troubles in the centre. Instead, 21...♖ed8 would have left the queen unprotected and thus have allowed the counter-action 22 exf5 gxf5 23 ♗d4! ♖xd5 24 ♖fe1 e4 25 ♗xg7 ♔xg7 26 ♘e3!.

22 d6 ♘bxd6
23 ♘xd6 ♖xd6
24 ♕xa6 ♕d7!

An important intermediate move securing with tempo (the threat ...f4) control of the open file.

25 ♖c2 c5
26 a4 f4! *(D)*

Now the time has come, as the following advance of the g-pawn will be connected with the formidable threat 28...g4 29 hxg4 ♕xg4, with a mating attack.

27 ♗d2 g5
28 ♕b5

Although practically forced, this move actually brings but little help,

as, after the queen exchange proposed here, Black not only obtains a far superior endgame, but also a very rare case—considering the reduced material—of a direct attack against the enemy king.

28 ... ♕xb5
29 axb5 ♖d3!

Freeing the important square d6 for the knight.

30 ♖a1 ♘d6
31 ♖a6 ♖b8

If now 32 ♘xg5, then simply 32...♗f6 33 ♘f3 ♘xe4, with sufficient positional advantage. And if 32 ♖c3, then 32...c4! 33 ♖xd3 cxd3 34 ♖a3 ♘xe4 35 ♖xd3 ♖a8! 36 ♖a3 ♖d8, winning.

32 ♗c3

As useless as the rest.

32 ... ♘xe4
33 ♗xe5 ♗xe5
34 ♘xe5 ♖d1+
35 ♔h2 ♘d2! *(D)*

This sudden stroke, which threatens mate in three by 36...♘f1+, should have won at least the exchange. But Bogoljubow, as so often, prefers suicide to a long agony.

36 h4 ♖e8
37 ♘f3

Or 37 ♘g4 ♖ee1 38 ♔h3 ♖h1+ 39 ♘h2 h5! 40 hxg5 ♘f1 followed by mate.

37 ... ♘xf3+
38 gxf3 ♖ee1
39 ♔h3 h5!
0-1

Game 61
Alekhine – Nimzowitsch
San Remo 1930
French Defence

1 e4 e6
2 d4 d5
3 ♘c3 ♗b4
4 e5 c5
5 ♗d2

This rather tame move, in connection with the following knight manoeuvre, should not cause Black much trouble. A more promising idea—perhaps only because less explored—seems to be 5 ♕g4 or even 5 dxc5.

5 ... ♘e7
6 ♘b5 ♗xd2+
7 ♕xd2 0-0
8 c3 b6

The second player's wish to solve rapidly the problem of the c8-bishop in the French Defence is quite legitimate, but in this particular position the attempt will prove a failure as Black cannot succeed in exchanging that piece against White's f1-bishop. Good—and natural enough—was, instead of this, 8...♘f5! (preventing ♘d6), as played with success by the same Nimzowitsch against Dr. Lasker in Zurich 1934.

9 f4 ♗a6

Trying to force a4 in order to play afterwards ...♘c6-a5. But, as will be seen, the second part of this plan cannot be executed.

10 ♘f3 ♕d7
11 a4 ♘bc6 *(D)*

12 b4!

Strangely enough, this more or less conventional move (by which White prevents ...♘a5 and at the same time clarifies the situation in the centre) created at the time a kind of small sensation; the late Dr. Tarrasch, for instance, called it in his comments 'highly original'. To my mind, more surprising than the move itself is the fact that a player of Nimzowitsch's class, when adopting the plan started by 8...b6, did not take this possibility into serious consideration.

12 ... cxb4

Comparatively better than 12...c4 after which White would not have much technical difficulty in exploiting, in a decisive manner, his advantage in space on the kingside.

13 cxb4 ♗b7
14 ♘d6 f5?

The decisive strategic error in an already compromised situation. In view of the threatened advance of White's a-pawn, the only chance of obtaining some more space lay in 14...a5 15 ♗b5 (better than 15 b5 ♘b4) 15...axb4 16 0-0 after which White's initiative—since he would have to spend some time regaining the b-pawn—would not develop so rapidly. By moving his f-pawn, Nimzowitsch was obviously afraid of an attack against his king, yet that was the one thing he did not have to worry about in the present game!

15 a5!

As 15...bxa5 16 b5! followed by 17 ♖xa5 is obviously bad for Black, this advance secures for the white bishop the important square b5.

15 ... ♘c8

The elimination of the terrible knight at d6—which under other circumstances would signify the beginning of a complete emancipation—does not in fact bring Black any relief.

16 ♘xb7 ♕xb7

17 a6 ♕f7

To his misfortune, 17...♕e7 does not work, because of 18 ♗b5! ♘xb4? 19 ♖b1.

18 ♗b5

From now on Black may play what he likes—he will be unable to protect adequately the squares c6 and c7. The following hopeless tie-up is merely the unavoidable consequence of that organic evil.

18 ... ♘8e7
19 0-0 h6

Although ♘g5 was not yet a threat, it could become one in the near future. Besides, the immediate 19...♖fc8 would not change the situation a bit: Black loses not because of lack of time, but because of lack of space.

20 ♖fc1 ♖fc8
21 ♖c2

If now 21...♘d8, then 22 ♖ac1 ♖xc2 23 ♖xc2 ♖c8 24 ♖xc8 ♘xc8 25 ♕c3 followed by ♕c7, and wins.

21 ... ♕e8
22 ♖ac1

This and the next move are not the most exact ones, as the winning formation with ♕c1, ♖c2 and ♖c3 could have been reached in three moves instead of five by 22 ♖a3! followed by ♖ac3 and ♕c1.

22 ... ♖ab8
23 ♕e3 ♖c7 *(D)*
24 ♖c3!

From now on, White wins in the shortest number of moves.

24 ... ♕d7

In order to give the king the possibility of protecting the rook at c7—a desperate idea in a desperate position!

25 ♖1c2 ♔f8
26 ♕c1 ♖bc8
27 ♗a4!

The last link of the positional attack started by 15 a5. In order to save the piece threatened by 28 b5 Black must sacrifice the b-pawn. After this he succeeds in protecting the important squares with the king, but must still resign as a consequence of complete zugzwang. An instructive finish!

27 ... b5
28 ♗xb5 ♔e8
29 ♗a4 ♔d8
30 h4! 1-0

After a couple of irrelevant pawn moves Black will be obliged to play ...♕e8, after which b5 wins immediately.

Game 62
Alekhine – Maroczy
San Remo 1930
Queen's Gambit Declined

1 d4 d5
2 c4 e6

3 ♘c3 ♘f6
4 ♗g5 ♗e7
5 e3 ♘bd7
6 ♘f3 0-0
7 ♖c1 c6

Recent praxis seems to show that the intermediate move 7...h6 gives Black more chances of solving the problem of the centre than this old-fashioned, so-called 'Capablanca's freeing manoeuvre' (although it had already been played, for instance, by Mason at Hanover 1902).

8 ♗d3 dxc4
9 ♗xc4 ♘d5
10 ♗xe7 ♕xe7
11 ♘e4 b6

An attempt to solve the problem of the c8-bishop immediately. Although it is rewarded in the present game by a partial success (at least in the opening stage), it can hardly be recommended, as White could play the following moves more energetically. Instead, Dr. Lasker's idea 11...♘5f6 12 ♘g3 e5! (see Game 86) seems to be sufficient for equality.

12 0-0 ♗b7
13 ♘g3 c5
14 e4 *(D)*

14 ♗b5 was an interesting alternative, in order to answer 14...cxd4? by 15 e4! followed by ♖c7. In that case Black would face the usual problems caused by an insufficiently prepared advance of the c-pawn.

B

14 ... ♘5f6
15 ♖e1

White's previous move would have found its logical justification if he had continued here with 15 d5, for instance 15...exd5 16 exd5 ♕d6 17 ♘f5 ♕f4 18 ♘e7+ ♔h8 19 ♗b5!, after which the d-pawn would remain an important factor in White's favour. By the selected quiet continuation (due chiefly to the fact that having started the tournament with five straight wins I did not want, in the sixth round, to take any chances), White still keeps a slight positional advantage—but against an endgame specialist like Maroczy, White's winning prospects become rather problematical.

15 ... cxd4
16 ♗b5!

If instead 16 e5 then 16...♘g4! 17 ♕xd4 ♗xf3 18 gxf3 ♘gxe5! 19 ♖xe5 ♘xe5 20 ♕xe5 ♖ac8, to Black's advantage[1].

1 At the end of this line White can force immediate resignation by 21 ♘h5 f6 22 ♕xe6+, so Black should prefer 20...♖fc8 21 ♘h5 ♕f8, intending to continue 22...♖c5, although after 22 b4, followed by ♔h1 and ♖g1, one cannot talk about an advantage for Black.

16 ... ♖fc8
17 ♕xd4 ♖c5
18 ♗xd7 ♘xd7
19 b4 ♖xc1
20 ♖xc1 ♖c8
21 ♖xc8+ ♗xc8
22 ♕c3

The position is not quite as dead a draw as one might think at first glance. Here, for instance, Black will have to lose time in order to parry White's threats on the c-file.

22 ... ♕d8
23 ♘d4 ♗b7
24 f3

One of White's advantages is that Black's bishop, owing to the general pawn structure, has but very poor prospects.

24 ... ♘f6

In order to oppose the queen at c7—doubtless the correct scheme.

25 ♘f1

This knight obviously had nothing more to do at g3.

25 ... ♘e8 *(D)*

W

26 ♘e3 a6

Maroczy seems not to be in a mood to play the purely passive endgame which he could obtain by the otherwise logical 26...♕c7 27 ♕xc7 ♘xc7 28 ♘c4 ♘e8!. White's advantage in space in this variation would be evident, but as the direct threat 29 ♘b5 could be parried by 29...♗a6, the draw would still be probable. After the move played, Black on the other hand will hardly be able to offer the exchange of queens because of the weakness at b6.

27 a4!

The intended a4-a5 will fulfil a double object: to fix Black's weakness at a6, and secure the strong c5-square for a knight.

27 ... h6
28 h3

Not in order to give White's king a loophole, which is unnecessary in this position, but simply planning to move the king, eventually, to the centre, and therefore putting the h-pawn on a protected square.

28 ... h5?

Black's 26th move, although not very logical (avoiding the exchange of queens and creating a weakness on the queenside), was hardly sufficient to compromise the situation seriously. But this peculiar pawn move—the significance of which will not be explained by Black's further play—procures White unmistakable winning chances by creating a new (although, one must admit, for the moment hardly perceptible) weak spot at g5.

29 a5 bxa5
30 bxa5 ♕d6
31 ♘b3 ♗c6

The desire to bring the bishop on to a more active square (b5) is reasonable, but White seizes at once the opportunity to advance his central pawns, and thus limit the action of the hostile knight.

32 e5! ♕c7
33 ♘c5 ♗b5
34 f4

The slight weakening of the light squares occasioned by this advance does not matter any longer, as the bishop is already tied down to the a-pawn.

34 ... ♕d8
35 f5

The only winning possibility for White consists of combining the pressure on the queenside with direct threats against the black king.

35 ... exf5
36 ♘xf5 ♕g5
37 ♘d4!

An important tactical detail (if 37...♕xe5, then 38 ♘xb5).

37 ... ♘c7
38 ♘f3

From now on Black will realise that he erred by playing ...h5.

38 ... ♕f4
39 ♔f2

Thus showing that he is already willing to exchange queens. As a matter of fact the endgame arising after 39...♘d5 40 ♕d4 ♕xd4+ 41 ♘xd4 ♗c4 42 ♘f5! followed by ♘d6, would be extremely critical, if not hopeless, for Black.

39 ... ♕f5 *(D)*

40 ♕d2 ♔h7

Instead, 40...♘e6 41 ♘b7! followed by ♘d6 ± would have enabled him to resist longer. The following winning procedure is instructive[1].

41 ♘e4!

If now 41...♘e8 then 42 ♘g3 ♕g6 43 ♕d8, with gradual strangulation. Black prefers, therefore, to

1 In my opinion, Alekhine's comments throughout this game show a breathtaking lack of objectivity. Up to this moment I cannot see that Black has made any error, and indeed after 40...♘e6 41 ♘b7 ♕b1 42 ♘d6 ♕f1+ 43 ♔g3 ♗c6 White would be slightly worse due to two factors; firstly, that he has two weak pawns (on a5 and e5) while Black only has one (on a6), and secondly that his king is more exposed than Black's. It seems very likely that Maroczy, who was a great endgame specialist, spurned the earlier straightforward draws because he was (justifiably) playing for the win. The move played, 40...♔h7, is simply a serious tactical error, which not only allows the knight to reach d6 with gain of tempo, but also ensures that the f7-pawn is undefended when it does arrive.

sacrifice a pawn in order to get rid of at least one of the tedious knights.

41 ... ♘e6
42 ♘d6 ♕b1

If 42...♕g6 White wins by 43 ♘xb5 axb5 44 a6 since 44...♘c5 does not work because of 45 ♘g5+ ♕xg5 46 ♕xg5 ♘e4+ 47 ♔e3 ♘xg5 48 a7.

43 ♘xf7 ♗c6
44 ♘7g5+ ♘xg5
45 ♘xg5+ ♔g6
46 h4

Thus White has taken the maximum of advantage from the weakness of g5!

46 ... ♔f5

The threat was 47 ♕d6+ ♔f5 48 ♕e6+ ♔f4 49 g3#.

47 e6 ♕b5
48 ♕c2+

The object of the following checks is to prevent with tempo Black's ...♕c5+ and thus make possible the further advance of the passed pawn.

48 ... ♔e5
49 ♕c3+ ♔d6
50 ♕g3+ ♔d5
51 ♕f3+ ♔e5
52 ♕e3+ ♔f6

Or 52...♔d6 53 ♕f4+!.

53 ♕c3+ ♔g6
54 e7 ♕f5+
55 ♔e3

The king is here—for once—even safer than on the wing (55 ♔g1 ♕b1+).

55 ... ♗e8
56 ♕d4 ♗b5
57 ♕d6+ ♕f6
58 ♘e4! 1-0

Game 63
Alekhine – Tartakower
San Remo 1930
Dutch Defence

1 d4 e6
2 c4 f5
3 g3 ♘f6
4 ♗g2 ♗b4+
5 ♘d2 ♘e4

Black is aiming to exchange the pieces he has just developed—a doubtful strategy, to say the least. More in the spirit of the opening chosen would be 5...0-0 6 a3 ♗e7.

6 a3 ♘xd2
7 ♗xd2 ♗xd2+
8 ♕xd2 0-0
9 ♘h3

Chiefly in order to ensure control of d5 in case Black selects the development ...d6 and ...e5.

9 ... d5

After this the dark squares in Black's position may sooner or later become very weak; and White, in order to exploit that weakness, decides to liquidate the central pawns as rapidly as possible. Although it was very difficult to foresee at this moment that Black, after the transaction projected, would have adequate defence against the many threats, a slower policy—such as 10 ♖c1 (instead of 10 cxd5) 10...c6 11 0-0 ♕e7 12 ♕e3! followed by ♘f4—would have been more appropriate in order to take advantage of Black's manoeuvre of the 5th-7th moves.

10 cxd5 exd5
11 ♘f4 c6

12 0-0 ♕e7 *(D)*

13 b4!

The real object of this move—besides a 'minority' attack which, by means of a4 and b5, was also quite possible—is to open the queen's way to a2. The following will prove the importance of that diversion.

13 ... a6
14 f3

All in accordance with the plan inaugurated by his 10th move. But Black, by keeping a cool head, succeeds in emerging from the skirmish without much damage.

14 ... ♘d7
15 e4 fxe4
16 fxe4 dxe4
17 ♕a2+

Sadly enough, the tempting move 17 ♗xe4 does not work—for instance, 17...♕xe4 18 ♖ae1 ♕f5 19 ♕a2+ (19 ♘e6 ♕g6 20 ♘xf8 ♘xf8 ∓) 19...♖f7! 20 ♖e8+ (or 20 ♖e7) 20...♘f8—and Black escapes.

17 ... ♔h8
18 ♘e6

Unconvincing is 18 ♕e6 ♖e8!.

18 ... ♖xf1+
19 ♖xf1 ♘f6
20 ♘g5 h6
21 ♕f7!

This strong move, which forces the exchange of queens because of the threat 22 ♖xf6!, had to be foreseen when the central action was started, otherwise Black would have even obtained the better game.

21 ... ♕xf7
22 ♘xf7+ ♔h7
23 ♘d6 *(D)*

This menacing knight position secures White the recapture of the sacrificed pawn, but on the other hand, Black should, in the meantime, find the opportunity to finish his development and obtain equality.

23 ... ♗e6?

Obviously over-estimating the value of the central pawn. The right way was 23...a5! 24 ♘xe4 (if 24 b5 then simply 24...cxb5) 24...axb4 25 ♘xf6+ (25 axb4 ♘d5) 25...gxf6 26 axb4 ♔g7 with a probable draw.

24 ♘xb7 ♗d5
25 ♖e1!

Otherwise Black, in many cases, could play ...e3.

25 ... ♖a7
26 ♘c5 a5

Giving White a passed pawn; but the rook, naturally, cannot always remain tied down to the a-pawn.

27 bxa5 ♖xa5
28 a4 ♖a8

With the object of occupying the b-file, or (as actually happens) of diminishing somewhat White's pressure against the e-pawn.

29 ♖a1 ♖a5
30 ♖a3!

Still with the object of preventing ...e3.

30 ... ♔g6

Black hopes to have just time to execute the important manoeuvre ...♘e8-d6, but is prevented from this by what Dr. Tartakower himself calls 'the combinative wonder'.

31 h3 ♔f5
32 ♔f2 ♘e8 *(D)*

Everything runs according to the preconceived plan. Instead, 32...h5 would have prevented the following surprise, but after 33 ♔e3 the tying down of all Black's pieces would in any case have led to material loss.

W

33 ♗xe4+!

At first sight, having in view the (very poor) transaction 33...♗xe4 34 ♘xe4 ♔xe4 35 ♖e3+ ♔xd4 36 ♖xe8 ♖xa4, but in reality forcing a technically rather easily won rook endgame with an extra pawn.

33 ... ♗xe4
34 g4+

The simple but very unkind point: 34...♔f4 35 ♘e6#!

34 ... ♔f6
35 ♘xe4+ ♔e6
36 ♔e3 ♘d6
37 ♔d3 ♘xe4
38 ♔xe4 h5

Black realises that 'quiet' play would leave him without any drawing chances—for instance, 38...♔d6 39 ♔d3 ♔d5 40 ♖a1 c5 41 dxc5 ♔xc5 42 ♔c3 would be similar to my last match game with Capablanca. Therefore he tries to create attacking objects on the kingside but only hastens the end by accepting the following pawn sacrifice.

39 g5! ♖xg5

After 39...♔d6 40 h4 his situation would he even worse than before.

40 a5 ♖b5
41 a6 ♖b8
42 a7 ♖a8
43 h4! g5
44 hxg5 h4
45 ♖a6 ♔f7
46 ♔f4 h3
47 ♔g3 ♔g6
48 d5! ♔xg5
49 dxc6 ♔f5
50 c7 1-0

Game 64
Ahues – Alekhine
San Remo 1930
Queen's Indian Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 ♘f3 b6
3 e3 ♗b7
4 ♘bd2

This system of development has been favoured by Rubinstein and the late Belgian Champion, Colle. It is not particularly aggressive, but is not without sting—especially if White succeeds in quickly opening a suitable diagonal for his dark-squared bishop.

4 ... c5
5 ♗d3 e6
6 c3 ♗e7
7 ♕e2

White is over-cautious. More in the spirit of the variation selected would have been 7 e4, only playing 8 ♕e2 in reply to 7...d6; after the move played Black succeeds in preventing the advance of the e-pawn by the following original answer.

7 ... ♘d5!

With by no means hidden intentions: if 8 e4, then 8...♘f4; if 8 c4, then 8...♘b4.

8 dxc5

With this exchange White starts an elaborate manoeuvre, the ultimate object of which is to bring the dark-squared bishop on to the diagonal a1-h8. As a matter of fact there is hardly a more promising line to be recommended for him.

8 ... bxc5

9 ♘f1

He does not play this knight to c4 as he intends to dislodge Black's central knight by c3-c4.

9 ... ♕c7
10 ♘g3 ♘c6
11 ♗d2 g5! *(D)*

W

A bold idea, connected in one variation with the offer of a pawn and based on the following general considerations: Black possesses on the kingside an elastic pawn mass, not obstructed by his own pieces; the natural thing for him to do is therefore to try to gain space by gradually advancing these pawns. But which pawn shall he start with? The move 11...h5 would be met by 12 h4! stopping any further action on that side; on the other hand 11...f5 would also have been premature as it would allow White to open the position by 12 e4 fxe4 13 ♕xe4!. There remains the text move, which, by the way, is more effective than the preparatory 11...0-0-0, permitting White to answer 12 a3! followed by c4.

12 c4 ♘db4
13 ♗c3

One must admit that White plays at least logically—the diagonal a1-h8 is for the time being his only counter-chance.

13 ... ♘xd3+
14 ♕xd3 ♘b4
15 ♕e2

The main variation considered by Black when playing 11...g5 was 15 ♕b1 f6 16 ♘xg5 (or 16 a3 ♘c6 17 ♘xg5 ♘e5! ∓) 16...♗xg2 17 ♖g1 ♗b7 18 ♘xh7 0-0-0!, with more than sufficient positional compensation for the material sacrificed.

15 ... ♖g8
16 a3 ♘c6
17 ♘d2 ♘e5
18 ♕h5

White, obviously dissatisfied with his position, is looking for complications. Of course Black's chances would also have remained superior (chiefly because of the possibilities offered by the pair of bishops) after the quiet 18 f3.

18 ... 0-0-0

Even more forcible would have been 18...♗xg2 19 ♖g1 ♗c6 20 ♕xh7 0-0-0 ∓. After the text move White decides to renounce—at the cost of two tempi!—making that compromising transaction.

19 0-0 f5

Threatening 20...g4.

20 ♕e2 h5!

No reason to give the opponent even one moment's relief!

21 ♘xh5

White is forced to take this pawn, as otherwise its advance would be too painful.

21 ... ♖g6

Threatening 22...♖h6 followed by ...♖dh8, with deadly effect.

22 f4

The exchange thus proposed will bring the knight into an excellent defensive position—but, unfortunately for White, only for a very short time. However, as White did not have even a shade of counterplay, his king was in the long run indefensible anyhow.

22 ... gxf4
23 ♘xf4 ♖h6
24 h3 ♖g8

With the strong threat 25...♘g6.

25 ♗xe5 ♕xe5
26 ♘f3 ♕g7 *(D)*

W

27 ♖ad1

After this Black wins the pawn back and at the same time demolishes the last fortifications protecting the enemy king. But also the protection of the h-pawn by means of 27 ♔h1 would have led to an untenable position after 27...♗d6 28 ♕f2 ♕g4! (threatening 29...♗xf4 30 exf4 ♖xh3+!) 29 ♔g1 ♖xh3! 30 ♘xh3 ♕xh3.

27 ... e5!

28 ♘d5 ♖xh3
29 ♕d2 ♗xd5
30 cxd5 e4
31 d6 exf3
32 ♖xf3 ♖xf3
33 dxe7 ♕xe7
0-1

Game 65
Alekhine – Kmoch
San Remo 1930
Nimzo-Indian Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e6
3 ♘c3 ♗b4
4 ♗d2

One of the most harmless answers to Black's 3rd move. The present game shows that Black, by making even the simplest moves, can obtain a middlegame with even prospects.

4 ... 0-0
5 e3 d5
6 ♘f3 c5
7 a3

Again a passive move. In playing the opening of this game I was decidedly not in my happiest mood! First 7 ♕c2, and only after 7...♘c6 8 a3 ♗xc3 9 ♗xc3, leads to a more colourful position.

7 ... ♗xc3
8 ♗xc3 ♘e4

Perfectly logical as further simplification can only be in the second player's favour.

9 ♖c1

Even now 9 ♕c2 was more promising.

9 ... ♘xc3
10 ♖xc3 cxd4
11 exd4 ♘c6!

Black does not hurry to play 11...dxc4 since after 12 c5 he would be able to start a successful battle in the centre by answering 12...e5!.

12 ♗e2 dxc4
13 ♗xc4 *(D)*

It is not difficult to see that the opening play has concluded rather in Black's favour, as White's isolated pawn is decidedly not an ornament to his position and, on the other hand, the advantage in space which he still possesses has for the moment not much importance, because of the absence of vulnerable spots in the enemy position. White's only chance, therefore, is to try to create a kingside attack—and the reader will see how difficult this task proved to be against the author of *Die Kunst der Verteidigung*.

13 ... ♕f6
14 0-0 ♖d8
15 ♖d3 ♗d7
16 ♖e1

In spite of his scarcely brilliant prospects White still decides to play

for a win, and therefore does not try to exchange the isolated pawn. Otherwise he would have played here 16 ♕d2, preparing d5, which was not good immediately because of the answer 16...♘a5!.

16 ... ♗e8
17 ♕d2 ♘e7

Now Black also becomes ambitious and prevents for a while d5.

18 ♘g5! ♘d5

But not 18...♘f5 due to 19 ♘xe6! fxe6 20 ♖xe6 winning.

19 ♖f3 ♕e7
20 ♖g3

White is anxious to provoke a weakening pawn move on Black's kingside, and therefore protects the knight in order to be able to play ♕d3.

20 ... h6
21 ♘f3

It was difficult to decide which knight retreat was best. I finally rejected 21 ♘e4 because of the possible reply 21...♕h4. However, White would also have kept fairly good attacking chances in that case after 22 h3! ♕f4 23 ♕e2.

21 ... ♕f6
22 ♖e4

Defending d4 and f4, and intending to eventually threaten ♖eg4. But Black's following knight manoeuvre again protects everything.

22 ... ♘e7
23 ♘e5 ♘f5
24 ♖d3

24 ♖f3 would have been a mistake owing to 24...♗c6 25 ♘xc6 bxc6 ∓.

24 ... ♖ac8

25 h3! *(D)*

B

White profits from the fact that the opponent does not threaten anything of importance to secure an escape for his king. The following part of the game will clearly show the significance of this quiet preparatory move.

25 ... ♘d6?

Seizing the first opportunity for a further simplification which, however, will this time prove perfectly welcome to White. As a matter of fact the knight was at this stage too important a defensive piece to be eliminated. Instead, 25...♗c6! offered—temporarily at least—a quite sufficient defence; for instance, 26 ♘xc6 bxc6 (not 26...♖xc6 because of 27 d5!) or 26 ♖e1 ♗d5.

26 ♖f4 ♘xc4
27 ♘xc4 ♕g5

This move has been generally criticised as time-wasting, but also after 27...♕e7 28 ♘e5 White would obtain the better fighting chances. If in that case 28...f6, then 29 ♘g4 threatening eventually sacrifices at f6 or h6. Speaking in general, the

black king is from now on quite insufficiently protected.

28 ♖g3 ♕d5
29 ♘e3 ♕c6

An exchange of queens would, of course, be paradise for Black!

30 ♔h2

This is the pleasant consequence of White's 25th move.

30 ... ♕c1

Black hopes for 31 ♕a5 ♕c7, but White selects the right square for his queen.

31 ♕b4! ♕c7 *(D)*

32 d5!

Such an effective advance of the would-be weakling must have delighted the greatest friend of the isolated d-pawn, the late Dr. Tarrasch! It is obvious enough that in case of ...exd5 (here or on the next move) the answer ♕d4 would have led to a rapid debacle for Black. But also by the defence selected he will have to give up at least the exchange.

32 ... a5
33 ♕e4

Of course not 33 ♕d4 e5.

33 ... ♖d6!
34 ♕e5 g6
35 ♕h5!

Instead the tempting move 35 ♖c4 wouldhave led to nothing after the reply 35...♖c6! and also 35 ♘g4 would have brought, after 35...exd5, only the exchange for a pawn[1].

35 ... ♖xd5

Instead of resigning. I should have preferred 35...♔h7 36 ♘g4!! gxh5 37 ♘f6+ followed by mate.

36 ♘xd5 exd5
37 ♕xh6 1-0

Game 66
Ståhlberg – Alekhine
Hamburg tt 1930
Brilliancy Prize
Nimzo-Indian Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e6
3 ♘c3 ♗b4
4 ♕b3 c5
5 dxc5 ♘c6
6 ♘f3 ♘e4
7 ♗d2 ♘xc5

This move became fashionable after the game Bogoljubow-Nimzowitsch in the San Remo Tournament, brilliantly won by Black. It is doubtless more logical than the former 7...♘xd2 8 ♘xd2 after which

1 Actually 35 ♘g4 wins as well, since 35...exd5 36 ♘xh6+ ♔f8 37 ♖c3 ♖c6 38 ♕h8+ ♔e7 39 ♘g8+ ♔d8 40 ♕h4+ f6 41 ♖xc6 is devastating.

White, by castling queenside, will soon obtain strong pressure on the d-file.

8 ♕c2 f5
9 a3

Thus White obtains—at least temporarily—the pair of bishops. Oddly enough, Bogoljubow, in the above-mentioned game, delayed this move until it actually became a mistake and by making it at that moment gave his opponent the game out of hand! It came about this way: 9 e3 0-0 10 ♗e2 b6 11 0-0-0 a5! 12 a3 a4!! ∓.

9 ... ♗xc3
10 ♗xc3 0-0
11 b4 ♘e4
12 e3 b6
13 ♗d3

He could play also 13 ♗b2 but would not have obtained any real advantage, for instance 13...♗b7 14 ♗d3 ♕e7! and then 15 ♗xe4 fxe4 16 ♕xe4 would be to Black's advantage after 16...♘xb4 17 ♕xb7 ♘d3+.

13 ... ♘xc3
14 ♕xc3 ♗b7
15 0-0 ♘e7

It certainly looks risky to leave the central dark squares without adequate defence, but I judged that something had to be done in order to prevent White increasing his pressure in the centre by means of c5.

16 ♗e2

Threatening to bring a rook and the queen on the open d-file with unpleasant consequences for Black.

16 ... ♕e8
17 ♖fd1 ♖d8 *(D)*

Not yet 17...f4 because of 18 exf4 ♖xf4 19 ♕d2.

W

18 a4

The serious defect of this otherwise strategically justified advance is that it takes decidedly too much time and thus permits Black to build up an instructive attack. Therefore, 18 ♕e5 with the strong threat 19 ♕c7 was undoubtedly better. The game would have continued in that case 18...f4! 19 ♕c7! (not 19 exf4 ♘g6 20 ♕c7 ♘xf4 ∓) 19...♗xf3 20 ♗xf3 fxe3 21 fxe3 ♘f5 and Black has the double threat of 22...♘xe3 and 22...♘h4. In this line, although White would not find time to exploit the weakness of Black's queenside, he would still have been perfectly able to protect his king—and this was for the moment the most important problem!

18 ... f4!

From now on until the end, all Black's moves are very precisely timed. It is hardly possible to replace any one of them by a better one.

19 a5 fxe3
20 ♕xe3 ♘f5

21 ♕c3 d6!

A simple but very effective defence against White's ♖a7.

22 axb6 axb6

23 ♘e1

If23 ♖a7 then 23...♖d7 threatening to win a piece by 24...♗xf3.

23 ... e5

Securing the square d4 for the knight. As may be noticed, the weakness of the dark squares has been, without apparent effort, transformed into strength.

24 ♖a7

Hoping to complicate matters after 24...♖d7 25 c5 with the threat 26 ♗b5. But Black has at his disposal an important intermediate move.

24 ... ♘d4!

25 ♕e3 ♖d7

Threatening 26...♗f3.

26 ♖a2 ♖df7

27 f3

One would suppose that this pawn, besides being protected by its neighbour, and easily supported by three of four pieces, cannot possibly form a welcome object for Black's attack. And yet White's f3-pawn will be captured, almost inevitably. It was certainly the unusual nature of Black's winning stratagem which induced the judges to award to this game the brilliancy prize.

27 ... ♖f4

28 ♗d3 ♕h5

Threatening 29...e4!.

29 ♗f1 ♕g5!

With the main threat 30...♖xf3! forcing the win of the queen. White's answer is forced.

30 ♖f2 h6! *(D)*

W

A move terrible in its simplicity. Black threatens 31...♖xf3! 32 ♕xg5 ♖xf2, and in case of 31 ♕d2 (comparatively the best) he would have played 31...♗xf3 32 ♘xf3 ♘xf3+ 33 ♖xf3 ♖xf3 34 ♕xg5 ♖xf1+ 35 ♖xf1 ♖xf1+ 36 ♔xf1 hxg5 37 ♔e2 ♔f7 38 ♔f3 ♔e6 39 ♔e4 b5!, with a won pawn endgame. White's next move practically does not change anything.

31 ♔h1 ♖xf3!

With the same point as mentioned above.

0-1

Game 67

Alekhine – Andersen

Prague tt 1931

Queen's Indian Defence

1 d4 ♘f6

2 c4 b6

I have tried this fianchetto development (before ...e6) on several occasions at the beginning of my professional career in the early twenties and also with success in a

1929 match-game against Bogoljubow (see game 59). Its main disadvantage is that it allows White considerable freedom in the centre; its merit lies in forcing the opponent to select a definite opening plan possibly earlier than he would like to.

3 ♘c3 ♗b7
4 ♕c2

For 4 f3 see the above-mentioned game.

4 ... e6?

But this is not in accordance with 2...b6. The only logical continuation is 4...d5 5 cxd5 ♘xd5 6 ♘f3 (in case of 6 e4 Black can play 6...♘xc3 7 bxc3 e5) 6...e6 7 e4 ♘xc3 8 bxc3 ♗e7 followed by ...♘d7 and eventually ...c5, with fighting chances.

5 e4 ♗b4
6 f3!

Avoiding the doubling of pawns on the c-file. Black has now not the slightest compensation for White's predominance in the centre.

6 ... 0-0
7 ♗d3

Threatening 8 e5.

7 ... h6
8 ♘e2 d5

Something had to be undertaken in order to increase the activity of Black's minor pieces—and the plan selected is probably no worse than any other; at least Black will now have, for a short time, the illusion of a 'counter-attack' starting by ...c5.

9 cxd5 exd5
10 e5 ♘fd7
11 0-0 c5

If instead 11...♗e7 then 12 ♘f4 ±.

12 a3 ♗xc3

After 12...♗a5 the pawn sacrifice 13 b4! cxb4 14 ♘b5 would leave Black in a hopeless position.

13 bxc3 ♘c6
14 ♗e3 *(D)*

Also the combination with 14 e6, followed by ♘f4, was sufficient; but the simple concentration of the forces, keeping the central pawn structure intact, brings a more rapid decision.

B

14 ... cxd4
15 cxd4 ♖c8
16 ♕d2!

As Black's answer was obvious, this move must be considered as the beginning of the final combination. Another, purely positional, and much slower, method of keeping some advantage was 16 ♕b1 ♘a5 17 f4 ♘c4 18 ♗c1.

16 ... ♘a5

Intending, if nothing special occurs, to force the exchange of one of White's bishops by 17...♘c4.

17 ♗xh6!

Of course the offer cannot be accepted: this is by far the easiest part

of the combination. But the complications issuing from the best defence, actually selected by Black, demanded a thorough examination.

17 ... ♘b3
18 ♕f4 ♖c6!

If instead 18...♘xa1 then 19 ♕g3 g6 20 ♗xg6 ♔h8 21 ♗f5 ♖g8 22 ♕h3 and wins.

19 ♗g5 f6

White was also threatening 20 ♕h4.

20 exf6 ♘xa1

His last chance, which will he annihilated by the following intermediate check.

21 ♗h7+! ♔h8

The alternative was 21...♔xh7 22 ♕h4+ ♔g6 (22...♔g8 23 f7+) 23 ♘f4+ ♔f5 24 g4#.

22 ♕h4! ♘xf6
23 ♘f4 1-0

As if now 23...g6, then 24 ♕h6! with a debacle.

Game 68
Alekhine – Nimzowitsch
Bled 1931
French Defence

1 e4 e6
2 d4 d5
3 ♘c3 ♗b4
4 ♘e2

This move, which is quite satisfactory in the MacCutcheon Variation (1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 ♘f6 4 ♗g5 ♗b4 5 ♘e2), is perfectly harmless at this moment. I selected it, however, in the present game since I knew that on a previous occasion (against Sir G. Thomas at Marienbad 1925) Nimzowitsch had shown an exaggerated voracity (6...f5) without having been duly punished for it.

4 ... dxe4
5 a3 ♗xc3+

Also 5...♗e7 is good enough for equality.

6 ♘xc3 f5

Played against all the principles of a sound opening strategy, as the dark squares in Black's position will become very weak, especially because of the exchange of his king's bishop. The correct reply, which secures Black at least an even game, is 6...♘c6! and if 7 ♗b5 then 7...♘e7 followed by ...0-0.

7 f3

The sacrifice of the second pawn is tempting, most probably correct—but unnecessary, as White could obtain an excellent game without taking any chances, by playing first 7 ♗f4 and if 7...♘f6 then 8 f3 exf3 9 ♕xf3 after which 9...♕xd4 would be refuted by 10 ♘b5.

7 ... exf3
8 ♕xf3 ♕xd4

Contrary to the opinion of the theorists, this move is as good—or as bad—as 8...♕h4+ 9 g3 ♕xd4: in that case White would play 10 ♘b5 and Black would not have had, as he did in the actual game, the defence 10...♕h4+ 11 g3 ♕e7.

9 ♕g3!

A by no means obvious continuation of the attack. White's main threats are 10 ♘b5 (10...♕e4+ 11 ♗e2) and 10 ♗f4 (or e3).

9 ... ♘f6

This bold move is comparatively Black's best chance. 9...♘e7 would be insufficient because of 10 ♗e3! ♕f6 11 0-0-0 ±.

10 ♕xg7 *(D)*

B

10 ... ♕e5+?

Inconsistent and therefore fatal. Black—in order to keep a fighting chance—should also give up the c-pawn, as after 10...♖g8 11 ♕xc7 ♘c6 there would not be a win for White by means of 12 ♘b5 because of 12...♕h4+! 13 g3 ♕e4+ 14 ♔f2 ♕xc2+, followed by ...♘e4. The check actually played allows White to win a development tempo—and time in such a tense position is a decisive factor.

11 ♗e2 ♖g8
12 ♕h6 ♖g6
13 ♕h4

White does not need to protect his g-pawn by 13 ♕h3 as after 13 ♕h4 ♖xg2 the answer 14 ♗f4 would have been decisive.

13 ... ♗d7
14 ♗g5 ♗c6
15 0-0-0 ♗xg2 *(D)*

Under normal circumstances this capture should be considered as another mistake but, owing to White's tremendous lead in development, Black's game is hopeless (if, for instance, 15...♘bd7 then still 16 ♖he1, followed by a move with the e2-bishop), so his morbid appetite cannot spoil anything more.

W

16 ♖he1 ♗e4
17 ♗h5 ♘xh5
18 ♖d8+ ♔f7
19 ♕xh5 1-0

Nimzowitsch quite correctly resigned here, as there are no decent moves for Black—even 19...♔g7 would lose the queen after 20 ♘xe4 fxe4 21 ♗h6+. This was, I believe, the shortest defeat in his career.

Game 69
Pirc – Alekhine
Bled 1931
Tarrasch Defence

1 d4 d5
2 c4 e6
3 ♘c3 c5
4 cxd5 cxd4

This interesting pawn-offer (instead of the usual 4...exd5) has been analysed by some German amateurs, and introduced in international practice—if I am not mistaken—by Dr. Tartakower. As subsequent investigations have proved, Black, in spite of the superiority of his development, should not be able, against adequate defence, to prevent the opponent emerging from the opening with an extra pawn and a safe position.

5 ♕a4+

Better than 5 ♕xd4 ♘c6,

5 ... ♗d7

5...♕d7 would be an error here because of 6 ♘b5! ±.

6 ♕xd4 exd5

7 ♕xd5 ♘c6

Black could also play 7...♘f6, after which 8 ♕xb7 ♘c6 would have been decidedly too risky for White, but 8 ♕d1 followed by e3 would have led to the same variations as could easily occur after the move played.

8 ♗g5

On account of White's backward development it would be safer for him to use this bishop for defensive purposes on the queenside, and to play instead 8 e3 (8...♘f6 9 ♕d1). However, the text move cannot be considered an actual mistake.

8 ... ♘f6

9 ♕d2 h6

This rather harmless attempt to create (in case of the natural answer 10 ♗h4) new threats in connection with ...♗b4, followed by ...g5 and ...♘e4, has unexpected and pleasant consequences.

10 ♗xf6

This certainly gives Black more attacking chances than the retreat mentioned, but would not have proved too bad if White had taken full advantage of the square d5 which he gains by this exchange.

10 ... ♕xf6

11 e3 0-0-0

12 0-0-0

The decisive error, allowing Black to regain the gambit pawn with persisting pressure. 12 ♘d5! was necessary and if 12...♕g6 (best), then 13 ♘e2 followed by ♘ef4 or c3, with possibilities of defence. Black has now the opportunity to carry out an attack on the king in the 'good old style'.

12 ... ♗g4

13 ♘d5 *(D)*

Too late!

B

13 ... ♖xd5!

14 ♕xd5 ♗a3!

After 14...♗xd1 15 ♕xd1 ♕xf2 16 ♕g4+ f5 17 ♕e2 ♕xe2 followed by ...♗c5, Black would probably

have won after a long endgame. The move chosen by him is a result of the decision, plainly justified under the circumstances, to find a winning solution in the middlegame.

15 ♕b3

There is nothing better; if, for instance, 15 ♖d2 (or 15 bxa3 ♕c3+ 16 ♔b1 ♖d8! 17 ♕xd8+[1] ♘xd8 with the double threat of 18...♗xd1 and 18...♗f5+) 15...♗xb2+! 16 ♖xb2 ♕c3+ 17 ♔b1 (or 17 ♖c2 ♕a1+ followed by ...♖d8+) 17...♕e1+ 18 ♔c2 ♖d8 and wins.

15	**...**	**♗xd1**
16	**♕xa3**	**♕xf2**
17	**♕d3**	**♗g4!**

And not 17...♖d8 because of 18 ♘h3! ♕f6 19 ♕c3, with chances of salvation.

18	**♘f3**	**♗xf3**

Also here 18...♖d8 would have been out of place because of the reply 19 ♕e2.

19	**♕f5+**	**♔b8**
20	**♕xf3**	**♕e1+**
21	**♔c2** *(D)*	

If he had given up the pawn the agony would not have lasted long: 21 ♕d1 ♕xe3+ 22 ♕d2 ♕e6! 23 ♔b1 ♖d8 24 ♕f4+ ♔a8, with quite a few deadly threats.

21	**...**	**♖c8**
22	**♕g3+**	**♘e5+!**
23	**♔b3**	**♕d1+**
24	**♔a3**	**♖c5!**

B

Quick death is now unavoidable—for instance 25 b4 ♖c3+ 26 ♔b2 ♕c1#, 25 b3 ♖a5+ 26 ♔b4 ♕d2# and the prettiest line, 25 ♔b4 ♕d2+! 26 ♔xc5 b6+ 27 ♔b5 ♕a5#.

0-1

Game 70

Alekhine – Flohr

Bled 1931

Queen's Gambit Accepted

1	**d4**	**d5**
2	**c4**	**dxc4**
3	**♘f3**	**♘f6**
4	**e3**	**e6**
5	**♗xc4**	**c5**
6	**0-0**	**♘c6**
7	**♕e2**	**a6**
8	**♖d1**	

Oddly enough, this move, which does not contain any real threat and is therefore at this particular moment, to say the least, inexact—was almost unanimously adopted at the

1 Here White has a much better defence: 17 ♗e2! ♖xd5 18 ♗xg4+ f5 19 ♖xd5 fxg4 20 ♘e2 ♕c4 21 ♖d2 ♕e4+ 22 ♔c1 ♕xg2 23 ♘g3 with just a slight advantage for Black. Therefore Black should prefer 15...♕a1+ 16 ♔c2 ♗xd1+ 17 ♕xd1 ♕xa2+ 18 ♔c1 ♕xa3+ 19 ♔b1 ♖d8, with a decisive attack.

time the actual game was played. After Euwe's win against me in the 5th match-game, 1937, and my win against Böök at Margate 1938, 'theory' will probably recognise the natural move 8 ♘c3! as best.

8 ... b5
9 dxc5

The positional refutation of 9 d5!? consists of 9...exd5 10 ♗xd5 ♘xd5 11 e4 ♕e7! 12 ♖xd5 ♗e6 ∓.

9 ... ♕c7
10 ♗d3 ♗xc5
11 a4

Hoping to disorganise Black's position on the queenside, and succeeding only because of the following inferior rejoinder.

11 ... b4?

After this, a number of squares on the queenside will remain insufficiently protected and, what is more, Black will remain without any hope of a counter-attack as White's position is practically without weaknesses. A quite different situation would have been produced by the right answer 11...bxa4!, which would give Black, as compensation for the weak a-pawn, counter-threats against White's b-pawn.

12 ♘bd2 0-0

Slightly better, although not entirely satisfactory, was 12...♘a5 as played, for instance, by Flohr in a match game against Euwe in 1932.

13 ♘b3 ♗e7
14 e4 ♘d7

The possibility of 15 e5 in connection with ♕e4 was certainly unpleasant.

15 ♗e3 ♘de5

The intended exchange of knights does not bring relief as it does not help to solve the important problem of the co-ordination of Black's rooks. 15...♗b7 16 ♖ac1 ♕b8 was therefore slightly preferable.

16 ♘xe5 ♘xe5
17 ♖ac1 ♕b8 *(D)*

18 ♗c5!

From now on every exchange will facilitate the exploitation of the organic pawn weaknesses created by Black's 11th move.

18 ... ♗xc5
19 ♘xc5 ♕b6
20 ♕h5! ♘d7

As the knight was Black's only active piece, it would have been advisable not to remove it unless necessary. By playing 20...f6 he could offer some more resistance, although White's advantage after 21 ♗f1 ♖d8 22 ♖d4! followed by ♕d1, would still be considerable.

21 ♗e2 g6

In order to open, without loss of time, a 'hole' for the king; but, as the following shows, this move weakens

the kingside, especially as White is by no means in a hurry to exchange queens. Black should take the knight immediately.

22 ♕g5 ♘xc5
23 ♖xc5 a5

One of White's positional threats was 24 a5.

24 h4

The punishment for 21...g6.

24 ... ♗a6
25 ♗f3! *(D)*

B

White's bishop is stronger than Black's. Now White has threats everywhere (26 h5; 26 ♖xa5; 26 ♖d7, etc.).

25 ... f6
26 ♕e3

And now White begins to speculate on the unprotected position of the enemy's queen!

26 ... ♖ad8
27 ♖xd8 ♖xd8

Or 27...♕xd8 28 e5 f5 29 ♖c6 ♗c8 30 ♕c5, with a winning position.

28 e5!

Forcing either the win of a pawn with an overwhelming position after 28...fxe5 29 ♕xe5 (even stronger is perhaps first 29 h5!), or the catastrophe which occurs in the actual game. The immediate 28 ♖c8 was not convincing because of 28...♕d6.

28 ... f5
29 ♖c8! 1-0

White wins at least a rook.

Game 71
Alekhine – Maroczy
Bled 1931
Queen's Gambit Declined

1 d4 d5
2 c4 e6
3 ♘c3 ♘f6
4 ♗g5 ♗e7
5 e3 ♘bd7
6 ♘f3 0-0
7 ♖c1 h6
8 ♗h4 c6
9 ♗d3 a6

The fashionable continuation, after which Black actually has little to fear, is 9...dxc4 10 ♗xc4 b5 11 ♗d3 a6 and if 12 a4 (12 e4? ♘xe4 ∓ was Euwe-Alekhine, 28th game, 1935), then simply 12...bxa4.

10 0-0 dxc4
11 ♗xc4 c5

It is rather risky to delay the development of the queenside. Instead, 11...b5 followed by ...♗b7 and ...c5 was still a fairly good alternative.

12 a4!

This move, in connection with the following isolation of the central pawn, gives the game its character. After 12 ♗d3 or 12 ♕e2 b5, it would probably develop on conventional

lines—and end with an honourable draw.

12 ... ♕a5

From now on Maroczy plays very enterprising chess, combining defensive moves with counter-attacks against White's weaknesses at a4 and d4.

13 ♕e2 cxd4!

At the right moment as 14 ♘xd4 ♘e5 15 ♗b3 ♘g6 16 ♗g3 e5 would be in Black's favour.

14 exd4 ♘b6

15 ♗d3!

Practically leaving the a-pawn to its fate. For the moment, it is true, it cannot well be taken because of 16 ♘e4! with a very strong attack; but it remains weak almost until the dramatic end.

15 ... ♗d7

16 ♘e5

Threatening 17 ♗xf6 followed by 18 ♕e4.

16 ... ♖fd8 *(D)*

17 f4

White had decided already, by 12 a4, to conduct the whole game in a *fortissimo* style. Although the result justified this method, I am by no means sure that it was the most logical way to exploit White's unquestionable advantage in space. Here, for instance, the simple move 17 ♕f3 was to be seriously taken into consideration as:

1) 17...♘xa4 would still be answered by 18 ♘e4! ±;

2) 17...♗xa4 would obviously be unsatisfactory because of 18 ♕xb7; and

3) after 17...♗c6 18 ♘xc6 bxc6 19 ♖fd1 Black's pawns would be at least as vulnerable as White's.

17 ... ♗e8

18 ♘g4

The logical consequence of the previous move. White offers the d-pawn, as its defence by 18 ♖fd1 or 18 ♗f2 would permit Black to parry the important threats by playing a knight to d5.

18 ... ♖xd4

Black, on the other hand, has nothing better than to accept the offer, as by other moves White's attack would remain—with even material—at least as strong as in the actual game.

19 ♗xf6 ♗xf6

20 ♘xf6+ gxf6

21 ♘e4 *(D)*

Black's king's position is now dangerously compromised, especially as he cannot well protect the square f6 (if 21...♘d7 then 22 f5! with a strong attack).

21 ... ♖ad8?

But he could—and should—save the f6-pawn by playing 21...f5 to

B

which White would reply 22 ♘f6+[1] ♔f8 (or 22...♔g7 23 ♘h5+ followed by b3) 23 b3! and try afterwards to exploit the weakness of Black's dark squares, with an uncertain result. The counter-attack initiated by the text move will be refuted chiefly because White will succeed in protecting his bishop indirectly, without any loss of time.

22 ♘xf6+ ♔f8

23 ♘h7+!

Perhaps Maroczy had underestimated this check. If now 23...♔g8, then 24 ♕g4+ ♔h8 25 ♕h4! ♖xd3 26 ♕xh6 and wins.

23 ... ♔e7

24 f5!

White's first indirect defence: if 24...♖xd3? then 25 f6+ followed by 26 ♕xd3+.

24 ... ♖8d6 *(D)*

But after this everything seems to be again in order, as the king has a comfortable escape at d8. However, the following reply, which was by no means easy to find, turns the tables.

W

25 b4!!

A surprising solution of the attacking problem, the idea of which is as follows: White succeeds either (in case of 25...♖xb4) in playing 26 ♕h5! without permitting the strong answer 26...♕d2! or (as in the actual game) by entering with the queen into Black's position via e5.

25 ... ♕xb4

An interesting finish would have occurred after 25...♖xb4 26 ♕h5! e5! 27 f6+ ♔d8 28 ♕xh6! ♖xd3 29 ♕f8 ♖d7 30 ♖c5 ♕xa4 31 ♖xe5 and wins.

26 ♕e5!

Threatening 27 ♕f6+ ♔d7 28 ♘f8#.

26 ... ♘d7

Protects both critical squares and, apparently, at last wins the bishop.

---

1 Rather amusingly, Vuković, in his book *The Chess Sacrifice*, gave analysis showing that White could play more strongly here by 22 ♘xh6+; in case readers are baffled by this suggestion, I should add that Vuković incorrectly gave White's 18th move as ♘e4 instead of ♘g4.

27 ♕h8! *(D)*

27 ... ♖xd3

Losing one move earlier than he should. The best reply 27...♕b6 would have forced White to disclose the last point of the combination started by his 25th move—28 a5! (the triumph of the neglected pawn!) with the variations 28...♕xa5 29 ♖c8 and 28...♕a7 29 f6+, as in the actual game[1].

28 f6+! 1-0

As 28...♘xf6 is met by 29 ♕xf6+ and 30 ♘f8#; if 28...♔d8, then 29 ♕xe8+! and 30 ♖c8#.

Game 72
Alekhine – Winter
London 1932
Caro-Kann Defence

1 e4 c6
2 d4 d5
3 exd5 cxd5
4 c4

One of the best ways to meet the Caro-Kann. Nowadays it is slightly out of fashion, in my opinion without much reason and probably only temporarily.

4 ... ♘f6
5 ♘c3 ♘c6
6 ♘f3

If 6 ♗g5 (Botvinnik's move), then 6...e6 7 ♘f3 ♗e7, with a slightly cramped but solid enough defensive game.

6 ... ♗g4
7 cxd5 ♘xd5
8 ♗b5 ♕a5

Introduced by me in a game against Nimzowitsch (Bled 1931), in which my opponent, after 9 ♕b3!

---

1 Vuković, who was by now back on track, correctly pointed out that 27...♖c6 is a much better defence.
His analysis continued 28 ♖xc6 bxc6 29 fxe6 fxe6 30 ♘f6 ♗f7 31 ♘xd7 (31 ♗xa6 ♖f4 is equal) 31...♖xd7 32 ♕f6+ ♔d6 33 ♗xa6 ♕b6+ 34 ♔h1 ♕xa6 35 ♖d1+ ♔c7 36 ♖xd7+ ♔xd7 37 ♕xf7+ and this ending should be a draw. However, White can improve on this line by 32 ♗g6 ♕c5+ 33 ♔h1 ♕f2 34 ♕a1! ♕xf1+ 35 ♕xf1 ♗xg6, when he has some advantage, although it is obviously going to be very hard to win this ending. Black himself has an alternative earlier, namely 30...♘xf6 31 ♕xf6+ ♔d7 32 ♕g7+ ♔d8 33 ♖b1 ♕d6, with a slight advantage for White. This is no way detracts from Alekhine's combination, since even perfect defence by Maroczy would have left Alekhine with some advantage; in the game itself, as so often happens, a long period of defence takes its toll and Maroczy blunders, allowing mate in three.

♗xf3 10 gxf3 ♘xc3 made the curious miscalculation 11 ♗xc6+ bxc6 12 ♕b7?—and after 12...♘d5+ 13 ♗d2 ♕b6! 14 ♕xa8+ ♔d7 15 0-0 ♘c7, was forced to give up a piece by 16 ♗a5, making further resistance practically hopeless. However, 8...♕a5 is, as the present game demonstrates, decidedly too risky. The correct line is 8...♖c8 9 h3 ♗xf3 10 ♕xf3 e6, with roughly even prospects.

9 ♕b3! ♗xf3
10 gxf3 ♘xc3
11 bxc3 e6 *(D)*

Black has obtained, it is true, the better pawn position, but as the following effective pawn sacrifice will show, his king position is by no means safe. The next part of the game is highly instructive, since White's attack needed, in order to succeed, a particularly exact calculation.

12 d5!

It is necessary to sacrifice the pawn at once, as after 12 0-0 ♖d8 Black would obtain a satisfactory position.

12 ... exd5
13 0-0 0-0-0

The only move. After 13...♗e7 14 ♖e1 the pin on the e-file would be deadly.

14 ♗xc6 bxc6
15 ♖b1 ♕c7

Or 15...♔d7 16 c4!, with a tremendous attack.

16 ♕a4 ♖d7
17 ♗d2!

A difficult move, much more effective than 17 ♗f4 or 17 ♗e3. In spite of his accurate defence, Black will be unable to prevent a gradual demolition of his king's residence.

17 ... ♗c5
18 c4 ♔d8

Again comparatively the best, as 18...♗b6 would fail because of 19 c5! ♗xc5 20 ♕a6+ ♔d8 21 ♗a5 ♗b6 22 ♖xb6.

19 ♗a5 ♗b6
20 ♗xb6 axb6 *(D)*

21 ♕a8+!

The objects of this rather profound queen's manoeuvre are the following: firstly, in some important variations a white rook has to be

posted at a4, so the queen frees that square in view of that eventuality; secondly, if White plays at once 21 cxd5 Black can answer 21...♖xd5 22 ♖fd1 ♔e7! 23 ♖xd5 cxd5 24 ♖e1+ ♔f6 25 ♕h4+ ♔g6 and White would have no more than perpetual check. Therefore he has to prevent the black king escaping via e7.

21 ... ♕c8
22 ♕a3 ♕b8
23 cxd5 cxd5

The alternative is 23...♖xd5 24 ♖fd1 ♖e8 25 ♖xd5+ cxd5 26 ♖d1 and now, after either 26...♕e5 or 26...♖e5, White replies 27 f4 and Black has no adequate defence.

24 ♖b4!

The winning move, as Black has no time to play 24...♖e8 on account of 25 ♖a4.

24 ... ♕d6
25 ♖e1! ♖c7

Or 25...♖e7 26 ♖d1, with a winning attack.

26 ♕b3 ♖e8
27 ♖d1 ♖e5

Obviously, Black cannot protect both his pawns.

28 ♖xb6 ♖c6
29 ♖xc6 ♖g5+

Forced (29...♕xc6 30 ♕b8+).

30 ♔h1 ♕xc6 *(D)*
31 ♖e1!

Initiating the final attack.

31 ... ♕f6
32 ♕b8+ ♔d7
33 f4 ♖g6

I expected here 33...♖h5 34 ♕e8+ ♔d6 35 ♖c1! ♖xh2+ 36 ♔g1! forcing the win.

34 ♕e8+ ♔c7
35 ♖c1+ ♔b6
36 ♖b1+ ♔c5
37 ♕b5+ 1-0

Game 73
Alekhine – Koltanowski
London 1932
Brilliancy Prize
Ruy Lopez

1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 ♗b5 a6
4 ♗a4 d6
5 ♗xc6+ bxc6
6 d4 exd4

The usual defensive scheme is here 6...f6 followed by ...♘e7-g6. But Black in this game obviously wants a free diagonal for his dark-squared bishop.

7 ♘xd4 ♗d7
8 0-0 g6
9 ♘c3

White has nothing better than this calm development of forces—in the hope that the slight weakness of Black's dark squares will sooner or later give him real chances.

9	...	♗g7
10	♖e1	♘e7
11	♗f4	0-0
12	♕d2	c5
13	♘b3	

Not 13 ♘f3 because of 13...♗g4. But 13 ♘de2 came seriously into consideration.

13	...	♘c6
14	♗h6	♗e6
15	♗xg7	♔xg7
16	♘d5	f6 *(D)*

W

17	♖ad1	♖b8
18	♕c3	♕c8
19	a3	♖f7
20	h3!	

This and the following moves were by no means easy to find as, in preparing the decisive combination, I had to keep in mind the possibility of the simplifying variation beginning with ...♗xd5.

20	...	♕b7
21	♖e3	♕b5 *(D)*

As the sequel shows, here Black should play 21...♗xd5—but after 22 exd5 ♘d4 23 ♘xd4 cxd4 24 ♖xd4 ♕xb2 25 ♕d2 White would still keep a real, if not easily realisable, positional advantage[1].

W

22	♘xc7!	

As a rule, so-called 'positional' sacrifices are considered more difficult, and therefore more praiseworthy, than those which are based exclusively on an exact calculation of tactical possibilities. The present position offers, I believe, an exception, as the multitude and complexity of the variations following the knight sacrifice demanded much greater intensive mental work than any general evaluation of mutual possibilities.

22	...	♖xc7
23	♖xd6	♗c4

Black had several other answers, but all of them would lose in the end,

1 After 25...♕a1+ 26 ♔h2 ♖b1 no advantage for White can be discerned—indeed, the impending ...♖h1+ followed by ...♕g1 or ...f5 would appear to give Black slightly the better chances.

as the following variations demonstrate:

1) 23...♗xb3? 24 ♕xf6+ and then 25 ♖xb3.

2) 23...♘d4? 24 ♘xd4.

3) 23...♕c4 24 ♘xc5!.

4) 23...♘d8 24 ♖f3 ♖f7 25 ♘xc5.

5) 23...♗f7 24 ♖xf6! ♘d4 25 ♘xd4 cxd4 26 ♕xc7 ♔xf6 27 ♖f3+.

6) 23...♖e8 24 ♘xc5 ♘d8 25 b4 ♘f7 26 ♖xe6[1].

7) 23...♔f7 24 ♖f3 ♔e7 25 a4 ♕b6 (best) 26 ♖xe6+ ♔xe6 27 ♘xc5+ ♔d6 (or 27...♔f7 28 ♕xf6 ♔g8 29 ♘e6!) 28 ♕xf6+ ♔xc5 29 ♖c3+ ♔b4 30 ♕d6+ and wins.

24 a4! ♕xa4
25 ♘xc5 ♕b5
26 ♕xf6+ ♔g8
27 ♘d7! ♖d8

Or 27...♖e8 28 ♕c3 and wins.

28 ♖f3 ♕b4
29 c3 ♕b5
30 ♘e5! ♖dc8
31 ♘xc6 1-0

Since if now 31...♖xc6, then 32 ♖d8+ winning.

Game 74
Alekhine – Tartakower
London 1932
Budapest Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e5
3 dxe5 ♘e4

Less usual, but not better than the alternative 3...♘g4, against which I have had (excepting the Gilg game, Semmering 1926) rather pleasant experiences, too. Here, for instance, are two typical short 'Budapest' stories.

1) Alekhine-Rabinovich, Baden-Baden 1925: 1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e5 3 dxe5 ♘g4 4 e4 ♘xe5 5 f4 ♘g6 6 ♘f3 ♗c5 7 f5! ♘h4 8 ♘g5! ♕e7 9 ♕g4 f6 10 ♕h5+! g6 11 ♕xh4 fxg5 12 ♗xg5 ♕f7 13 ♗e2 0-0 14 ♖f1 ♘c6 15 ♘c3 ♘d4 16 fxg6 ♕xg6 17 ♖xf8+ ♗xf8 18 ♗h5 ♕b6 19 0-0-0 ♗g7 20 ♖f1 ♘e6 21 ♗f7+ ♔h8 22 ♗xe6 dxe6 23 ♗h6! 1-0.

2) Alekhine-Seitz, Hastings 1925/6: 1 d4 ♘f6 2 c4 e5 3 dxe5 ♘g4 4 e4 ♘xe5 5 f4 ♘ec6 6 ♗e3 ♗b4+ 7 ♘c3 ♕e7 8 ♗d3 f5 9 ♕h5+ g6 10 ♕f3 ♗xc3+ 11 bxc3 fxe4 12 ♗xe4 0-0 13 ♗d5+! ♔h8 14 ♘h3 d6 15 0-0 ♗xh3 16 ♕xh3 ♕d7 17 f5! gxf5 18 ♖ab1! f4 19 ♗xf4 ♕xh3 20 ♗e5+ 1-0.

4 ♘d2 ♘c5

If 4...♗b4 then 5 ♘f3 followed by a3 in order to obtain the advantage of the two bishops.

5 ♘gf3 ♘c6
6 g3 ♕e7
7 ♗g2 g6
8 ♘b1!

---

1 Black is not forced to leave his bishop *en prise* in this line, but even after the best defence 25...♖c6 White has an attractive win by 26 e5! ♖xd6 (26...f5 27 ♖ed3 is very unpleasant) 27 exd6 ♗f7 (27...♕b6 28 ♘d7! ♗xd7 29 ♖xe8 ♗xe8 30 ♕c7+ wins) 28 ♖f3 ♖e5 29 ♖xf6! ♔xf6 30 f4 ♘c6 31 fxe5+ ♘xe5 32 d7 ♕b6 33 ♕d4 ♕d8 34 ♕f4+.

This at first sight surprising move is in reality perfectly logical. After Black has clearly shown his intention to develop the bishop at g7, White has no longer to reckon with any action on the diagonal a5-e1. There is no reason, therefore, for delay in placing his knight on the dominating square d5.

8	...	♘xe5
9	0-0	♘xf3+
10	exf3	♗g7
11	♖e1	♘e6
12	♘c3	0-0
13	♘d5	♕d8
14	f4	c6

He must expel the white knight, thus creating a vulnerable weakness at d6, because after the immediate 14...d6 the temporary sacrifice 15 f5 would be too dangerous for Black.

15	♘c3	d6
16	♗e3	♕c7
17	♖c1	♗d7
18	♕d2	♖ad8
19	♖ed1	♗c8
20	♘e4 *(D)*	
20	...	♘c5

This will be refuted by the combination starting with White's 24th move, but owing to the weakness on

B

d6, Black's position was already very difficult. For instance, unsatisfactory would be 20...d5 21 cxd5 ♖xd5 22 ♘f6+ and 23 ♗xd5, winning the exchange; or 20...c5 21 f5! gxf5 22 ♘c3 ♘d4 23 ♘d5 ♕b8 24 ♗g5 ±; and after the comparatively safest 20...b6, White could also easily increase his space advantage by 21 b4.

21	♘xd6!	♘a4
22	c5	♘xb2
23	♖e1	b5 *(D)*

This rejoinder, the logical upshot of the three previous moves, will prove insufficient, but Black did not have any saving course, for instance 23...♗e6 24 ♗d4! or 23...♗f5 24 g4! ♗xg4 25 ♗d4, in each case with a decisive advantage for White[1].

1 This is certainly wrong, as the latter line may be continued by 25...♖xd6! 26 cxd6 ♕xd6 and now 27 ♖e5 ♘a4!, 27 ♖e4 ♖d8 28 ♕xb2 ♗xd4 and 27 ♕xb2 ♗xd4 28 ♕xb7 ♕xf4 are all clearly in Black's favour. Moreover, even the relatively superior 23...♗f5 24 ♗f1 b6 cannot be assessed as anything more than 'unclear'. However, Alekhine could have played much more accurately by 22 ♕b4! ♘xb2 23 ♖d2. The idea is the same—trapping the knight on b2—but with the important difference that White's rook can stay on the d-file. There are many threats, e.g. 24 c5, 24 ♗xa7 and 24 ♘xc8, and after 23...b6 24 c5 bxc5 25 ♕xc5 (25 ♗xc5 is also strong) Black will simply lose his queenside pawns.

24 cxb6!

A surprising but not very complicated combination. The only difficulty was the necessity of foreseeing this possibility several moves before, when making the capture 21 ♘xd6.

24	**...**	**♕xd6**
25	**♕xd6**	**♖xd6**
26	**bxa7**	**♗b7**
27	**♗c5**	**♖dd8**
28	**♗xf8**	**♔xf8**
29	**♗xc6**	**♗xc6**
30	**♖xc6**	**♖a8**

Black's moves were practically forced and, his position being absolutely hopeless, he prefers a quick end. If, instead of this, 30...♗d4, then 31 ♖d6 also wins immediately.

31	**♖b6**	**♖xa7**
32	**♖b8#**	

Game 75

Alekhine – Sultan Khan

Berne 1932

Caro-Kann Defence

1	**e4**	**c6**
2	**d4**	**d5**
3	**exd5**	**cxd5**
4	**c4**	**♘f6**
5	**♘c3**	**♘c6**
6	**♘f3**	**♗g4**
7	**cxd5**	**♘xd5**
8	**♗b5**	**a6**

For 8...♕a5 see the game against Winter (game 72). The point of the text move is a positional pawn offer, by no means easy to refute over the board.

9	**♗xc6+**	**bxc6**
10	**♕a4!**	**♘xc3**

The logical consequence of his 8th move, since 10...♗d7 11 ♘e5 would obviously be to White's advantage.

11	**♕xc6+**	**♗d7**
12	**♕xc3**	**♖c8**
13	**♕e3**	**♗b5**

It becomes evident that Black is not without compensation for the minus pawn: White's d-pawn is isolated and—what is more important—he will be forced, in order to castle, to weaken his queenside by the following moves.

14	**a4**	**♗c4**
15	**b3**	**♗d5**
16	**0-0**	**♕b6** *(D)*

17 ♗d2!

Protecting the b-pawn by 17 ♖b1 would be a poor strategy, after which Black would have found time to finish his development by 17...e6, ...♗d6/e7 and ...0-0.

17 ... e6

Or 17...♕xb3 18 ♖fc1! ♖xc1+ 19 ♖xc1 ♕xe3 20 fxe3 e6 (or 20...♗xf3 21 gxf3 ♔d7 22 ♗a5) 21 ♖c7 followed by ♖a7 ±.

18 ♖fc1 ♖b8

Comparatively better than the exchange of rooks.

19 ♘e5 f6

Underestimating the strength of the reply; but 19...♗e7 was also unsatisfactory, for instance 20 ♘c4 ♕xb3 21 ♕xb3 ♖xb3 22 ♘d6+! ±.

20 ♘c6!

The object of this knight manoeuvre is to definitely end Black's attacks against the b-pawn.

20 ... ♖a8

The only move, as 20...♖c8 would be inferior because of 21 ♘b4!.

21 ♘a5

Intending 22 ♖c6!.

21 ... ♔f7

This king position at an early stage of the game is more familiar to Sultan Khan than to European or American players, as in Indian Chess castling is effected in three moves: (1) ...♔e7, d7 or f7; (2) a rook move from its original square; (3) a knight's move, with the king back on the first rank and on the side originally occupied by the rook—this provided the king has not been under check in the meantime. Returning to the present game, one must admit that Black, owing to the threat mentioned above, did not have anything better than the king move.

22 ♘c4 ♕b7
23 ♕g3 ♗e7
24 a5

The initial move of the decisive plan: the establishment of the knight at b6 will permit White to take full advantage of the c-file.

24 ... ♖ad8
25 ♘b6 ♗c6 *(D)*

26 ♖c4!

This had to be precisely calculated, because of the possible answer 26...e5, in which case White had decided to give back the extra pawn in order to obtain a strong direct attack. The continuation would be 27 ♖ac1! ♖xd4 28 ♖xc6 ♖xd2 29 ♕g4! ♖fd8 30 ♕e6+ ♔f8 31 h3 ♖d1+ 32 ♖xd1 ♖xd1+ 33 ♔h2 ±.

26 ... ♖he8
27 ♖ac1 ♗b5
28 ♖c7 ♕e4
29 d5!

Instead of the simple continuation 29 ♗c3—which in the long run would probably also prove to be

sufficient—White decides to force the game by a sharply calculated combination. If Black had now tried his best practical chance 29...exd5, the following variation would have occurred: 30 ♖e1 ♗e2 31 ♘a4! (one of the important links of White's combination) 31...d4 32 ♘c5 ♕c2 33 ♖xe2 ♕d1+ 34 ♖e1 ♕xd2 35 ♔f1! and Black would be defenceless against the many threats. The remaining moves would probably be 35...♔g8 36 ♘e6 g6 37 ♘xd8 ♕xe1+ 38 ♔xe1 ♗d6+ 39 ♔d2 ♗xg3 40 hxg3 ♖xd8 41 ♖c6 ♖d5 42 b4 after which Black would have to resign.

29 ... ♔g8

Leads to an even more rapid debacle because of White's 31st move.

30 ♖e1 ♕f5
31 ♗b4! ♖d7

As useless as anything else.

32 ♖xd7 ♗xd7
33 ♗xe7 exd5

Or 33...♖xe7 34 ♕d6 and wins.

34 ♕d6 1-0

Game 76
Alekhine – Flohr
Berne 1932
Colle System

1 d4 d5
2 ♘f3 ♘f6
3 e3

This quiet move—the idea of which is to postpone the fight for the centre until White has brought his king into safety—procured the regretted Belgian champion a long series of brilliant victories. Its objective value had been already put in question by the variation 3...♗f5 4 ♗d3 e6! introduced in Colle-Alekhine, San Remo 1930 and adopted since, for instance, by Dr. Euwe against me in a match game, 1935. The defence chosen here by Flohr allows White to fulfil his plan of development.

3 ... e6
4 ♗d3 c5
5 c3 ♘c6
6 ♘bd2 ♕c7
7 0-0 ♗e7
8 ♕e2 0-0
9 e4

As I found out afterwards, this rather natural move had not been tried before. By adopting the usual 9 dxc5 ♗xc5 10 e4 I would have been put in the not altogether pleasant position of having to fight against another innovation of mine (Gilg-Alekhine, Kecskemet 1927), namely 10...♗d6! 11 ♖e1 ♘g4!, with approximately even prospects.

9 ... dxe4

9...cxd4 would be unsatisfactory because of 10 e5! ♘d7 (or 10...♘h5 11 ♘b3 threatening g4) 11 cxd4 ♘b4 12 ♗b5! a6 13 ♗a4 with a clear advantage for White.

10 ♘xe4 cxd4
11 ♘xd4

Not 11 cxd4 as it is in White's interest to exchange the maximum number of pieces able to attack his isolated pawn.

11 ... ♘xd4
12 cxd4 ♘xe4

Instead 12...♘d5 13 ♕f3! would have led to a more complicated middlegame position. However, the text move should have been sufficient for equality.

13 ♗xe4 f5

But from now on Flohr decidedly overestimates his position, which he very seldom does. After the simple line 13...♗d7 14 ♕f3 ♗c6, the natural outcome would have been a draw.

14 ♗f3 ♗f6

This move and the next one are the logical consequences of the unfortunate attempt to exploit the 'weakness' at d4. It was still comparatively better to play 14...♗d7.

15 ♖d1 ♖d8 *(D)*

W

16 ♗e3 f4?

Suicidal. But also after the relatively better 16...g5 17 h3 ♕g7 18 ♖ac1 it would soon become evident that White's d-pawn could be captured only at the price of a further decisive compromising of Black's position.

17 ♖ac1 ♕d6
18 ♗d2 ♗xd4

This pawn is poisoned, as the answer shows. But also 18...♖b8 19 a3!, threatening 20 ♗b4, was already practically hopeless for Black.

19 ♗a5! ♖d7

If the rook leaves the d-file, then 20 ♕c4! wins immediately.

20 ♖xd4!

This is the convincing refutation of Black's ultra-materialistic tendencies in this game.

20 ... ♕xd4
21 ♕xe6+ ♖f7

After 21...♔f8 22 ♖e1 g6 23 ♗c3 Black would lose the queen.

22 ♖xc8+ ♖xc8
23 ♕xc8+ ♖f8
24 ♕xb7 ♖e8
25 h3

Not 25 ♗c3? due to 25...♕xc3!.

25 ... ♕c5
26 ♗c3 ♕e7
27 ♗d5+ ♔h8
28 ♕xe7 1-0

Game 77
Alekhine – Steiner
Pasadena 1932
Ruy Lopez

1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 ♗b5 a6
4 ♗a4 ♘f6
5 0-0 ♗c5

Having been for a period rather partial towards this move (see, for example, game 1), I must, to my regret, now admit that it is not quite sufficient against accurate play. And as 5...d6 has recently been also

somewhat discredited, Black has been practically brought back to the old choice between the speculative 5...♘xe4 (Open Defence) and the cautious 5...♗e7 (Closed Defence).

6 c3 ♘xe4
7 d4 ♗a7
8 ♕e2

I decided to follow here the line of play adopted against me by Yates at Hastings 1922; although White obtained in that game only a draw I hoped to find over the board some better moves than those made by Yates—but actually there happened to be none. Much better than the queen move is 8 ♖e1 (which is also more logical, as it brings a new piece into action), and if 8...f5 then 9 ♘bd2 0-0 10 ♘xe4 fxe4 11 ♗g5 followed by 12 ♖xe4 with a clear advantage.

8 ... f5
9 dxe5 0-0
10 ♗b3+ ♔h8
11 ♘bd2 ♕e8

An interesting idea *à la* Marshall: Black sacrifices 1-2 pawns for rapid development, after which White's position will, for a while, look somewhat critical. However, the attempt can, and will, be refuted; therefore much to be preferred was (as happened in the Hastings game mentioned) 11...d5 12 exd6 ♘xd6 13 ♘c4 f4! 14 ♘ce5 (or 14 ♘xd6 cxd6! 15 ♖d1 ♗g4) 14...♘xe5 15 ♘xe5 ♕g5, with fairly good prospects for Black.

12 ♘xe4 fxe4
13 ♕xe4 d5!

This is the point of the first sacrifice—Black will develop his c8-bishop with tempo.

14 ♗xd5

Better than 14 ♕xd5 ♗g4 15 ♘g5 ♘xe5, with unpleasant threats.

14 ... ♗f5
15 ♕h4 ♘xe5 *(D)*

W

16 ♗xb7!

The only way to successfully meet Black's attack against f2. 16 ♘xe5 ♕xe5 17 ♗xb7 would be unsatisfactory because of 17...♗d3! 18 ♗xa8 ♗xf2+! 19 ♔h1 ♕e8! (better than 19...♗xf1 20 ♕e4!) with strong pressure for Black.

16 ... ♖b8
17 ♘xe5 ♖xb7

If now 17...♕xe5 then 18 ♗xa6! parrying Black's main threat ...♗d3. This was the point of White's 16th move.

18 ♖e1!

Black has no means of profiting from this momentary weakening of f2.

18 ... ♖b5
19 ♘f3 ♕c8
20 c4 ♖b7

21 b3

In connection with the next move a much more rapid solution than the passive 21 h3.

21 ... ♗g4 *(D)*

22 ♗a3!

Practically forcing the response, which ends Black's hopes on the diagonal a7-g1.

22 ... c5

Of course not 22...♖f6 because of 23 ♕xg4.

23 ♘e5

From now on White has an easy job.

23 ... ♗f5

24 g4!

In order to force the bishop to abandon the defence of g6.

24 ... g5

Despair.

25 ♗b2

A spectacular move (25...gxh4 26 ♘f7+ ♔g8 27 ♘h6#), but the simpler 25 ♕h5 was also good enough. Not so convincing, on the contrary, would have been 25 ♕xg5 ♖g7 26 ♗b2 ♔g8!.

25 ... ♔g8

Hoping, after 26 ♕xg5+ ♖g7, to transpose into the last variation mentioned.

26 ♕b5! ♗e6

27 ♘d7! 1-0

After 27...♕xd7, White forces the win like this: 28 ♕xg5+ ♔f7 29 ♕f6+ ♔g8 30 ♕h8+! ♔f7 31 ♕xh7+ ♔e8 32 ♕g6+ ♔e7 33 ♖ad1! ♕c6 34 ♕g5+ ♔f7 35 ♕f6+ followed by mate in two.

Game 78

Alekhine – Kimura

Blindfold Exhibition on 15 boards, Tokyo 1933

Ruy Lopez

1 e4 e5

2 ♘f3 ♘c6

3 ♗b5 a6

4 ♗xc6 bxc6

Although playable, this move is seldom adopted, since 4...dxc6 gives Black quite a satisfactory game.

5 d4 exd4

6 ♕xd4 d6

More natural than 6...♕f6 tried by me against Duras in Mannheim 1914, which can be advantageously answered by 7 e5! ♕g6 8 0-0, for the acceptance of the pawn sacrifice (8...♕xc2) would be decidedly too dangerous for Black.

7 0-0 ♗e6

8 ♘c3 ♘f6

9 ♗g5

The positional advantage that White could obtain by playing here or on the next move e5 did not look convincing enough after ...♘d5.

9 ... ♗e7
10 ♕a4 ♗d7
11 ♖ad1 0-0 *(D)*

12 e5!

Now this advance secures White a clear supremacy in one form or another. The main variation I considered was 12...♘d5 13 ♗xe7 ♕xe7 (or 13...♘xc3 14 ♕h4!) 14 ♘xd5 cxd5 15 ♕a3!, bringing Black into trouble.

12 ... ♘e8
13 ♗xe7 ♕xe7
14 exd6 cxd6
15 ♖fe1 ♕d8

A sad necessity for Black, since 15...♕f6 16 ♘e5! would be practically decisive.

16 ♘d4!

If now 16...c5, then 17 ♘c6 ♕c7 18 ♘d5! ♕b7 19 ♘ce7+ ♔h8 20 ♕h4 (threatening ♖e4 followed by ♕xh7+!) with a strong attack on Black's king.

16 ... ♕c7
17 ♖e7 ♘f6
18 ♘f5!

The simpler move 18 ♖de1 would maintain White's advantage without complications, but the line selected was tempting—and proved correct.

18 ... ♕d8

The comparatively most embarrassing answer for White, whose pieces begin to 'hang'. The alternative 18...♖fe8 would give him an easier job: 19 ♘e4! ♘xe4 20 ♕xe4 ♖xe7 21 ♕xe7! ♖e8 22 ♕xd6 ♕xd6 23 ♘xd6 ♖e2 24 ♘c4 ♖xc2 25 ♘e3 and wins.

19 ♖xd6 ♖e8 *(D)*

Seems to force the variation 20 ♖xe8+ ♕xe8 21 ♘e3, after which Black, by playing, for instance, 21...♖b8 could still set the 'blind' opponent some problems. All the more surprising is the following manoeuvre, which in a couple of moves deprives Black of any fighting chances.

20 ♘e4!

The first point of the attack started with 18 ♘f5, by which White only seemingly allows a desirable transaction for Black.

20 ... ♖xe7

Forced, as 20...♘xe4 21 ♖dxd7 would be hopeless.

21 ♘xf6+ ♔h8

Or 21...♔f8 22 ♘xh7+ ♔g8 23 ♘f6+ ♔f8 24 ♘xe7 gxf6 25 ♘xc6 ♕e8 26 ♕b4! a5 27 ♕c3 and wins[1].

22 ♘xe7 ♕xe7

Expecting not without pleasure the variation 23 ♘e4 ♗f5 24 ♖d4 c5 25 ♖c4 ♖d8, with a counter-attack.

23 ♕e4!

A most disagreeable surprise for Black: not only is the mate protected, but White himself threatens a mate at h7 and thus forces the simplification.

23 ... ♕xe4
24 ♘xe4 ♗e6
25 b3 g6

Still hoping for 26 ♖xc6? ♗d5. But after White also avoids this 'trap', Black could just as well quietly resign.

26 ♘c5 ♗f5
27 ♖xc6 ♖e8

I was mistaken—there was still a chance to give a mate on the 8th rank!

28 f3 ♖e2
29 ♖xa6 ♖xc2
30 ♘e4 ♗e6
31 h4 ♔g7
32 ♔h2 ♔h6
33 ♔g3 ♗d7
34 a4 f5
35 ♘g5 ♖c3
36 ♖a7 ♖d3
37 a5 ♔h5
38 ♘xh7 1-0

Game 79

Alekhine – Mikenas

Folkestone tt 1933

Modern Defence

1 e4 g6

This move is rightly considered inferior, as it concedes White full control of the central squares. It is, however, not at all easy for the first player to transform this advantage in space into a decisive one.

2 d4 ♗g7
3 ♘c3 d6
4 ♘f3 ♘d7
5 ♗c4 e6

By choosing this pawn structure, Black, strategically, prevents in this stage of the game a further advance of White's central pawns, as e5 may be met by ...d5 and d5 by ...e5, allowing the second player to obtain later an initiative in the centre by means of ...c5 or ...f5 respectively. White's strategy in the next stage of the game will consist, therefore, of restricting more and more—by leaving the central position intact—the already limited field of action of the enemy's pieces.

6 0-0 ♘e7
7 a4!

A very important move in this kind of position, worthy of notice by the student. Its aim is either to prevent the fianchetto of Black's queen's bishop (by 7...b6 8 a5 ±) or induce

1 Actually 27 ♘xa5 is clearer, since 27 ♕c3 sheds a piece after the reply 27...♖c8 (admittedly for a lot of pawns, but why make life difficult?).

Black to weaken—by answering ...a5—the b5-square.

7 ... 0-0

8 ♗e3 h6

Preventing 9 ♕d2, followed by ♗h6, which would eliminate the only more or less active black piece.

9 ♕d2 ♔h7

10 h3

In order not to have to reckon with the possibility ...♘f6 and if e5, then ...♘g4.

10 ... c6

This, obviously, weakens d6—an effect which, however, should not have had a decisive character. Besides, it is already extremely difficult to indicate a suitable plan of further development for Black.

11 ♗f4 d5

Also unsatisfactory was 11...e5 12 dxe5 dxe5 (in case of retaking with pieces on e5, Black would, after the exchange of queens, finally lose his f-pawn) 13 ♗e3 ±. But by playing 11...♘b6 12 ♗d3 a5 Black could obtain a comparatively steadier position than after the compromising pawn move that he actually chose.

12 ♗d3 a6? *(D)*

Black does not realise that the d6-square has to be protected at all costs. From now on, the dominating position of White's dark-squared bishop will alone prove enough to decide the battle. Thus 12...♘f6 was necessary, heading for e8, with a playable game for Black, although White would find it easy to increase his pressure—for instance, by 13 a5.

13 ♗d6 f5

Or 13...♘f6 14 e5 ♘e8 15 ♗a3 followed by h4, with an easy kingside attack.

14 e5 ♖g8

15 h4

White's overwhelming positional advantage allows him quietly to select the method he prefers for entering Black's inadequately protected fortress. Besides the text move, which inaugurates an irresistible plan (*status quo* on the kingside, and opening of a file on the other wing), he could also start a kingside attack with the spectacular coup 15 ♕g5. However, this would not produce any immediate results after the right answer 15...♗f8 and if 16 ♘e2 (or 16 ♕h4 g5 17 ♕h5 ♘g6) then 16...♖g7 with at least a temporarily sufficient defence.

15 ... b6!

Preparing ...♘f8, which, if played directly, would be a mistake because of 16 ♕g5!. But from now on the queen offer can be met by ...♖a7!.

16 ♘e2 ♘f8

17 a5

Before breaking in, White weakens to a maximum the dark squares

in Black's position; the final section of the game will illustrate the usefulness of this procedure.

17 ... b5
18 g3!

In connection with the next two moves, a prophylactic manoeuvre, by which White prevents once and for all any serious attempt by Black to obtain a counter-attack against his king.

18 ... ♖h8
19 ♔g2 ♔g8
20 ♖h1 ♔f7

The king is no better here than at h7. But as Black is not yet in a mood to resign he has willy-nilly to move something...

21 ♘f4 ♖g8
22 b3

After this, White's strategic plan becomes quite obvious—there is no more defence against c4 in connection with the opening of the b- or c-file.

22 ... ♘h7
23 c4 ♗d7
24 ♖ac1 ♗f8 *(D)*

W

25 ♗e2!

This frees the square d3 for the knight, and at the same time stops the advance of Black's g-pawn—for instance 25...g5? 26 hxg5 ♘xg5 27 ♘xg5+ hxg5 (or 27...♖xg5 28 ♘h3 followed by ♗h5+ and White wins) 28 ♗h5+ ♔g7 29 ♘xe6+ ♗xe6 30 ♕xg5+, followed by mate.

25 ... ♘c8
26 cxd5

It does not often happen that a game is strategically decided long before the first capture, which here signifies not the beginning, but practically the end of the fight.

26 ... cxd5

Or 26...♘xd6 27 dxe6+ ♗xe6 28 ♘xe6 ♔xe6 29 ♖xc6 and wins.

27 ♗xf8

The bishop has done more than his duty and can now quietly disappear.

27 ... ♘xf8
28 ♖c5 ♘a7
29 ♘d3 ♔g7

As a consequence of his 18th-20th moves, the rejoinder ...g5 would obviously be entirely in White's favour.

30 ♖hc1 ♖c8
31 ♖xc8 ♗xc8
32 ♕c3

The dark squares in Black's camp are as many open wounds. No wonder that he decides to try the following desperate diversion.

32 ... ♔h7
33 ♕c5 ♖g7 *(D)*
34 ♕b6!

All very simple, but with deadly effect. The knight, after having been

brought to c5, will undertake the final execution.

34 ... ♕e7
35 ♘c5 g5

At last! But as the following convincingly proves, this attempt to generate counterplay is now perfectly harmless.

36 hxg5 hxg5
37 ♘e1!

In order to meet 37...f4 by 38 ♗g4! and 37...g4 by 38 ♘ed3 followed by ♘f4.

37 ... ♘g6
38 ♘ed3 f4
39 ♖h1+ ♔g8
40 ♗g4 fxg3
41 fxg3

The agglomeration of forces on the g-file is rather picturesque. Instead of the following 'sacrifice', Black could as well resign.

41 ... ♘h4+
42 gxh4 gxh4
43 ♘f2 ♖f7
44 ♘xe6 ♔h7
45 ♕d6 1-0

A strangulation game *à la* Rubinstein or Dr. Tarrasch of the early days.

Game 80
Znosko-Borovsky – Alekhine
Paris 1933
Ruy Lopez

1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 ♗b5 a6
4 ♗a4 ♘f6
5 0-0 d6

Safer is first 5...♗e7 as after the text move White, according to the latest investigations, can obtain an advantage by continuing 6 ♗xc6+ bxc6 7 d4 ♘xe4 8 ♖e1 f5 9 dxe5 d5 10 ♘d4 c5 11 ♘e2, followed by ♘f4.

6 c3 ♗d7
7 ♖e1 ♗e7
8 d4 0-0
9 ♘bd2 ♗e8

This original move (the idea of which is to keep the central position intact by means of ...♘d7 and utilise—after ...f6—the light-squared bishop on the diagonal h5-d1) was introduced by me (after the moves 9...♔h8 10 h3) in my game against L. Steiner in Kecskemet 1927. Afterwards it was baptised (not by me) the 'Kecskemet Variation'. This denomination is illogical, in as much as ...♗e8 is the key-move, not of a 'variation', but of a system!

The present game presents some theoretical interest as it shows that White, even if he is playing only for a draw, cannot, after the text move, obtain absolute equality by liquidating the tension in the centre.

10 ♗xc6 ♗xc6

11 dxe5 dxe5
12 ♘xe5 ♗xe4
13 ♘xe4 ♕xd1!

13...♘xe4 would be a mistake because of 14 ♘d7!.

14 ♘xf6+

After 14 ♖xd1 ♘xe4 there would still be sufficient material left for complicating the fight. After the exchange of the knights White expected to reach a 'dead drawn' position by 14...♗xf6 15 ♖xd1 ♗xe5 16 ♗e3, but ...

14 ... gxf6!

The only way—and an absolutely safe one—to play 'for the win'.

15 ♖xd1 fxe5 *(D)*

W

The endgame position reached is by no means as easy to conduct—especially for the first player—as it appears. Black's plan—which will prove a complete success—is divided into the following parts:

1) Exchange one pair of rooks.

2) Bring the king to e6 where he will be protected from a frontal attack by the e-pawn and can prevent the entrance of the remaining white rook at d7.

3) By operating with the rook on the open g-file and advancing the h-pawn, force the opening of the h-file.

4) After this the white king—and eventually also the bishop—will be kept busy in order to prevent the intrusion of the black rook at h1 or h2.

5) In the meantime Black, by advancing his a- and b-pawns, will sooner or later succeed in opening one file on the queenside.

6) As, at that moment, the white king will still be on the other wing, White will not have sufficient force to prevent the final intrusion of the black rook on his first or second rank.

Granted that if White had, from the beginning, realised that there actually existed a danger of losing this endgame, he probably would, by extremely careful defence, have saved it. But as it happened, Black played with a definite plan, and White only with the conviction that the game must be a draw. And the result was a very instructive series of typical stratagems much more useful for inexperienced players than so-called 'brilliancies'.

16 ♗h6

Certainly not an error but a proof that White has not as yet grasped the spirit of the position. Otherwise he would not have been anxious to 'force' the exchange of one pair of rooks which, as mentioned, is quite welcome to the opponent.

16 ... ♖fd8
17 ♔f1

A more aggressive line starting by 17 g4 would perhaps be advisable. But Black in this case too would maintain opportunities for complicating matters after 17...f6 followed by ...♔f7-e6.

17 ... f5
18 ♖xd8+ ♖xd8
19 g3

19...f4 was a serious threat.

19 ... ♔f7
20 ♗e3 h5
21 ♔e2 ♔e6
22 ♖d1 ♖g8

If now 23 h4, then 23...♖g4 with the strong threat 24...f4. White is therefore practically forced to allow the opening of the h-file.

23 f3 h4
24 ♗f2 hxg3
25 hxg3 ♖h8
26 ♗g1 ♗d6
27 ♔f1

In order to meet 27...e4 by 28 fxe4 fxe4 29 ♔g2.

27 ... ♖g8
28 ♗f2 b5! *(D)*

W

Now Black shows his cards. In the event of White leaving his pawn position on the queenside intact, the attacking plan would be ...c5-c4 followed by ...a5 and ...b4; his next pawn move shortens the procedure.

29 b3? a5
30 ♔g2 a4
31 ♖d2

In case of 31 b4 the intention was 31...♖c8 32 ♗c5 ♖a8! followed by ...♖a6-c6 ∓.

31 ... axb3
32 axb3 ♖a8

Thus Black has reached the position he aimed for when starting this endgame. His positional advantage will now prove sufficient for victory, especially as he can always succeed in forcing the advance of his king by tying the white rook down to the defence of one of the weak pawns.

33 c4

Practically the only attempt, as 33 b4 would prove immediately fatal after 33...♖a1 34 ♖d3 ♖a3.

33 ... ♖a3!
34 c5 ♗e7
35 ♖b2 b4
36 g4

One of the last resources: he tries to create a passed pawn which may become a potent force in case of an exchange of bishops. But Black does not need to hurry with that exchange.

36 ... f4
37 ♔f1 ♖a1+
38 ♔e2 ♖c1

The possibility of 39...♖c3 ties down all White's pieces. White's following rook expedition is therefore merely desperation.

39 ♖a2 ♖c3
40 ♖a7 ♔d7
41 ♖b7 ♖xb3
42 ♖b8 ♖b2+
43 ♔f1 b3
44 ♔g1 ♔c6
45 ♔f1 ♔d5

Of course not 45...♗xc5? 46 ♗xc5 ♔xc5 47 g5, with drawing chances. But a slightly quicker procedure was 45...e4! 46 fxe4 f3.

46 ♖b7 *(D)*

B

46 ... e4!
47 fxe4+ ♔xe4
48 ♖xc7 ♔f3
49 ♖xe7 ♖xf2+
50 ♔e1 b2
51 ♖b7 ♖c2
52 c6!

A nice final joke: 52...♖c1+ 53 ♔d2 b1♕ 54 ♖xb1 ♖xb1 55 c7. But Black had exactly calculated that his other passed pawn would force the win!

52 ... ♔g3!
53 c7 f3
54 ♔d1 ♖xc7
55 ♖xb2 f2
0-1

Game 81
Alekhine – Bogoljubow
Baden-Baden Wch (2) 1934
Slav Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 c6
3 ♘c3 d5
4 e3 e6
5 ♗d3 ♘bd7
6 ♘f3 dxc4
7 ♗xc4 b5
8 ♗d3 a6
9 0-0

Nowadays the leading masters consider that the line 9 e4 c5 10 e5 cxd4 11 ♘xb5 ♘xe5 12 ♘xe5 axb5 13 ♕f3! is decidedly advantageous for White. But in 1934 the 13th move of White in this variation had not yet been sufficiently considered and the Meran Variation's shares stood pretty high. Therefore the quiet move in the text.

9 ... c5
10 a4

Instead of this, 10 ♕e2 was tested experimentally in the games Sämisch-Capablanca, Moscow 1925 and Dr. Vidmar-Bogoljubow, Bled 1931, but brought to the players with White—at least in the opening stages—only disappointment.

10 ... b4
11 ♘e4 ♗b7
12 ♘ed2

After his tame 9th move, White has hardly any other way to complicate matters without disadvantage than this attempt to blockade Black's queenside.

12 ... ♗e7

Black does not need to prevent White's next move as he is sufficiently developed to start almost immediately a counter-action in the centre.

13 a5 0-0
14 ♘c4 ♕c7
15 ♕e2 ♘g4 *(D)*

Black has obtained a fairly good position, but from now on begins to over-estimate his chances. Instead of the adventurous text move, which finally leads to the win of a pawn but allows the intrusion of the white knight at b6, with a powerful effect, he would have done better to simplify the position—for instance, by means of 15...♗e4.

16 e4!

A surprise for Black, who most likely expected only the half-suicidal 16 g3...

16 ... cxd4
17 h3 ♘ge5

To 17...♘gf6 White would have answered 18 ♗g5 ♘c5 19 ♘b6 ♖ad8 20 ♖ac1 ♕b8[1] (these moves are recommended by Bogoljubow in the match book as the best ones for Black) and now not 21 e5? (Bogoljubow) but 21 ♗xf6! gxf6 22 ♖c4 e5 23 ♘h4, with ample positional compensation for the minus pawn.

18 ♘fxe5 ♘xe5
19 ♗f4 ♗d6
20 ♗xe5 ♗xe5
21 ♘b6

The point of the sacrificial combination initiated by the 16th move. From now on the knight will paralyse the whole black queenside.

21 ... ♖a7

In case of 21...♖ad8 White would not have taken the a-pawn at once, but would have first prevented the eventual advance of the d-pawn by playing 22 ♖fd1!, with a distinct positional advantage.

22 ♖ac1 ♕d6

Or 22...♕d8 23 ♕d2! ♗d6 24 f4 ±.

23 ♖c4 f5?

The opening of the e-file leads, owing to Black's multiple pawn weaknesses, to a rapid catastrophe. But also the quieter move 23...♗f4

---

1 Black has a virtually forced win here with 20...♘fxe4 21 ♗xe4 ♗xe4 22 ♖xc5 (22 ♕xe4 ♗xg5 23 ♘xg5 ♘xe4 24 ♖xc7 ♘xg5 gives Black two extra pawns) 22...♕xc5 23 ♗xe7 ♗xf3 24 ♗xf8 ♗xe2 25 ♗xc5 d3 and White will end up the exchange down. Since White obtains reasonable compensation after the move played, 17...♘gf6 seems to be a substantial improvement for Black.

recommended by Bogoljubow is not satisfactory, as after 24 ♖d1 e5 25 ♕e1, White would have regained the pawn, still maintaining strong pressure.

24 exf5 **exf5** *(D)*

25 ♖e1!

The threat to exchange queens at e6, with an easily won endgame, now makes Black desperate, and he tries to create a complicated attacking combination, which, however, is bound to fail because of the uselessness of his a7-rook.

25 ... **♕g6**
26 f3 **♖e8**

In the event of bishop moves Bogoljubow gives the following variations: 26...♗g3 27 ♕e6+ ♔h8 28 ♕xg6 hxg6 29 ♖e6 ♖d8 30 ♖xg6 f4 31 ♖e6, and 26...♗f4 27 ♖xd4 ♕g3 28 ♗c4+ ♔h8 29 ♕e7, with a win for White in both eventualities.

27 f4 **♕g3**
28 fxe5 **♖xe5**
29 ♖c8+!

The refutation.

29 ... **♔f7**
30 ♕h5+

The alternative 30 ♖c7+ was not quite as elegant, but was slightly more rapid; for instance, 30...♔g6 31 ♖xg7+! or 30...♔g8 31 ♗c4+ ♔h8 32 ♖c8+ followed by 33 ♕xe4.

30 ... **g6**
31 ♕xh7+ **♔f6**
32 ♖f8+ **♔g5**
33 h4+ **♔f4**
34 ♕h6+ **g5**
35 ♖xf5+! **♖xf5**
36 ♕d6+ **♔g4**
37 ♗xg4+

and mate in three.

Game 82
Bogoljubow – Alekhine
Pforzheim Wch (9) 1934
Benoni Defence

1 d4 **c5**

I consider the choice of this move (which, as a consequence of my success in this game, became fashionable for a time) as one of my chess sins. Because if a world champion, being human, cannot sometimes help adopting inferior opening moves, he must at least avoid those which he himself considers not quite satisfactory.

2 d5 **e5**
3 e4 **d6**
4 f4

This decidedly premature rejoinder can only be explained by the fact that Bogoljubow had again missed a win in the previous game, and was particularly anxious to make a better show in this one, A natural and good line is, instead, 4 ♘c3 and in case of

4...a6, 5 a4 followed by ♘f3-d2-c4., which would secure White the initiative for a long time.

4 ... exf4

5 ♗xf4 ♕h4+

It was hardly worthwhile to provoke the weakening move g3 at the cost of a development tempo. The simple 5...♘e7, followed by ...♘g6, would keep the control of e5, with a fairly good game.

6 g3

The pawn sacrifice 6 ♗g3 would not be correct because 6...♕xe4+ 7 ♗e2 ♗f5.

6 ... ♕e7

7 ♘c3? *(D)*

It was essential to prevent Black's following move by 7 ♘f3! after which 7...♕xe4+ 8 ♔f2 would be too risky; Black would play instead 7...♗g4 8 ♘c3 a6, followed by ...♘d7, with roughly even chances.

B

7 ... g5!

The strong position of his dark-squared bishop on the long diagonal secures Black, from now on, an easy, pleasant game.

8 ♗e3 ♘d7

9 ♘f3 h6

10 ♕d2

10 ♘b5 ♔d8! would have been aimless.

10 ... ♘gf6

11 0-0-0 ♘g4

12 ♗e2

Also 12 ♗h3 (recommended by Bogoljubow) 12...♘xe3 13 ♕xe3 ♗g7, would not have relieved White of his troubles.

12 ... ♗g7

13 ♖hf1 ♘xe3

It was certainly tempting to add the advantage of the two bishops to that already acquired. But as the knight at g4 was well posted and White's e3-bishop was harmless for the time being, the immediate 13...a6 was possibly even more accurate.

14 ♕xe3 a6

15 ♘g1 b5

16 ♖de1 ♗b7

17 ♘d1

This knight must be brought to f5—the only strong point in White's position.

17 ... 0-0-0

18 ♗g4

As the bishop has not many prospects, its exchange against the dangerous black knight can hardly be criticised.

18 ... ♔b8

19 ♗xd7 ♖xd7

20 ♕d2

Again the natural consequence of the manoeuvre started by his 17th move.

20 ... g4!

Immobilising the knight on g1 and thereby securing the important square e5 for the queen.

21 ♘e3 ♕e5
22 c3 h5
23 ♘f5 ♗f6
24 ♕f4?

The exchange of queens transforms a difficult, but by no means hopeless, position (White could, for instance, try 24 ♔b1 in preparation for 25 ♘h4) into a lost one. It is interesting that Bogoljubow is rather prone to make this mistake, for instance, in the 11th game of the same match, in the position reached after Black's 34th move, namely:

Bogoljubow – Alekhine

W

Here, instead of trying a counterattack, with an uncertain result, by 35 ♕a6, he preferred to exchange queens: 35 ♕c3? ♕xc3 36 ♖xc3 ♖a2 37 ♖c4 ♖b8—and had to resign after a few more desperate moves.

About the same thing, if not in quite such typical form, occurred in the 5th and 22nd games of our first match. But also, strangely enough, my other match opponent, Dr. Euwe, has the same peculiar tendency to exchange queens at inappropriate moments: compare, for instance, the 7th and 24th games of the 1935 match, the second match game and especially the third exhibition game of 1937.

I am mentioning these coincidences by no means in order to put undue blame on my opponents, but merely to remind the average amateur how particularly difficult the question of an opportune queen exchange is, and how much attention this question deserves. If even the leading exponents of our game are often inclined to assess incorrectly their endgame chances, what, really, is to be expected from the 'di minores'?

24 ... ♕xf4+
25 gxf4 ♖dd8! *(D)*

W

Threatening to dislodge the white knight at f5, whose position has been weakened through the obstruction of the f-file by a pawn. Besides his other advantages, Black also has the pawn majority on the opposite

wing to the white king. The game is strategically over.

26 c4

This attempt to find another safe square (c4) for the knight will be refuted by Black's 27th move. But otherwise 26...♗c8 would rapidly prove fatal for White.

26 ... bxc4
27 ♘e3 c3!
28 b3 ♗d4
29 ♘c4 f5!

At last activating the other bishop, after which White could resign.

30 e5 dxe5
31 fxe5 ♗xd5
32 ♖xf5 ♖df8
33 ♖xf8+ ♖xf8
34 e6 ♖e8
35 e7 ♗xc4
36 bxc4 ♗xg1
37 ♖xg1 ♖xe7
38 h3 gxh3
39 ♔c2 h2
40 ♖b1+ ♖b7
41 ♖h1 ♖b2+
42 ♔xc3 ♖xa2
43 ♔d3 ♔c7
44 ♔e4 ♔c6
45 ♔f5 a5
46 ♔g5 a4
0-1

Game 83

Alekhine – Bogoljubow

Bayreuth Wch (16) 1934

Ruy Lopez

1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 ♗b5 a6
4 ♗a4 ♘f6
5 ♗xc6 dxc6

I believe Bogoljubow is right in stating that 5...bxc6 is an even more convincing answer to the rather artificial fifth move of White. As a matter of fact, I chose in this game the exchange variation of the Lopez chiefly because, although playing with the white pieces, I did not cherish any particular ambitions; as a consequence of the match arrangements, I had spent the whole previous night in travelling by car from Munich to Bayreuth and hardly felt fit for intensive mental work.

6 ♘c3 ♗d6
7 d3 c5
8 h3 ♗e6
9 ♗e3 h6
10 a4!

If immediately 10 ♘d2 then the reply is 10...b5 11 a4 c6. But now White 'threatens' to obtain an absolutely safe position by ♘d2-c4.

10 ... c4?!

By opening the position in the centre at this particular moment, Black only increases the activity of the opponent's pieces. A reasonable manoeuvre, instead, would be 10...♘d7 followed by ...♘b8-c6.

11 d4 exd4

If 11...♗b4 then 12 d5 ±.

12 ♗xd4 ♗b4
13 0-0 c6?!

A strange move which weakens b6 without any necessity. He should, instead, castle and would probably obtain a draw after 13...0-0 14 e5 ♗xc3 15 ♗xc3 ♘d5 16 ♕d2, etc.

14 e5 ♘d5

Now practically forced, because 14...♗xc3 15 exf6! ♗xd4 16 ♘xd4 ♕xf6 17 ♘xe6 fxe6 18 ♕h5+!, followed by 19 ♕c5, would have been decidedly to White's advantage.

15 ♘e4 ♘f4 *(D)*

A lesser evil was 15...0-0.

W

16 ♗c5!

The logical method of exploiting Black's weak dark squares.

16 ... ♗xc5
17 ♕xd8+ ♖xd8
18 ♘xc5 b6? *(D)*

A miscalculation. 18...♖b8 was necessary, although after 19 ♘xe6 ♘xe6 (19...fxe6 is no better) 20 a5! (threatening both 21 ♖a4 and 21 ♘d2) his position would remain anything but pleasant.

W

19 ♘b7?

Black's a-pawn was by no means poisoned and its capture would have been rapidly decisive. For instance, 19 ♘xa6 ♗c8 20 ♘c7+ ♔d7 21 ♘a8 (this is the move I had overlooked in my calculations) 21...♘d5 22 a5 (also 22 ♖fd1 is good enough) 22...bxa5 23 ♖xa5 ♗b7 24 ♖a7 ♖b8 25 ♖e1 ! c5 26 e6+, and Black would obviously not succeed in capturing the adventurous knight[1].

After the timid text move Black temporarily recovers.

19 ... ♖d7
20 ♘d6+ ♔e7
21 ♘d4 ♗d5 *(D)*
22 g3!

The value of this bold move—by making which White, after having missed the win at his 19th move,

1 This analysis is not very convincing. For example, instead of 25...c5, Black should play 25...♖hc8 (threatening 26...♔d8), and it is hard to see how White can avoid losing material, since 26 e6+ may be met by 26...♔d6. Alekbine's alternative suggestion of 22 ♖fd1 looks better because although 22...♔e7 virtually forces White to give up the exchange on d5, the resulting position is rather good for him, e.g. 23 ♖xd5 cxd5 24 ♘d4! ♗b7 25 ♘xb6, and with two pawns for the exchange, including the dangerous a-pawn, White has a definite advantage.

W

played only for a draw—has been completely misapprehended by the critics—Dr. Lasker, Nimzowitsch, Bogoljubow, and others. They all claim that White, without any necessity, is taking chances and should now get into difficulties. In reality the defences of the g-pawn would prove unsatisfactory, for example:

1) 22 f3 would he answered by 22...g6! threatening both 23...c5 and 23...f6.

2) after 22 ♘6f5+ ♔f8 Black would again threaten 23...c5.

3) in the event of 22 ♘4f5+, Black would be perfectly entitled to play 22...♔e6! 23 ♘xg7+ ♔xe5 and if 24 ♘de8 then simply 24...♘xg2, with advantage[1].

After the acceptance of the sacrifice by the opponent, White, even by an adequate defence, would have no trouble in obtaining a draw.

22 ... ♘xh3+
23 ♔h2 ♘g5
24 f4 ♘e4
25 ♘6f5+ ♔d8?

Playing for a counter-attack and obviously not taking into consideration White's interesting 27th move. It was necessary to play 25...♔f8, which would be answered by 26 ♘e3 ♔g8 27 f5 ♔h7 28 e6, with ample compensation for the pawn.

26 ♘xg7 f6
27 ♖ad1!

The tempo thus gained (since 27...♖xg7? loses to 28 ♘e6+) secures White a clear, if not yet a decisive, advantage.

27 ... ♔c8
28 ♘df5 *(D)*

B

28 ... fxe5

The alternative 28...♖g8 would also have left White with the better

1 This line contains a tactical oversight. At the end White can win by 25 f4+! ♘xf4 26 ♖ae1+ ♗e4 27 ♖xe4+ ♔xe4 28 ♘f6+ ♔e3 29 ♘f5+ ♔e2 30 ♘g3+ ♔e3 31 ♘xd7. Black should prefer 24...♘e2+ 25 ♔h2 ♗e4, but in any case White can force a draw by 26 ♖ae1 (26 ♖a3!? is an interesting winning attempt) 26...♖d2 27 f4+ ♘xf4 28 ♖xe4+ ♔xe4 29 ♘f6+ ♔e3 30 ♘g4+. In view of this, 22 ♘4f5+ is probably the most accurate move.

endgame chances, for instance 29 ♘h5 fxe5 30 fxe5 ♖e8 31 ♘f6! ♘xf6 32 exf6 ♖e2+ 33 ♔h3 and now either 33...♗e6 34 g4 ♗xf5 35 gxf5, or 33...♗g2+ 34 ♔g4 ♗xf1 35 ♖xd7 ♔xd7 36 f7 ♖e8 37 fxe8♕+ ♔xe8 38 c3! followed by ♘xh6—both to White's advantage.

29 fxe5 ♖g8?

After the previous exchange this move is already a decisive mistake, instead of which 29...♘g5 30 ♖xd5! ♖xd5 (better than 30...cxd5 31 e6 ±) 31 ♘e7+ ♔d7 32 ♘xd5 cxd5 33 ♖f6 ♖g8 still offered chances of salvation.

30 e6!

A short, sharp combination with a promotional point.

30 ... ♖dxg7
31 ♘xg7 ♖xg7
32 ♖xd5

The bishop must be eliminated as it protects f7.

32 ... cxd5
33 ♖f8+ ♔c7
34 ♖f7+ ♔d6

A sad necessity, as after 34...♖xf7 35 exf7 the pawn could not be prevented from promoting.

35 ♖xg7 ♔xe6
36 ♖g6+ ♔e5
37 ♔g2

The black pawns won't run away!

37 ... b5
38 a5 d4
39 ♖xa6 b4
40 ♔f3 c3
41 bxc3 bxc3
42 ♖e6+! ♔xe6
43 ♔xe4 1-0

Game 84

Bogoljubow – Alekhine

Kissingen Wch (17) 1934

Queen's Gambit Accepted

1 d4 d5
2 c4 dxc4
3 ♘f3 ♘f6
4 ♘c3

Unusual, but playable. The logical course, however, is the immediate regaining of the gambit pawn (4 e3 followed by 5 ♗xc4).

4 ... a6
5 e4?

But this is merely an adventure, which could be selected only by a player who had already but little to lose (the state of the match was at that moment 5 to 1 in my favour). Necessary was 5 a4 followed by 6 e3[1].

5 ... b5

Of course! As Black has no really weak spots, the following attacking moves of White are easy to meet.

6 e5 ♘d5
7 ♘g5 e6
8 ♕f3

8 ♕h5 ♕e7 would also prove harmless.

8 ... ♕d7

1 The current view, anno 1996, is that the position after 5 e4 is not at all easy for Black (GB).

9 ♘xd5 exd5
10 a3 *(D)*

It is most certainly unpleasant to be compelled to make such defensivemoves while in material deficit, but the threat of 10...♗b4+ was too strong.

10 ... ♘c6
11 ♗e3 ♘d8

As the following shows, this relieves the queen of the defence of the d-pawn.

12 ♗e2 ♕f5!

Since if 13 ♕xd5?, then 13...♗b7 wins the queen.

13 ♕g3 h6
14 ♘h3

Or 14 ♘f3 ♕g4.

14 ... c6

Prepares Black's following successful escapade.

15 f4 ♕c2!
16 ♕f2 *(D)*

Apparently defending everything, because both 16...♕xb2 17 0-0 and 16...c3 17 b4! would be dangerous for Black. But there is a big surprise coming.

16 ... ♗xa3!

It becomes more and more difficult to find original combinations in chess, especially in the earlier stages of the game. This, I think, is one of them: although the bishop move has been made in analogous positions (for instance, with White's pawn on a2 and his bishop on c1) it has not, to my knowledge, ever before been combined with the idea of trapping the rook after ♖xa3 ♕xb2.

17 0-0

There is no choice, because 17 ♖xa3 ♕xb2 18 ♖a5 ♕b4+ 19 ♗d2 c3 would lose rapidly.

17 ... ♗xb2
18 ♖ae1 ♗f5

The idea of posting this bishop at e4 and then castling queenside is doubtless good enough. But in view of Black's overwhelming material advantage (three pawns!) he had every reason to simplify the position: 18...♗xh3 19 gxh3 ♘e6 and if 20 f5, then the reply 20...♘g5 would probably settle matters even more quickly.

19 g4 ♗e4
20 f5 ♘b7
21 ♘f4

If 21 ♕h4—in order to prevent Black's next move—the answer 21...c5! would be very strong.

21 ... 0-0-0!
22 ♕g3 g5

One of the easiest methods, as White's activity on the f-file will be rapidly paralysed by the still threatening (and unavoidable) counter-attack ...c5.

23 fxg6 fxg6
24 ♗d1 ♕c3
25 ♘e6 ♖de8
26 ♖f6 ♖e7
27 ♖ef1 ♖he8 *(D)*

W

28 ♘f4

After 28 ♘c5 ♘xc5 29 ♖xc6+ ♔b7 30 ♖xc5 the queen sacrifice 30...♕xd4! would end the game.

28 ... ♘d8
29 ♕f2

Or 29 ♘xg6 ♗xg6 30 ♖xg6 c5![1], winning easily.

29 ... ♕a3
30 ♗f3 ♗xf3
31 ♕xf3 g5
32 ♘e2 ♖e6
33 ♖f5 ♕d3
34 h4 ♖g6
35 h5 ♖ge6
36 ♕f2 c5!

At last!

37 ♖f3 ♕c2
38 ♕e1 ♘c6
39 ♖1f2 ♕e4
40 ♘g3 ♕xg4
41 ♔g2 ♖xe5

0-1

Game 85

Bogoljubow – Alekhine

Berlin Wch (25) 1934

Queen's Gambit Accepted

1 d4 d5
2 c4 c6
3 ♘f3 dxc4

An unusual line of play (instead of 3...♘f6), which is certainly not refuted in the present game.

4 e3 ♗g4
5 ♗xc4 e6
6 ♘c3

Bogoljubow thinks that he could get some endgame advantage by continuing 6 ♕b3 ♕b6 7 ♘e5, yet after 7...♗f5 8 ♘c3 ♘f6 9 f3 ♘fd7!, there would not have been much to expect for White.

6 ... ♘d7
7 h3 ♗h5
8 a3

Very slow. But as Black does not plan any action in the centre such

1 30...♕d3 followed by ...♗xd4 is even more convincing.

preventive moves cannot be criticised.

8 ... ♘gf6
9 e4 ♗e7
10 0-0 0-0
11 ♗f4 a5

As White is, for the time being, stronger in the centre, Black undertakes a diversion on the queenside. Its result will be the exchange of a couple of pieces, which will gradually relieve Black's rather cramped position.

12 ♗a2 ♕b6
13 g4 ♗g6
14 ♕e2 ♕a6!
15 ♕e3

The exchange of queens would obviously deprive him of any serious winning hopes.

15 ... b5
16 ♘e5 ♘xe5

It was also possible to play 16...b4 17 ♘xg6 hxg6 18 ♘e2 c5—but I was not particularly enthusiastic about the variation 19 e5 ♘d5 20 ♗xd5 exd5 21 ♗g3, followed by f4; and, besides, I believed in the future of my temporarily encaged light-squared bishop.

17 ♗xe5 b4
18 ♗xf6 ♗xf6
19 ♘e2

After this, Black definitely gets the initiative, which he will keep until the very end. But also after 19 ♘a4 (recommended by Bogoljubow and Nimzowitsch) 19...bxa3 20 bxa3 e5! 21 d5 ♗e7 his prospects would remain satisfactory.

19 ... bxa3
20 bxa3 c5 *(D)*

W

21 ♖ac1 cxd4
22 ♘xd4 ♗xd4!

The exchange of the active f6-bishop at first sight looks surprising, but in reality offers the greatest possibilities of exploiting the weak spots of White's position both in the centre and on the kingside.

23 ♕xd4 ♖fd8
24 ♕c4! ♕b7

The interesting line 24...♕xc4 25 ♖xc4 ♖d3 26 f4! ♖xa3 27 ♖f2 ♖xh3 28 f5 ♖g3+ 29 ♔h2[1] ♖xg4 30 fxg6 ♖xg6 would have brought Black four pawns for the piece, but no real winning chances.

25 f3 h5

Without having a 'hole' for his king, Black cannot dream of launching a serious offensive. At the same time this pawn move is the first step in the emancipation of the g6-bishop.

1 After 29 ♖g2 Black only gets three pawns for the piece.

26 ♕e2 ♖d4
27 ♕e3

Dr. Lasker suggested 27 ♖fd1 instead of this, which, however, after the exchange of rooks, would lead to about the same position as the one we reach after the 33rd move.

27 ... ♖d7

After 27...♖ad8 White would have forced the exchange of queens by playing 28 ♗d5 ♕b2 29 ♖b1.

28 gxh5

White hopes to obtain a counter-attack on the c-file and, in order to win a tempo for doubling rooks, gives some fresh air to the poor bishop. Bogoljubow indicates as a better line 28 ♖fd1 ♖ad8 29 ♖xd7 ♖xd7 30 ♗c4, but after 30...a4! followed by ...h4 the dark squares in his position would remain very weak.

28 ... ♗xh5
29 ♖c5 ♗g6
30 ♖fc1 ♖ad8!
31 ♗c4

He cannot take the a-pawn because of 31...♕b2! with an immediate win[1].

31 ... ♖d1+
32 ♗f1 ♖xc1
33 ♖xc1 a4!

In spite of the fact that this pawn cannot, for the present at least, be supported by the bishop, it is by no means weak, as Black will be perfectly able to protect it by counter-threats.

34 ♖c4 ♖d1
35 ♖b4

Not 35 ♖xa4 owing to 35...♖xf1+ followed by 36...♕b5+.

35 ... ♕c7

Threatening mate in three by 36...♕g3+.

36 f4 ♕d8!
37 ♕f2 *(D)*

37 ♖xa4 would be refuted by 37...♖xf1+ and 38...♕d1+. The end is approaching.

B

37 ... f5!

The resurrection of the bishop, which will not only rescue the a-pawn but also contribute to the exploitation of White's disorganised king position.

38 e5 ♗e8
39 ♖b6 ♕c8
40 ♖d6

Or 40 ♔h2 ♕c3! and Black is winning.

40 ... ♖c1
41 ♕d4

---

1 31...♖d1+ is even simpler, since it wins the bishop on a2 within a couple of moves.

There is no defence left. If for instance 41 ♔h2 then 41...♖c2 42 ♖d2 ♖xd2 43 ♕xd2 ♕c5! winning a pawn and the game.

41 ... ♔h7

In order to answer 42 ♖d8 by 42...♕a6!.

42 ♔f2 ♕c2+

43 ♕d2

Or 43 ♗e2 ♗b5 44 ♕d2 ♗xe2! 45 ♕xe2 ♕c5+, winning[1].

43 ... ♕c5+

44 ♕e3

If 44 ♕d4 then 44...♕xa3 after which White could also resign.

44 ... ♖xf1+

0-1

This game practically finished the match, as it gave me 15 points to my opponent's 10.

Game 86

Alekhine – Em. Lasker

Zurich 1934

Queen's Gambit Declined

1 d4 d5
2 c4 e6
3 ♘c3 ♘f6
4 ♘f3 ♗e7
5 ♗g5 ♘bd7
6 e3 0-0
7 ♖c1 c6
8 ♗d3 dxc4

As mentioned elsewhere, this exchange gives Black more defensive resources if preceded by ...h6.

9 ♗xc4 ♘d5
10 ♗xe7 ♕xe7
11 ♘e4

This move, my 'patent', is as good as the more usual 11 0-0, but probably not better. In both cases White usually gets an advantage in space and need not worry about a possible loss.

11 ... ♘5f6

12 ♘g3 e5

An interesting attempt by Lasker to solve immediately the problem of the c8-bishop. Capablanca regularly played 12...♕b4+ in our match games and, after the exchange of queens, succeeded in drawing, but not without difficulties.

13 0-0 exd4

14 ♘f5

This sharp-looking move is in reality less aggressive than the straightforward 14 exd4 which, on account of the open e-file, would cause Black genuine development trouble—for instance, 14...♘b6 15 ♖e1 ♕d6 16 ♗b3 and, if 16...♗g4 then 17 h3 ♗xf3 18 ♕xf3, offering the d-pawn for a strong attack. After the text move, White will be practically forced to take on d4 with a piece and to allow, as a consequence, an unwelcome simplification.

14 ... ♕d8

15 ♘3xd4

If 15 ♕xd4 or 15 exd4, then 15...♘b6.

---

1 Rather surprisingly, there is no immediate win after 46 ♔g3, so Black should have preferred 43...♖h1 44 ♕c4 ♕b1, which is instantly crushing.

15 ... ♘e5
16 ♗b3 ♗xf5
17 ♘xf5 *(D)*

B

17 ... ♕b6?

Black underestimates, or overlooks, the answer, which gives White a strong and hardly resistible attack. The right move, sufficient for equality, is 17...g6, as played by Flohr against Euwe at Nottingham 1936. Neither 18 ♕d6 (met by 18...♖e8!), nor 18 ♘d6 (met by 18...♕e7) would then prove successful.

18 ♕d6! ♘ed7

Also 18...♘g6 19 ♘h6+ gxh6 20 ♕xf6 ♕d8 21 ♕c3 would be bad enough.

19 ♖fd1 ♖ad8
20 ♕g3 g6
21 ♕g5!

With the main threat 22 ♖d6. Black has already no real defence.

21 ... ♔h8
22 ♘d6 ♔g7
23 e4!

Not only in order to use this pawn as an attacking factor, but also, as will be seen, to free the third rank for the rooks.

23 ... ♘g8
24 ♖d3 f6

24...h6 would have led to an echo-variation, viz., 25 ♘f5+ ♔h7 26 ♘xh6! f6 27 ♘f5! fxg5 28 ♖h3+ and mate follows.

25 ♘f5+ ♔h8 *(D)*

W

26 ♕xg6! 1-0

The spectacular final coup of an attack that could hardly have been conducted in a more effective manner after Black's superficial 17th move.

Game 87
Alekhine – Euwe
Amsterdam Wch (1) 1935
Slav Defence

1 d4 d5
2 c4 c6
3 ♘f3 ♘f6
4 ♘c3 dxc4
5 a4 ♗f5
6 ♘e5

It has been proved in our second match that this aggressive move, which has been fashionable for about ten years, is decidedly less

promising than the natural 6 e3. Black's best answer to the text move is, however, not 6...♘bd7 but 6...e6 and, if 7 ♗g5 ♗b4 8 f3 then 8...h6! (11th match-game, 1937).

6 ... ♘bd7
7 ♘xc4 ♕c7
8 g3 e5
9 dxe5 ♘xe5
10 ♗f4 ♘fd7
11 ♗g2 ♗e6

Black does not need to cede to the white queen the square c2, but—as the first match-game, 1937, convincingly showed—even by the best continuation, 11...f6 12 0-0 ♖d8 13 ♕c1 ♗e6, White obtains a clear positional advantage by continuing 14 ♘e4!.

12 ♘xe5 ♘xe5
13 0-0 ♗e7

Black tries in the following to avoid the weakening of e6 through ...f6 and gradually gets into great difficulty because of the inadequate protection of his knight.

14 ♕c2 *(D)*

B

Threatening either ♘d5 or ♘b5-d4. Black can hardly succeed in keeping his pair of bishops much longer.

14 ... ♖d8

Also 14...♕a5 15 ♘b5! would be advantageous for White.

15 ♖fd1 0-0
16 ♘b5 ♖xd1+

If immediately 16...♕a5 then 17 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 18 ♗xe5 cxb5 19 ♗xb7 ♖d2 20 ♕c6 ±.

17 ♖xd1 ♕a5
18 ♘d4 ♗c8
19 b4!

The spectacular start of a 'minority' attack which will immediately result in White gaining control of the extremely important square d5. The tactical justification of the text move is shown by the following variation: 19...♗xb4 20 ♘b3 ♕c7 21 ♕e4 ♗c3 (21...♗d6 22 ♕d4 wins) 22 ♖c1 ♗b2 (22...f5 23 ♕c2) 23 ♖c2 f5 24 ♕b4!, with a winning position.

19 ... ♕c7
20 b5 c5 *(D)*

W

21 ♘f5 f6

After this, the weakness of the light squares will soon prove fatal. But also after 21...♗f6 22 ♘d6 ♖d8

23 ♘c4!, the realisation of White's positional advantage would have been merely a matter of time.

22 ♘e3 ♗e6
23 ♗d5!

Even more effective than 23 ♘d5.

23 ... ♗xd5
24 ♖xd5 ♕a5

There is no longer a defence left. If, for instance, 24...♖d8 then simply 25 ♗xe5 fxe5 26 ♕f5[1], winning easily.

25 ♘f5 ♕e1+
26 ♔g2 ♗d8
27 ♗xe5 fxe5
28 ♖d7!

Finishing the game by a mating attack.

28 ... ♗f6
29 ♘h6+ ♔h8
30 ♕xc5 1-0

If 30...♖e8, then 31 ♕d5! gxh6 32 ♕f7 ♗e7 33 ♖xe7 followed by mate.

Game 88
Alekhine – Euwe
Amsterdam Wch (3) 1935
French Defence

1 e4 e6
2 d4 d5
3 ♘c3 ♗b4
4 a3

This seldom-played move is certainly better than its reputation and has not been even nearly refuted, either by the actual game or by the subsequent analysis. Another attempt made by me in the ninth game of the same match is less recommendable, in spite of its practical success: 4 ♕g4 (too risky because of the yet unsettled situation on the queenside) 4...♘f6 5 ♕xg7 ♖g8 6 ♕h6 ♖g6 7 ♕e3 ♘xe4? (by playing 7...c5! Black would have obtained a sound initiative) 8 ♗d3! f5 9 ♘e2 c5 10 ♗xe4 fxe4 11 ♕h3! ♘c6 12 ♕xh7 ♕f6 13 ♘f4! cxd4 14 ♘xg6 dxc3 15 b3 ♘e7 16 ♘xe7 ♗xe7 17 h4 ♕f7 18 ♕h8+ ♕f8 19 ♕xf8+ ♔xf8 20 ♗g5 e5 21 f3! exf3 22 gxf3? (after 22 ♗xe7+ ♔xe7 23 gxf3, White would have but little trouble to force the win; the less exact text move leads to an interesting endgame with opposite-coloured bishops) 22...♗a3! 23 f4! ♗f5 24 fxe5 ♗xc2 25 0-0+ ♔g8 26 ♖ac1! ♗xc1 27 ♖xc1 ♗f5 28 ♖xc3 ♖c8 29 ♖f3 ♖f8 30 ♗f6 ♗e4 31 ♖g3+ ♔f7 32 h5! ♖c8 33 ♖g7+ ♔e6 34 h6! d4 35 h7 ♖c1+ 36 ♔f2 ♖c2+ 37 ♔g3 ♗xh7 38 ♖xh7 ♖xa2 39 ♔f4 b5 40 ♔e4 ♖e2+ 41 ♔xd4 1-0.

4 ... ♗xc3+
5 bxc3 dxe4
6 ♕g4 ♘f6

A safer alternative was 6...♔f8 7 ♕xe4 ♘d7, followed by ...♘df6. After the text move the dark squares in Black's position become decidedly weak.

7 ♕xg7 ♖g8

---

1 The immediate 25 ♕f5 is even stronger, as it prevents Black defending with ...♗f6.

8 ♕h6 c5
9 ♘e2 ♘bd7

In order to relieve the queen from the protection of the other knight. If 9...♘c6, White's simplest answer would be 10 dxc5!, but also 10 ♗g5, as played by Romanovsky against Botvinnik in the half-final of the Soviet Championship 1938, would be sufficient for equalising. White lost that game only because he was outclassed in the later stages.

10 ♘g3 *(D)*

B

10 ... ♖g6?

After this loss of time Black's position becomes very difficult. Comparatively better was to play for further complications by 10...♕a5 although White's prospects would remain more favourable even in that case after 11 ♗d2 ♕a4 12 dxc5!.

11 ♕e3 ♘d5

Black must already look for compensation for his e4-pawn, which is now bound to be lost.

12 ♕xe4 ♘xc3
13 ♕d3 ♘d5

Also 13...cxd4 14 ♕xd4 ♕f6 15 ♕xf6 ♘xf6 16 ♗d3 ♖g7 17 ♗d2 would not be satisfactory. As a matter of fact Black's game was hardly to be saved after his inconsiderate tenth move.

14 ♗e2 ♕f6
15 c3 cxd4
16 cxd4 ♘7b6

The exchange of Black's best posted piece by 16...♘f4 17 ♗xf4 ♕xf4 18 0-0 would only have made matters easier for White.

17 ♗h5!

This bishop manoeuvre, consisting of four consecutive moves, forces a practically decisive weakening of Black's pawn structure. The following play on both wings is very instructive and, I believe, typical of my style.

17 ... ♖g7
18 ♗f3

Threatening 19 ♘h5.

18 ... ♕g6
19 ♗e4! f5
20 ♗f3 ♔f8
21 a4!

The diagonal a3-f8 is here the best area of activity for the dark-squared bishop.

21 ... ♖c7
22 0-0 ♗d7
23 ♗a3+ ♔g8
24 a5 ♖c3

This leads to the loss of a pawn without any improvement of Black's position; but also the apparently better move 24...♘c4 would not have saved the day. The continuation would be 25 ♗c5! (stronger than 25 ♘xf5 ♔h8!) 25...♘e5 26 dxe5 ♖xc5 27 ♖fc1 ♖ac8 28 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 29

♕d4! winning at least the a-pawn with an overwhelming position. The remaining part is—in spite of Black's desperate efforts to 'swindle'—easy enough.

25 ♕b1! ♘a4 *(D)*

26 ♗xd5 exd5
27 ♕xb7 ♕c6
28 a6!

If now 28...♕xb7 29 axb7 ♖b8, then 30 ♖fb1 ♘b6 31 ♗b4 followed by ♖xa7 and wins.

28 ... ♘b6
29 ♗c5 f4
30 ♘f5!

More exact than 30 ♘e2 which would also be sufficient.

30 ... ♔h8
31 ♘e7 ♕e6
32 ♗xb6 ♗c6

Mere desperation.

33 ♘xc6 ♖g8

Threatening perpetual check by 34...♖xg2+.

34 ♘e5! ♖g7
35 ♕b8+?

As in so many games of that unfortunate match, I played, after the decision was practically reached, too rapidly—without, however, affecting the ultimate result in this particular case. Instead, 35 ♗xa7! would force Black to resign immediately.

35 ... ♖c8
36 ♘g6+ ♖xg6
37 ♕xf4 ♕xb6
38 ♕e5+ ♖g7
39 ♕xd5 ♖d8
40 ♕e5 ♕xd4
41 ♕xd4 1-0

Game 89
Euwe – Alekhine
The Hague Wch (4) 1935
Grünfeld Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 g6
3 ♘c3 d5
4 ♕b3

The praxis of the last two to three years has proved that this queen move is less effective than 4 ♗f4 ♗g7 5 e3 0-0 6 ♕b3 c6 7 ♘f3, with an unquestionable advantage in space.

4 ... dxc4
5 ♕xc4 ♗g7

Also playable is 5...♗e6 6 ♕b5+ ♘c6 7 ♘f3 but now not 7...♖b8 (as in the second match game, 1935) but 7...♘d5!, with fairly good counterchances.

6 ♗f4 c6
7 ♖d1?

An artificial and unnecessary move, instead of which 7 ♘f3 0-0 8 e4 was indicated. Black can now obtain at least an even game.

7 ... ♕a5

Threatening 8...♗e6.

8 ♗d2 b5?

There are some moves of mine in the first Euwe match which I actually simply cannot understand. Neither before nor since have I played such decidedly unsound chess, especially in the openings! Here, for instance, the spoiling of the pawn structure on the queenside cannot even be excused by the lack of other promising continuations, as the simple 8...♕b6 9 ♗c1 ♗f5 followed by ...0-0 would have secured Black a distinct advantage in development. I am adding, however, the present game to this collection, in spite of the poor opening strategy of both sides, because of the particularly interesting tactical complications of the well-played middle-game.

9 ♕b3 b4

At least this has the advantage of consistency; Black prevents e4—but at what a price!

10 ♘a4 ♘a6

11 e3 ♗e6

Black could also play immediately 11...0-0 since 12 ♗xa6 ♗xa6 13 ♕xb4 (or 13 ♗xb4 ♕b5) 13...♕d5, would be in his favour. But in that case he would not like the answer 12 ♗c4.

12 ♕c2 0-0

13 b3

If instead 13 ♕xc6 then 13...♘c7 threatening 14...♗d7 or 14...♗xa2.

13 ... ♖ab8 *(D)*

W

14 ♗d3

Because of his slightly belated development White decides not to take the c-pawn, and rightly so; after 14 ♕xc6 ♗c8! the open c-file would become a dangerous weapon in Black's hands, for instance, 15 ♘f3 ♗b7 16 ♕c2 ♖fc8 17 ♕b1 ♘e4, to be eventually followed by ...♘c3.

14 ... ♖fc8

15 ♘e2

Obviously underestimating the value of the following pawn offer; otherwise he would have continued with 15 ♗xa6 ♕xa6 16 ♘c5 ♕b5 17 ♘f3! (but not 17 ♘xe6 fxe6 followed by ...e5, with a good game for Black) 17...♘d7 18 ♖c1, with the better endgame prospects[1].

1 After 18...♗f5 19 ♕c4 ♘xc5 20 ♕xc5 (20 ♕xb5 cxb5 21 ♖xc5 ♖xc5 22 dxc5 a5, followed by ...♖c8, is good for Black as ♖c1 can always be met by ...♗b2) 20...♕a6 there is no endgame, and Black is slightly better as the white king is pinned down in the centre. It seems to me that White cannot claim any advantage after 14...♖fc8.

This possibility clearly proves the unsoundness of Black's 8th and 10th moves.

15 ... c5!

An absolutely correct combination which would have given, even against White's best defence, easy equality. But as a matter of fact my opponent, fortunately for me, underestimated the danger.

16 ♗xa6 ♕xa6

17 ♘xc5 ♕b5

18 ♘f4?

Permitting Black to open the centre and thus set the opponent's house alight. The correct defence was 18 e4! ♘d7 19 ♗e3 ♗xd4 20 ♘xd4 ♕xc5 21 ♕xc5 ♘xc5, with a probable draw.

18 ... ♗g4!

19 f3

If 19 ♖c1, the reply 19...e5 would also have been strong.

19 ... e5!

20 ♘fd3

Equally unsatisfactory was 20 fxg4 exf4 ∓.

20 ... exd4!

A pretty and exactly calculated piece offer, which White is practically forced to accept, since both 21 exd4 ♘d5! and 21 e4 ♘d7 would have left him even fewer chances of salvation.

21 fxg4 dxe3 *(D)*

22 ♗xe3

A comparatively more difficult variation for Black was 22 ♗xb4 ♘d5 23 a3 a5 24 ♕c4! axb4! 25 ♕xd5 bxa3 26 ♖f1 (or 26 b4 ♗c3+, followed by ...♗xb4) 26...a2! 27 ♖xf7[1] ♗c3+, followed by 28...♖xc5 and wins.

22 ... ♘xg4

23 ♗f4

Anything else was equally unsatisfactory, for instance 23 ♗g1 ♗c3+ 24 ♔f1 ♖b6 or 23 ♗f2 ♗c3+ 24 ♔f1 ♖c6! 25 ♔g1 ♘xf2 26 ♕xf2 ♖d8, with a winning position for Black[2].

23 ... ♗c3+

24 ♖d2

Obviously forced.

24 ... ♖xc5!

25 ♘xc5 *(D)*

If 25 ♗xb8 then 25...♕e8+! wins immediately.

25 ... ♕xc5

---

1 27 ♔e2! is a much better defence, when Black has nothing clear-cut.

2 The second variation can be improved by 25 a4!, which unpins the d3-knight with gain of tempo. After 25...♕a5 26 ♘d7 (26 ♘e4 ♕f5 27 ♕e2 ♖e8 28 h3 ♘xf2 29 ♘dxf2 is also possible, and White is certainly no worse) 26...♖d8 27 ♕e2 Black has yet to justify his piece sacrifice.

B

At last Black has enough from all the complications and selects the clearest variation which secures him a slight material advantage (queen and pawn against two rooks) and a persisting attack. A shorter way to victory was, however, 25...♖e8+! with the following main variation: 26 ♘e4 f5 27 ♔d1 ♖xe4 28 ♖d8+ ♔f7 29 ♗g5 f4! 30 ♔c1 ♖e2 31 ♕d3 ♕xg5! and wins[1].

26 ♗xb8 ♕e7+
27 ♔d1 ♘e3+
28 ♔c1 ♘xc2
29 ♖xc2 h5!

This is a necessary preparation for ...♗g7.

30 ♖d1 ♗g7
31 h3 a5

Black's chief trumps which, with correct play, must guarantee the win, are the permanent insecurity of White's king and the unprotected position of the bishop, whose efforts to find a safe square are bound to fail. The game remains lively and instructive until the very end.

32 ♗f4 ♕e4
33 ♗c7 ♕e3+
34 ♔b1 a4!

By this break-up, which could not in the long run be prevented, Black wins perforce at least the exchange.

35 bxa4 b3
36 axb3 ♕xb3+
37 ♔c1 ♗h6+
38 ♖dd2 ♕xa4
39 ♗e5

Instead, 39 ♔d1 would have marginally prolonged the game, since Black would be compelled first to force the white king back to the queenside by means of 39...♗xd2 40 ♔xd2 ♕e4! 41 ♔c1 ♕e1+, and only after that decide the game on the other wing through a gradual advance of his pawns supported by the king.

39 ... ♔h7
40 ♗c3 ♕b5! *(D)*

Preventing 41 ♔d1.

W

1 This line includes a small oversight, in that White can draw by 31 ♖d7+! giving perpetual check. Of course, Black should play 30...♕xg5 31 ♕xe4 ♕xd8 32 ♕xf4+ ♘f6 with a winning position.

41 ♗d4

White no longer has satisfactory moves left. If, for instance, 41 ♗a1 then 41...♕f1+ followed by ...♗g7+.

41	**...**	**♕e2!**
42	**g4**	**♕e1+**
43	**♔b2**	**♗xd2**
44	**♖c8**	**♗c1+!**

0-1

Game 90

Alekhine – Euwe

Utrecht Wch (7) 1935

French Defence

1	**e4**	**e6**
2	**d4**	**d5**
3	**♘c3**	**♗b4**
4	**♘e2**	**dxe4**
5	**a3**	**♗e7**

5...♗xc3+ 6 ♘xc3 ♘c6 is even more convincing, with at least an equal game. This possibility practically refutes White's fourth move.

6	**♘xe4**	**♘c6**

Here, too, ...♘c6 is good enough. In the fifth game of this match I tried 7 ♗e3 (if 7 c3, then 7...e5), but did not obtain more than equality after 7...♘f6 8 ♘2c3 0-0 (already threatening ...♘xe4 followed by ...f5). Therefore, in the present game I decided to try the following paradoxical-looking pawn move, the obvious idea being to combine the fianchetto development of the f1-bishop with a possible pawn attack on the kingside.

7	**g4!?**	**b6**

This is not even an attempt at a refutation and White soon obtains the kind of position he was aiming at. True enough, the most natural answer 7...e5 would also not be convincing, because of 8 d5 ♘d4 9 ♘2c3 (but not 9 ♘xd4 ♕xd5! ∓) and if 9...f5, then 10 gxf5 ♗xf5 11 ♗e3, with fair fighting chances for White. However, 7...♘f6! 8 ♘xf6+ ♗xf6 9 ♗e3 ♕d5 would have secured for Black a comfortable development of all his forces and thus prove the inefficacy of White's seventh move.

8	**♗g2**	**♗b7**
9	**c3**	**♘f6**
10	**♘2g3**	**0-0?**

Even if it could be proved that Black can find an adequate defence against the following kingside attack, the text move should still be condemned as endangering Black's game without any profit or necessity. After the simple 10...♕d7, followed by ...0-0-0, White would remain with an unimportant advantage in space and without any real attacking prospects.

11	**g5**	**♘xe4**
12	**♘xe4**	**♔h8**

Preparing for ...f5, which White prevents by his following strong move.

13 ♕h5!

If now 13...f5 then of course 14 g6 with deadly effect.

13	**...**	**♕e8** *(D)*

Threatening again ...f5 but allowing the following promising combination. 13...♘a5 was safer, as the variation 14 b4 ♘b3 15 ♘f6 gxf6 16 ♗xb7 f5! would not be dangerous for Black. In that case White would

increase his pressure by finishing his development—14 ♗f4 eventually followed by 0-0-0 ±.

14 ♘f6!

A correct pawn offer securing White a strong and most likely irresistible offensive.

14 ... ♗xf6

The alternative was 14...gxf6 15 gxf6 ♘a5 (if 15...♗xf6?, then 16 ♗e4 followed by mate) 16 fxe7 ♕xe7 17 ♗xb7 ♘xb7 18 ♗g5 f6 19 ♗h6 ♖g8 20 0-0-0 ♘d6 21 ♖he1, with a clear advantage for White.

15 gxf6 gxf6

16 ♕h4 ♕d8

Forced, since 16...♕e7 would lose a piece after 17 ♗e4!.

17 ♗f4!

This continuation of the attack, the point of which is the bishop retreat on the next move, was by no means easy to find. Black's comparatively best chance was to give back his extra pawn by playing 17...f5—although after 18 ♕xd8 ♖axd8 19 ♗xc7 ♖d7 20 ♗f4 ♘a5 21 ♖g1!, White's endgame advantage would be quite evident.

17 ... e5

18 ♗g3! f5

There is hardly anything better. If, for instance, 18...exd4, then 19 0-0-0! with a straightforward attack.

19 dxe5

Here, too, 19 0-0-0 was strong. But the simple recovery of the sacrificed material is, bearing in mind White's powerful attacking possibilities, sufficiently convincing.

19 ... ♖g8

20 ♗f3?

But this inexact move permits Black to launch a saving counter-attack. Instead 20 ♕h3! was practically decisive, since 20...♕d3 would be refuted by 21 ♗h4! and 20...♖g4 by 21 0-0!, threatening f3, and winning material with a persisting attack.

20 ... ♕d3!

An ingenious resource but, as the following shows, Black, in adopting it, did not actually realise how many interesting possibilities it opened to him.

21 ♗e2 *(D)*

White has nothing better, since 21 ♗xc6? would be fatal, because of 21...♗a6! 22 ♕h5 ♖g4!, etc.

21 ... ♕e4?

Leading to a lost endgame. From an objective point of view, it is certainly a pity that Black avoids the fantastic complications arising after 21...♕c2!—a move which with correct play would have secured him a draw. Here is the main variation as well as some minor possibilities: 22 ♕f6+ ♖g7 23 ♖g1! (the plausible 23

B

e6 is not good because of 23...♖e8! 24 ♖g1! ♗a6!! {not 24...♖xe6 25 ♗e5! and wins} 25 ♗xa6 ♖xe6+ 26 ♗e5 ♕e4+ 27 ♔f1 ♕xe5, with advantage for Black) 23...♕xb2 24 e6!! ♕xa1+ 25 ♗d1 ♘d4!! (but not 25...♖d8 nor 25...♕b1 because of the answer 26 ♗d6!! and White wins[1]) 26 ♕xg7+! (there are no winning chances for White after 26 ♕xd4 f6! 27 ♕xf6 ♗f3 28 ♔d2 ♕a2+ 29 ♗c2 ♗e4) 26...♔xg7 27 ♗h4+ ♔h6! (instead 27...♔f8 loses: 28 e7+ ♔e8 29 ♖g8+ ♔d7 30 ♖d8+ and wins) 28 ♗g5+, followed by 29 ♗f4+, with a draw by perpetual check.

22 ♕xe4 fxe4
23 ♗h4!

The winning move, probably overlooked by Black when he played 21...♕e4. After 23 0-0-0 he would have obtained excellent drawing chances by continuing 23...♖xg3! 24 hxg3 ♘xe5.

23 ... h6
24 0-0-0 ♖ae8
25 ♗f6+ ♔h7
26 f4! exf3
27 ♗xf3

Of course much stronger than winning the exchange for a pawn by 27 ♗d3+. The white bishops are now dominating the board and Black is unable to prevent the intrusion of the d1-rook onto his second rank.

27 ... ♘a5

The exchange of bishops, which possibly would have saved the battle in the early middlegame, does not bring any relief at this stage.

28 ♗xb7 ♘xb7
29 ♖d7 *(D)*

The beginning of the execution.

B

29 ... ♘c5
30 ♖xf7+ ♔g6
31 ♖xc7 ♘d3+
32 ♔b1

Also the simple 32 ♔c2 was good enough.

32 ... ♔f5

---

1 In fact 25...♕b1 26 ♗d6 ♕e4+ leads to a draw, because 27 ♔d2? ♖ag8 28 exf7 fails to 28...♕d5+ and 29...♕xf7.

33 ♖d1 ♘xe5
34 ♖f1+ ♔e4
35 ♖xa7 ♘c4

Or 35...♘f3 36 ♖a4+ ♔e3 37 ♗d4+. Black's game is quite hopeless.

36 ♖d7 ♔e3
37 ♖e1+ ♔f3
38 ♖xe8 ♖xe8
39 ♖d4 ♘e3
40 ♖h4 ♘f5
41 ♖b4 1-0

Game 91
Ahues – Alekhine
Bad Nauheim 1936
Queen's Gambit Accepted

1 d4 d5
2 c4 dxc4
3 ♘f3 a6

This move, in connection with the next, was introduced by me in the third game of the 1934 Match with Bogoljubow. Even if it can be convincingly proved (which has not been done) that the bishop development at g4 is not good for Black, the text move will still be used by those who prefer to avoid the variations starting with White's ♕a4+.

4 a4

White has no reason to prevent ...b5, since the variation 4 e3 b5 5 a4 ♗b7 6 axb5 axb5 7 ♖xa8 ♗xa8 8 b3 is to his advantage. The text move, besides losing time, also weakens b4 and, therefore, has to be decidedly condemned. The two following positional fights may give an idea as to Black's possibilities after 4 e3 ♗g4. The character of the ensuing conflict depends on whether White leaves the pawn structure intact in the centre (as in I), or tries to solve the problem of the centre in a dynamic way (as in II).

I. Zinner-Alekhine, Podebrad 1936.

4 e3 ♗g4 5 ♗xc4 e6 6 h3 ♗h5 7 ♕b3 ♖a7 (or 7...♗xf3 8 gxf3 b5) 8 a4 ♘c6 9 ♗d2 ♘f6 10 ♗c3 ♘d5 11 ♘bd2 ♘xc3 12 bxc3 ♘a5 13 ♕a2 ♘xc4 14 ♕xc4 ♗d6 15 ♖b1 0-0 16 0-0 ♗g6 17 ♖b2 c6 18 ♕b3 b5 19 c4 ♖b7 20 ♖a1 ♖b8 21 ♖aa2 ♗c7 22 ♕d1 ♗d3! 23 cxb5 cxb5 24 ♘e1 ♗g6 25 ♕e2 ♕d6 26 ♘df3 b4! 27 ♘d3 ♗e4 28 ♘c5 ♗d5 29 ♘b3 ♖fc8 30 ♖a1 a5 31 ♖c1 ♗b6 32 ♖bc2 ♖xc2 33 ♕xc2 ♕d7! 34 e4 ♗xb3 35 ♕xb3 ♖c8 36 ♖c4 ♖xc4 37 ♕xc4 h6 38 d5 ♕xa4 39 ♕c8+ ♔h7 40 ♕b7 ♗d8! 41 ♕xf7 ♕a1+ 42 ♔h2 ♕f6 43 ♕d7 b3 44 h4 b2 45 ♕b5 exd5 0-1.

II. Aretsson-Alekhine, Orebro 1935. (The six first moves as in the previous game):

7 0-0 ♘f6 8 ♘c3 ♘c6 9 ♗e2 ♗d6 10 b3 (better than a3, as played in an analogous position by Bogoljubow in the game mentioned above) 10...0-0 11 ♗b2 ♕e7 12 e4 ♗xf3 13 ♗xf3 ♖ad8 14 ♘e2 ♗c5 15 ♖c1 ♗b6 16 ♕c2 e5 17 d5 ♘b4 18 ♗a3! a5 19 ♕c4 ♘e8 20 ♖fd1 ♕h4! 21 ♗xb4 ♕xf2+ 22 ♔h2 axb4 23 ♕xb4 ♘d6 24 a4 ♖a8 25 ♖f1 ♕h4 26 ♕d2 g6 27 g3 ♕e7 28 ♘c3 f5 29 exf5 gxf5 30 ♖ce1 ♕g7 31 b4 e4 32 ♗d1 ♘c4 33 ♕c1 ♘e5 34 ♗e2 c6!

35 dxc6 bxc6 36 ♖d1 ♔h8 37 a5 ♖g8 38 ♕f4 ♗c7 39 ♕f2 ♘d3! 0-1.

4 ... ♘f6
5 e3 ♗g4
6 ♗xc4 e6
7 ♘c3 ♘c6

As one may see from the above games, this knight development belongs to the system inaugurated by ...♗g4. In this particular position it is more appropriate than ever, Black having at his disposal, if needed, the square b4.

8 ♗e2 ♗b4
9 0-0 0-0
10 ♘d2

White is over-anxious to simplify the position and allows, to his disadvantage, the following advance of Black's e-pawn. The quieter 10 ♗d2 would probably leave him with more equalising chances.

10 ... ♗xe2
11 ♘xe2 e5!

As the opening of the central file through dxe5 would be here, or on the following moves, to the benefit of the better-developed party, White will be practically compelled to allow a further advance of this pawn, after which the activity of his bishop will be reduced to a minimum.

12 ♘f3 ♖e8
13 ♗d2 ♗d6

The exchange of the opponent's poorest piece would be, of course, a grave strategic error.

14 ♘g3 e4
15 ♘e1 ♗xg3!

After this exchange, the immobilised pawn mass on the kingside will, in the long run, be unable to prevent Black adopting the attacking formation ...♘g4 and ...♕f5 (or ...♕h5).

The little counter-demonstration that White will now undertake on the open c-file can be parried without effort or loss of time.

16 hxg3 ♘e7 *(D)*

Full control of d5 is the key to the situation.

W

17 b4 ♕d7
18 ♘c2 ♘ed5
19 ♘a3 b5!

Confining the mobility of the hostile knight.

20 axb5 axb5
21 ♕e2 c6

This pawn could eventually become weak—had not Black already prepared a plan for an irresistible mating attack!

22 ♘c2 ♕f5

White cannot even answer this move by f3—his knight being unprotected—and he has nothing better than to prepare a desperate king's flight.

23 ♖fc1 h6

A useful precaution—especially as White has such a small choice of moves.

24 ♖a5 ♖ac8

25 ♘a1

The knight dreams of eventually reaching a more suitable square (c5), but it is much, much too late!

25 ... ♘g4

This sets up the powerful threat 26...♕h5.

26 ♔f1 ♖e6! *(D)*

A similar stratagem to that in the Dresden game against Bogoljubow (game 92): Black gives up a useless unit in order to gain the f-pawn and thus denude the enemy's king.

W

27 ♖xb5 ♖f6

28 ♖bc5 ♘xf2

29 ♔e1

Or 29 ♔g1 ♘g4 followed by ...♕h5 and mate.

29 ... ♘d3+

30 ♔d1 ♕f1+

31 ♗e1 ♖f2!

Expecting 32 ♕xf1, after which I would have the pleasant choice between the knight mates at b2 and e3.

0-1

Game 92

Alekhine – Bogoljubow

Dresden 1936

Three Knights' Game

1 e4 e5

2 ♘f3 ♘c6

3 ♘c3 g6

Playing at his best, Bogoljubow would hardly have selected such an obviously inferior defence, since he knows very well how to play the Four Knights' game with Black (see, for instance, his game against Maroczy, London 1922).

4 d4 exd4

5 ♘d5! ♗g7

6 ♗g5 ♘ce7

This unnatural looking move is already the only one, since after 6...f6 7 ♗f4 d6 the diagonal a2-g8 would become fatally weak.

7 e5

White has the choice between this only apparently more aggressive move—which in fact leads to a favourable endgame—and the simple 7 ♘xd4 with excellent middlegame prospects after 7...c6 8 ♘xe7 ♘xe7 9 ♕d2, followed by 0-0. Possibly this way was the more logical one.

7 ... h6!

Otherwise 8 ♘f6+ would be too strong.

8 ♗xe7

The sacrifice of a pawn by 8 ♗f6 ♗xf6 9 ♘xf6+ ♘xf6 10 exf6 ♘g8 followed by ...♕xf6 would not have paid.

8 ... ♘xe7

9 ♕xd4 ♘xd5
10 ♕xd5

White's advantage in space begins to become alarming, so Black must try to exchange queens as quickly as possible in order to avoid an unanswerable kingside attack.

10 ... c6

If 10...d6 then 11 0-0-0 ♗e6 12 ♕b5+! ±.

11 ♕d6 ♗f8
12 ♕d4 ♕b6 *(D)*

W

13 0-0-0!

By offering his f-pawn, White wins an important tempo for his development. Black rightly refuses this offer, for after 13...♗c5 14 ♕c3 ♗xf2 15 ♘d4!, his position would have rapidly gone to pieces[1].

13 ... ♕xd4
14 ♘xd4

An interesting and difficult moment. White decides not to prevent the opening of the centre followed by the emancipation of the c8-bishop, for he is entitled to expect appreciable profits from the two central files dominated by his rooks. The consequences of the alternative 14 ♖xd4 ♗g7 15 ♖e4 b5, followed by ...♗b7 and ...0-0-0, were, to say the least, not evident, especially as it would be Black who would have the initiative for opening the position.

14 ... d5

Almost forced, because White, in addition to all the other unpleasantness, threatened f4-f5.

15 exd6 ♗xd6
16 ♗c4 0-0
17 ♖he1

The white pieces are beautifully placed while Black's c8-bishop is still looking for a suitable square. Its next sally is the best proof of the difficulties he has to deal with.

17 ... ♗g4
18 f3 ♗c8
19 g3

Holding the square f4 and now threatening 20 ♘xc6.

19 ... ♗c5
20 ♘b3

The beginning of an interesting knight manoeuvre which aims to strengthen the pressure against f7. Also good was 20 g4 followed by h4-h5.

20 ... ♗b6
21 ♘d2

If 21 ♖e7 then 21...♔g7 and eventually ...♔f6.

---

1 The following line is even more convincing: 14 ♕f4 ♗xf2 15 ♘d4 ♗xd4 16 ♖xd4 0-0 17 ♖d6, followed by ♗c4 and ♖f1, with a crushing attack for White.

21 ... ♗h3
22 ♘e4 ♗a5

In order to save the b-pawn by ...b5.

23 c3 ♖ad8
24 ♘d6

If 24 ♖xd8 the answer would not be 24...♖xd8 25 ♘f2! followed by 26 ♖e7 ± but 24...♗xd8 25 ♘d6 b5 26 ♗b3 ♗f6 with equality.

24 ... b5
25 ♗b3 *(D)*

B

25 ... ♖d7

Protects, for the time being, all the vulnerable points. Speaking in general, one must admit that, after his extravagant opening, Bogoljubow has defended his position most carefully and still preserves fighting chances[1].

26 ♘e8

A sound alternative was 26 ♘e4 ♖xd1+ 27 ♖xd1 even though Black would still have a temporary defence by 27...♔g7. The text manoeuvre is linked with a temporary sacrifice of a pawn and leads, with the best defence, to at least the capture of Black's f-pawn.

26 ... ♖xd1+
27 ♔xd1 ♗g2

This counter-thrust is Black's best chance. After, for instance, 27...♗d8 White would increase the pressure without much trouble by 28 ♘d6 ♗f6 29 ♔e2.

28 ♘f6+

White realises that the black king will be at least no better at h8 than at g8, and therefore takes the opportunity to gain time on the clock. If Black, on his 29th move, had played ...♔g8, I intended to continue as in the actual game, 30 ♔c2 ♗xf3 31 ♘d6, leading to variations examined further on.

28 ... ♔g7
29 ♘e8+ ♔h8
30 ♔c2! ♗xf3
31 ♘d6 *(D)*
31 ... ♗d5?

After Black's stubborn defence so far, this misappreciation of the position seems incredible, as by the further exchange, White obtains various advantages:

1) The elimination of Black's pair of bishops;

2) The pawn majority on the queenside;

---

1 Alekhine fails to mention 25...♗c7, after which it is hard to see how White can maintain any advantage, for example 26 ♘xf7 ♖xf7 27 ♖xd8+ (27 ♖e7 ♖d5! 28 ♖xf7 ♔xf7 29 ♗xd5+ cxd5 30 ♖xd5 a6 is not at all clear) 27...♗xd8 28 ♖e8+ ♔g7 29 ♖xd8 ♖xf3 30 ♖g8+ ♔h7 31 ♖a8 ♖f1+ 32 ♔d2 ♖f2+ with equality.

B

3) The central square d4 for his knight;

4) Play against Black's isolated d-pawn;

5) The possibility of penetrating with his rook via e7 or e8.

Any one of these considerations taken separately should have deterred Bogoljubow from selecting the text move, and, in fact, he could have set his opponent a by no means easy task by playing 31...♔g7. My intention was to continue with 32 ♖e7 and, if 32...♗b6 (best), then 33 ♗xf7 ♗c5 34 ♗b3+ ♔h8 35 ♘f7+ ♔g7 (but not 35...♔h7 36 ♘g5+, followed by mate) 36 ♖b7! ♗e4 37 ♔d1 ♔f6 38 ♘xh6 ♖d8 39 ♔e2, and Black would not have found sufficient compensation for the minus pawn. Still, it would have been some kind of a fight, whereas what now happens merely reminds one of precisely executed butcher's work!

32 ♗xd5 cxd5
33 ♘xb5 ♗b6
34 ♔d3 ♔g7
35 b4

White's game now plays itself.

35 ... ♖d8
36 a4 a6
37 ♘d4 ♖d6
38 ♖e8 h5

If instead 38...♖f6, White would first play a5.

39 ♖a8 ♖f6 *(D)*

A desperate trap. Needless to say, anything else would be equally hopeless.

W

40 ♖xa6!

White walks into the trap and proves that this is the quickest way to win!

40 ... ♗xd4
41 ♖xf6 ♗xf6
42 a5

The extra bishop is unable to stop the two passed pawns. If, for instance, 42...♗d8, then simply 43 ♔d4, followed by ♔xd5 and ♔c6.

42 ... ♗e5
43 b5! h4

Or 43...♗c7 44 b6 ♗d8 45 ♔d4.

44 a6 1-0

Settles the matter, for 44...hxg3 would be answered by 45 hxg3, and if 44...♗xg3 then 45 a7.

Game 93
Alekhine – Frydman
Podebrad 1936
Sicilian Defence

1 e4 c5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 d4 cxd4
4 ♘xd4 ♘f6
5 ♘c3 d6
6 ♗g5

The idea of this move is to eliminate the possibility of ...g6 and ...♗g7 (the Dragon Variation), and it practically forces Black to adopt the so-called Scheveningen Variation[1], one of the characteristics of which is the exposed—although quite defensible—d-pawn on the open file. White would be mistaken, however, if he thought that from now on he could count on a serious opening advantage; for my part, in spite of a 100% success with the text move, I am very far from that illusion.

6 ... e6
7 ♘b3

This harmless removal, typical of many variations in the Sicilian, contains—as, amongst others, the present game shows—more venom than one would suppose.

7 ... ♗e7
8 ♕d2

This attempt to enforce the pressure against d6 should be met by 8...h6! and, only after 9 ♗h4, 9...0-0, with the threat 10...♘xe4, equalising easily. White should, therefore, play 9 ♗e3 (instead of 9 ♗h4), but Black, anyhow, would not for the time being have to worry about his d-pawn.

8 ... 0-0?

Strangely enough, this very plausible answer is already a decisive mistake, for from now on Black will only have the choice between different evils.

9 0-0-0

Threatening the simple 10 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 (10...gxf6 would allow a winning kingside attack starting with 11 ♕h6) 11 ♕xd6. Therefore, Black has no time either for the preventative ...a6 or for the simplifying ...h6.

9 ... ♘a5

Hoping, after 10 ♗xf6 ♘xb3+ 11 axb3 ♗xf6 12 ♕xd6, to obtain a counter-attack by 12...♕a5; but the following strong white move stops this plan.

10 ♔b1! ♘xb3
11 axb3 *(D)*

The point of the 10th move is that Black can no longer play 11...♕a5 because of 12 ♘d5, and, likewise, 11...♕b6 would have led to a rapid debacle after 12 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 13 ♕xd6 ♕xf2 14 e5 ♗g5 15 h4! ♗f4 16 ♗b5! threatening 17 ♕xf8+! with mate in two. His next move is

1 Of course, in modern nomenclature this move constitutes the Richter-Rauzer Attack, the name 'Scheveningen' being reserved for 1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 e6 (GB).

therefore the only way, if not to save the day, at least to prolong the fight.

B

11	...	♘e8
12	♗xe7	♕xe7
13	♘b5	♗d7

Expecting, not without some reason, that White's doubled pawns will cause him some technical trouble in finding the winning procedure.

14	♘xd6	♘xd6
15	♕xd6	♕xd6
16	♖xd6	♗c6
17	f3	♖fd8
18	♖xd8+	♖xd8
19	♗d3	

The ensuing endgame is highly instructive. In the first place, White intends to take full advantage of the trumps he already possesses: the open a-file and especially the dominating spot a5.

19	...	e5

Gaining some space in the centre and intending eventually to use the rook on the third rank.

20	♔c1	♔f8
21	♔d2	♔e7
22	♖a1	a6
23	♔e3	♖d6
24	♖a5!	

Just at the right moment, as the obligation to protect the e-pawn will prevent Black from undertaking the intended diversion with the rook.

24	...	f6
25	b4	♔d7
26	g3!	

Of course, 26 b5 axb5 27 ♗xb5 would be premature because of 27...♖d1. The advance in the centre, started by the text move, will force the black rook to leave the open file.

26	...	g5
27	f4	gxf4+
28	gxf4	♖e6

After 28...exf4+ 29 ♔xf4, with ♖h5 to come, White's work would be easier.

29	f5!	♖e7

If 29...♖d6 then 30 ♖a1 and ♖g1, and the white rook would penetrate on the kingside. Now, on the other hand, the doubled pawn can at last be dissolved.

30	b5!	axb5
31	♗xb5	♖g7
32	♗xc6+	♔xc6
33	♖a8	♖g2

This counter-attempt is Black's only chance, since 33...♖f7 34 ♖e8 followed by ♖e6+ would be fatal.

34	♖f8	♖xh2
35	♖xf6+	♔c5 *(D)*

With the threat of 36...♖h3+ followed by ...♔d4.

36	b4+!	

The first link in the final combination; White gains the square d6 for his rook.

36	...	♔c4!

If 36...♔xb4 then 37 ♖e6 wins easily.

37 ♖d6

Threatening 38 ♖d5, which, however, Black tries to prevent in an ingenious manner.

37	**...**	**♖h3+**
38	**♔e2**	**♖h4**
39	**♔f3**	**h5!**

Still making efforts—which are in fact crowned with a kind of 'moral' success—to complicate matters. By making this move, Black suggests that White cannot win by playing the natural 40 ♖d5—and the opponent believes him!

40 ♖e6

This can hardly he called an error since it wins perforce and is coupled with another pretty point. But with 40 ♖d5! White could prove to his opponent that his trap was not a trap at all. The continuation would be: 40...♖f4+ 41 ♔e3 ♖xf5 42 exf5 ♔xd5 43 c4+ ♔d6 44 b5 b6 (or 44...h4 45 ♔f3) 45 f6 ♔e6 46 c5 and wins. The idea behind this pawn endgame is that while Black's passed pawns are separated by only two files and can therefore be stopped by the enemy king, White is able to obtain passed pawns at a distance of three files from each other. This example is worthy of notice.

40	**...**	**♖f4+**

If 40...♔d4 then 41 c3+ (a second, diversionary offer) followed by 42 ♖xe5.

41	**♔e3**	**h4**
42	**♖xe5**	**h3!**

Very neat—but White's material advantage assures him a safe defence against tactical tricks of this kind.

43	**♖d5**	**♖h4**
44	**♖d4+!**	**♔c3**
45	**♖d1**	**h2**
46	**♖h1**	**♖h3+**
47	**♔f4**	**♖h4+**
48	**♔e5**	**♔d2**
49	**f6**	**♔e3**
50	**♔d6!**	**♖xe4**
51	**♖xh2**	**♖d4+**
52	**♔e6**	**1-0**

Game 94

Alekhine – Foltys

Podebrad 1936

Queen's Gambit Declined

1	**d4**	**d5**
2	**c4**	**e6**
3	**♘c3**	**♘f6**
4	**♗g5**	**♗e7**
5	**e3**	**♘bd7**
6	**♘f3**	**0-0**
7	**♕c2**	

This fashionable move which, for reasons unknown, was disdained for about a quarter of a century, allows Black to start a counter-attack in the

centre through 7...c5; but, as this action cannot be supported by Black's rooks, the resulting opening of files should turn to White's advantage. So, in my opinion, one should consider, instead of 7...c5, the following system: 7...c6 8 a3 (preventing ...♘e4) 8...h6 9 ♗h4 ♘e8 10 ♗xe7 (10 ♗g3 ♘d6) 10...♕xe7 followed by ...♘d6.

7 ... c5

8 ♖d1

As Black's reply proves sufficient to equalise, better would have been, as I played in two match games in Buenos Aires—8 cxd5 ♘xd5 9 ♗xe7 ♕xe7 10 ♘xd5 exd5 11 dxc5, followed by ♗e2 and 0-0, with a secure slight endgame advantage.

8 ... ♕a5

9 ♗d3 h6

10 ♗h4 ♘b6

A good move, which forces White to clear the situation in the centre before he has castled.

11 cxd5 cxd4 *(D)*

Although not directly bad, this *zwischenzug* certainly cannot be recommended, for it permits White to complicate matters without taking many chances. 11...♘bxd5, threatening 12...♘b4 or eventually ...cxd4, was incisive and good enough for equality.

12 d6!

This should not bring much but, still, it was a relief for White to be able to leave the routine, 'theoretical' path and force Black to find the best answer by himself!

12 ... ♗xd6

Better than 12...dxc3 13 dxe7 cxb2+ 14 ♖d2 ♖e8 15 ♗xf6 gxf6 16 ♕xb2 ±[1].

13 ♗xf6 gxf6?

But this weakening of the kingside was certainly unnecessary. After 13...dxc3 14 ♗xc3 ♗b4! 15 ♗xb4 ♕xb4+ 16 ♕d2, the positional advantage left to White would be negligible.

14 ♘xd4 ♗b4

The bishop's position at d6 was not safe and, besides, the following exchange will give Black some kind of compensation for his disorganised queenside.

15 0-0 ♗xc3

16 bxc3 ♗d7

1 This assessment seems very doubtful. After 16...e5 17 0-0 ♗g4 Black will soon take the pawn on e7, and White has little compensation as his pieces are not well placed for a kingside attack, for example 18 ♗b1 ♖xe7 19 ♕c2 e4. However, by playing the immediate 15 ♕xb2 White can prevent this defence and obtain adequate play for the pawn.

17 c4!

This pawn is about as weak here as at c3—but now, at least, it makes the important square d5 inaccessible to the black knight.

17 ... ♗a4
18 ♘b3 ♕b4
19 ♕e2!

Both an attacking and a defensive move. If now 19...♗xb3, then first 20 ♖b1.

19 ... ♖fc8
20 ♖b1 ♘xc4

This looks very dangerous and, in fact, proves fatal. But, as the black king has been abandoned to his fate by all his troops, it is, in truth, already too late to prevent a direct assault by means of passive tactics. If, for example, 20...♗xb3 then 21 ♖xb3 ♕e7 (or 21...♕f8 22 ♕f3) 22 ♕g4+ ♔f8 23 ♕h4 ♔g7 24 f4 with an easy attack.

21 ♘d4 ♕c5 *(D)*

When taking the pawn on the previous move, Black probably calculated that he would have a saving defence should White make the natural move 22 ♖xb7. Actually, even in this case Black's position would have been precarious enough, especially in view of White's threat 23 ♘xe6, which would win promptly after 22...♖c7, 22...♘d6, or 22...♗e8. Also 22...♘e5 would lose rapidly after 23 ♕h5 ♕f8 24 f4 ♘xd3 25 ♘xe6—but 22...♕d5, in order to answer 23 ♘xe6? by 23...♕xe6 and 23 ♖b4 by 23...♘b6, would still prolong the battle. The following combination by White is, therefore, the most convincing way to force a decisive advantage.

22 ♘xe6!

Leads 'only' to the win of a pawn, but, by weakening black's king's position, permits White to force favourable exchanges, which will be amply sufficient for victory.

22 ... fxe6
23 ♕g4+ ♔h8

After 23...♔f8 death would be quicker: 24 ♖xb7 ♕g5 25 ♕xe6 ♘e5 26 f4!.

24 ♖xb7

Threatening mates at g7 and h7.

24 ... ♖c7
25 ♖xc7 ♕xc7
26 ♗xc4 e5
27 ♕h4 ♕g7
28 ♗d5

As Black's king is now adequately protected, White rightly decides to simplify matters.

28 ... ♖d8
29 ♕xa4 ♖xd5
30 ♕c6!

It was important to prevent Black doubling his pieces on the central d-file.

30 ... ♕f7
31 h3

In order to activate the rook.

31 ... ♔g7
32 ♖b1 ♖d7
33 a4!

This pawn now threatens to advance to a6, after which ♖b7 would be decisive. Black is therefore practically forced to offer the exchange of queens.

33 ... ♖c7
34 ♕b5 ♕d7
35 ♕xd7+ ♖xd7
36 ♖b5! *(D)*

The following endgame will be easily won, chiefly because of the dominating position of the rook.

B

36 ... ♔g6
37 g4 h5
38 ♔g2 hxg4
39 hxg4 ♖d6
40 ♖a5 a6
41 ♔g3 ♖c6
42 f4! exf4+
43 exf4 ♖b6
44 ♖c5!

The rook will prove even more effective on the 7th rank than on the 5th. If now 44...♖b4 then simply 45 ♖c6 ♖xa4 46 g5 and wins.

44 ... ♔g7
45 ♖c7+ ♔h6
46 ♖a7 ♖b3+
47 ♔h4 ♖b4

Or 47...♖b6 48 a5 ♖c6 49 ♖f7! ♔g6 50 ♖b7 followed by 51 ♖b6 and wins.

48 ♖xa6 1-0

For if 48...♖xf4, then 49 ♖xf6+!.

Game 95
Winter – Alekhine
Nottingham 1936
French Defence

1 d4 e6
2 e4 d5
3 exd5

This move is generally adopted to show that White is only playing for a draw. But, as a matter of fact, Black will have at least as many opportunities for complicating, if he wants to do so, as in most of the other variations of the French.

3 ... exd5
4 ♗d3 ♘c6
5 ♘e2 ♗d6
6 c3

Giving Black the welcome opportunity to take the initiative. However, the alternative 6 ♘bc3 ♘b4 would lead either to the exchange of White's light-squared bishop or to its removal to ineffective squares after 7 ♗b5+ c6.

6 ... ♕h4!

It was important to prevent 7 ♗f4.

7 ♘d2 ♗g4!

A correct pawn offer. After 8 ♕b3 0-0-0 9 ♕xd5 ♘f6, to be followed by ...♖he8, Black would have an overwhelming advantage in development.

8 ♕c2 0-0-0
9 ♘f1

If 9 ♗f5+, then simply 9...♔b8.

9 ... g6

Preparing for the exchange of White's 'good' bishop on d3, after which the light squares in his position will become somewhat weak.

10 ♗e3 ♘ge7
11 0-0-0 ♗f5
12 ♘fg3 ♗xd3
13 ♕xd3 h6 *(D)*

In order to secure the position of his queen, which might become uncomfortable after White's ♕d2, intending ♗g5.

W

14 f4?

This move, weakening without compensation important squares on the e-file, may be considered the decisive strategic mistake. Comparatively better was 14 ♘g1 followed by ♘f3, with a rather cramped but still defensible position.

14 ... ♕g4

Black aims, successfully, at keeping f5 under control. How important this is will be evident in the second half of the game.

15 h3 ♕d7
16 ♖hf1 h5!

If now 17 f5, then 17...h4 18 f6 ♘g8 19 ♘h1 ♖e8 and the white f-pawn would fall.

17 ♘g1 h4
18 ♘3e2 ♘f5
19 ♘f3 f6

All White's minor pieces will henceforth suffer from an obvious lack of space, and he will therefore be unable to counter Black's increasing pressure on the e-file.

20 ♘h2 ♖de8
21 ♗d2 ♖e6
22 ♘g4 ♖he8
23 ♖de1 ♖8e7
24 ♔d1 ♕e8
25 ♕f3 *(D)*

In order to move the knight from e2, which was at present impossible because of 25...♖xe1+ followed by ...♗xf4.

B

25 ... ♘a5!

By this manoeuvre Black quickly obtains a decisive material advantage. White cannot now continue 26 ♕xd5 because of 26...♖xe2 27 ♖xe2 ♖xe2 28 ♕xa5 ♘g3 29 ♖f3 ♕e4! and wins[1].

26 b3 ♘c4!

A forceful finish. If 27 bxc4, then 27...♕a4+ 28 ♔c1 ♗a3+ 29 ♔b1 ♖b6+ 30 ♔a1 ♕c2 and mates in two.

27 ♗c1 ♘ce3+
28 ♗xe3 ♘xe3+
29 ♘xe3 ♖xe3
30 ♕f2 ♕b5!

Threatening 31...♕d3+ 32 ♔c1 ♗a3#. White is thus forced to give up a pawn.

31 ♘c1 ♖xc3
32 ♖xe7 ♗xe7
33 ♕e1 ♔d7

If White plays ♕xc3, now or next move, Black replies with ...♕xf1+ followed by ...♕xf4 or ...♕xg2 with an easy win.

34 f5 ♖e3!
35 ♕f2 g5
36 ♖e1 ♖e4
37 ♖xe4

This exchange, giving Black a strong passed pawn, shortens matters. But White was lost in any case.

37 ... dxe4
38 ♔d2 ♗d6

Threatening 39...e3+!.

39 ♔c2 ♗f4
0-1

Game 96
Alekhine – Alexander
Nottingham 1936
Brilliancy Prize
Queen's Indian Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e6
3 ♘f3 ♗b4+
4 ♘bd2

The usual move is 4 ♗d2 in order, after the exchange of bishops, to develop the knight on the more natural square c3. By avoiding the exchange White tries to complicate matters without actually taking too many chances.

4 ... b6
5 g3 ♗b7
6 ♗g2 0-0
7 0-0 ♗xd2?

Instead of this exchange, which yields White the advantage of the bishop pair without necessity, Black could play either 7...d5 (Rubinstein-Alekhine, Semmering 1926) or even 7...♗e7 followed by ...d6, ...♘bd7, etc. In both cases he would have better equalising prospects than in the actual game.

8 ♕xd2

The correct recapture, as the c1-bishop is wanted on the long diagonal.

8 ... d6
9 b3 ♘bd7

---

1 Alekhine doesn't analyse 27 ♕xa5 in this line, when the win is more complicated: 27...♘g3! 28 ♕xa7 ♕b5! 29 ♕a8+ ♔d7 30 ♘xf6+ ♔c6 31 c4 (or else 31...♖xd2+ followed by 32...♖e2+ wins) 31...♖xd2+ 32 ♔xd2 ♕xc4! and Black wins as 33 ♖c1 allows mate in six.

10 ♗b2 ♖b8

Black shows his hand decidedly too early. The obvious object of the text move is to play ...♘e4, followed by ...f5, for which purpose the bishop must be protected, to avoid the possible answer ♘g5. But the same idea could have been combined with a mobilisation of forces, by 10...♕e7, 11...♖ad8 and eventually ...♗a8.

11 ♖ad1!

An interesting and effective way of meeting Black's plan. The b2-bishop is soon to play a most important and practically decisive part in the game.

11 ... ♘e4

If 11...♕e7 then 12 ♕e3 (and if 12...♘e4, then 13 d5).

12 ♕e3 f5

13 d5!

This pawn will only apparently be weak as White can easily protect it by counter-threats.

13 ... exd5

13...e5 instead would lose a pawn to 14 ♘h4![1].

14 cxd5 ♘df6 *(D)*

15 ♘h4 ♕d7

If 15...♘xd5 then 16 ♖xd5! ♗xd5 17 ♕d4 wins material.

16 ♗h3

Again preventing ...♘xd5, this time because of 17 ♕xe4.

16 ... g6

17 f3 ♘c5

18 ♕g5

Threatening not only 19 ♗xf6, but also 19 ♗xf5 and 19 ♘xf5. If 18...♘xd5, then White wins by 19 ♘xg6. Black's reply is therefore forced.

18 ... ♕g7

19 b4 ♘cd7

It would be equally hopeless to play 19...♘a4 20 ♗a1.

20 e4!

The initial move of the decisive sacrificial combination.

20 ... ♘xe4 *(D)*

Black clearly based his last hopes on this ingenious tactical stroke. If now 21 ♗xg7 ♘xg5 22 ♗xf8, then 22...♘xh3+ 23 ♔g2 ♖xf8 24 ♔xh3 ♘f6 followed by ...♘xd5 with good fighting chances.

21 ♕c1!

Much more effective than 21 fxe4 ♕xb2 22 exf5 ♕f6, yielding White only a possible win after a laborious endgame.

21 ... ♘ef6

22 ♗xf5!

---

1 Or, after 14...♘ec5, Black would have given up his central outpost without any compensation.

The surprising sequel to 20 e4. After 22...gxf5 23 ♘xf5 Black would either lose his queen or be mated by 23...♕h8 24 ♘h6+ ♔g7 25 ♕g5#.

22 ... ♔h8
23 ♗e6

At last the d-pawn is definitely safe.

23 ... ♗a6
24 ♖fe1 ♘e5
25 f4!

The simplest way to win.

25 ... ♘d3
26 ♖xd3 ♗xd3
27 g4 1-0

There is no remedy against g5.

Game 97
Alekhine – Bogoljubow
Nottingham 1936
Slav Defence

1 d4 d5
2 c4 c6
3 ♘f3 ♘f6
4 ♘c3 dxc4
5 a4 e6?

This was the third time within a year that I had the pleasure of meeting the indifferent text move—and of taking advantage of it. 5...♗f5 is, of course, much better.

6 e4 ♗b4

6...c5 is comparatively better, although not quite sufficient for equalising.

7 e5

7 ♕c2 b5 8 ♗e2 and 9 0-0 is also very promising, with more than sufficient positional compensation for the pawn.

7 ... ♘e4

For 7...♘d5 see Game 57.

8 ♕c2 ♕d5
9 ♗e2 c5

The game with Helling, Dresden 1936, continued as follows: 9...0-0 10 0-0 ♘xc3 11 bxc3 ♗e7 12 ♘d2 c5 13 ♗xc4 ♕d8 14 ♕e4 cxd4 15 cxd4 ♗d7 16 ♗d3 g6 17 ♗a3 ♗c6 18 ♕g4 ♖e8 19 ♘c4 h5 20 ♕f4 ♗g5 21 ♕g3 ♗h4 22 ♕e3 ♕d5 23 f3 ♗d8 24 ♘d6 ♖e7 25 ♗c5! and Black, whose queen is imprisoned in a quite spectacular way, resigned after a very few moves.

10 0-0 ♘xc3
11 bxc3 cxd4
12 ♘xd4 *(D)*

The 19th Euwe match-game 1935 continued as follows 12 cxd4 c3 13 ♗d2! ♕a5 14 ♗xc3! ♗xc3 15 ♖a3 ♘c6 (if 15...♗d7, then 16 ♖xc3 ♗xa4 17 ♗b5+!! and wins) 16 ♖xc3 ♗d7 17 ♖b1 0-0 18 ♖c5 ♕d8 19 ♖xb7 ♗c8 20 ♖b1 ♘xd4 21 ♘xd4 ♕xd4 22 ♗f3 and with the exchange up White had a technically easy win.

By recapturing here with the knight, I wanted to satisfy myself whether it is stronger than the line I

adopted previously. As this game proves, White also wins back the pawn sacrificed, while keeping excellent attacking chances; the question which of the two moves gives him the greater advantage is, therefore, rather academic.

B

12 ... ♗c5
13 ♘f3! ♘d7
14 ♖d1 ♕c6
15 ♗xc4 0-0

The king must fly, because after 15...♗xf2+ 16 ♕xf2 and 17 ♗a3 Black would rapidly succumb.

16 ♘g5

Forcing the weakening of Black's kingside position.

16 ... g6
17 ♗b5 ♕c7
18 ♘e4 ♗e7

Of course not 18...♘xe5 because of 19 ♘xc5 followed by ♗a3.

19 f4

This is not the strongest continuation of the attack. The right way to exploit Black's cramped position was to force the exchange of his dark-squared bishop by means of 19 ♗h6 ♖d8 20 f4 followed by ♗g5, after which the weakness of the dark squares would be rapidly fatal for Black. The text move was based on a slight over-estimation of White's attacking possibilities in the position which actually occurred after Black's 21st move.

19 ... ♘c5
20 ♘f6+

Under the circumstances more promising than 20 ♘d6 which, however, was quite playable.

20 ... ♗xf6
21 exf6 ♗d7 *(D)*

W

22 ♗e3?

I made this move instantly, having calculated the whole variation on the 19th move. Instead 22 ♗a3! ♖fd8 23 ♖d4 would maintain the advantage of space without any material loss.

22 ... ♗xb5
23 axb5 ♘d7!
24 g3

Comparatively best as 24 ♗d4 ♕xf4 25 ♖f1 ♕g5 would give Black some attacking prospects (...e5) in addition to his material gain.

24 ... ♘xf6

25 ♗d4

Realising that 25 ♖xa7—planned already a few moves before—would be answered, not by 25...♖xa7 26 b6 ±[1], but by 25...♘d5! 26 ♖xa8 ♘xe3 27 ♖xf8+ ♔xf8 28 ♕d3 ♘xd1 29 ♕xd1 ♕c5+, with a better queen ending for Black. After the text move White obtains sufficient compensation for the pawn, because of his powerful bishop, but that is about all. By the following moves Black could force a simplification which most probably would lead to a draw.

25 ... ♘d7
26 ♕f2 b6
27 ♖e1

Preventing 27...f6 followed by ...e5.

27 ... ♕c4
28 ♖ab1 ♖ac8
29 ♕e3 ♖fe8
30 ♕f3 f6

Black begins to play with fire. Here, or even at the next move, he should offer the exchange of queens by ...♕d5, since he would still be able to protect his backward a-pawn. The variation 30...♕d5 31 ♕xd5 exd5 32 ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 33 ♖a1 ♖a8 should probably result in a peaceful draw. After the text move and the next one, White succeeds in building up a formidable kingside attack.

31 ♖b4 ♕c7?
32 ♖b2!

Now Black's e-pawn becomes weak.

32 ... ♖e7
33 ♖be2 ♔f7
34 g4 ♖ce8
35 g5!

With a hidden purpose which Black entirely overlooks.

35 ... fxg5 *(D)*

The only chance of salvation was 35...f5 when White would still have excellent winning prospects by continuing h4-h5.

36 f5!!

A problem-like move which wins in all variations. Besides the continuation in the text, the following possibilities came into consideration:

1) 36...exf5 37 ♕d5+ ♔f8 38 ♗g7+! and wins.

2) 36...gxf5 37 ♕h5+ ♔f8 38 ♕h6+ ♔g8 39 ♕xg5+ and White wins.

---

1 Even here 26...♖a2! 27 ♕xa2 ♕xc3 28 ♗d4 ♕f3 29 ♖f1 ♕d5 maintains Black's extra pawn, and leaves White struggling to find compensation for the sacrificed material.

3) 36...e5 37 ♕d5+ ♔f8 38 ♕c6! ♕xc6 39 bxc6 exd4 40 ♖xe7 ♖xe7 41 ♖xe7 ♔xe7 42 c7 winning[1].

36 ... ♕f4

Neither better nor worse than the variations just given.

37 fxe6+ ♖xe6

38 ♕d5

Another winning line was 38 ♕h3 ♕h4 39 ♖f1+ ♔g8 40 ♖xe6!.

38 ... ♘f6

White also threatened 39 ♖f1.

39 ♗xf6 ♕g4+

40 ♖g2 ♕f5

41 ♗e5

But not 41 ♕c4? ♕c5+ and Black would win!

41 ... ♔g8

42 ♖f2 ♕g4+

43 ♔h1 h5

44 ♖g1 ♕h4

45 ♖f6 ♔h7

46 ♖xe6 ♖xe6

47 ♕d7+ 1-0

Game 98

Alekhine – Fine

Hastings 1937

Ruy Lopez

1 e4 e5

2 ♘f3 ♘c6

3 ♗b5 a6

4 ♗a4 ♘f6

5 0-0 ♗e7

6 ♖e1 b5

7 ♗b3 d6

8 c3 ♘a5

9 ♗c2 c5

10 d4 ♕c7

11 ♘bd2 0-0

So far everything is conventional, but here the generally adopted move is 11...♘c6, trying to force White to a decision in the centre. Then the most promising reply for White is 12 a4 ♖b8 13 axb5 axb5 14 dxc5 dxc5 15 ♘f1 followed by ♘e3.

12 ♘f1 ♗g4

The continuation of this game proves convincingly that the early exchange of this bishop gives White promising attacking opportunities on the kingside—but a fully satisfactory plan is not easy to find. The comparatively most logical method seems to be 12...♗d7, followed by ...♖fc8 and ...♗f8.

13 ♘e3!

The most forcible reply, which does not even oblige White to sacrifice anything on the next moves if he does not want to.

13 ... ♗xf3

14 ♕xf3!

After the simple 14 gxf3 White would have the pair of bishops and some attacking chances on the basis of the open g-file; but the text move, by which he preserves his pawn structure intact, is more precise and stronger.

---

1 Unfortunately, Alekhine fails to consider Black's best defences. 36...e5 37 ♕d5+ ♔g7 38 ♕c6 (38 f6+ ♘xf6 39 ♖xe5 ♖xe5 40 ♗xe5 ♔h6! and White doesn't have much to show for his two pawns, since ...♘h5 will defend the king) 38...♖c8! is probably the most accurate, when White is struggling to avoid defeat.

14 ... cxd4 *(D)*

W

15 ♘f5?

But this risky offer—mainly explained by my being a half-point behind Fine and having to win at all costs in order to be first—cannot be recommended objectively, although after it White keeps the initiative for quite a long time. The right move was 15 cxd4! since, after 15...exd4 16 ♘f5 ♕xc2 17 ♘xe7+ ♔h8 18 ♘f5! (threatening 19 ♘xg7! ♔xg7 20 ♗h6+), White would have obtained a decisive advantage. Also 15...♘c6 (the answer I actually expected to 15 cxd4) 16 d5! ♘d4 17 ♕d1 ♘xc2 18 ♘xc2 (threatening 19 ♘b4) 18...a5 19 ♗d2, followed by ♖c1, would have given White the advantage. Fine's next few defensive moves are not only good, but the only ones.

15 ... dxc3
16 ♕xc3! ♖fc8!

Indirectly protecting the knight at a5 by an attack against White's c2-bishop.

17 ♕g3 ♗f8
18 ♗d3

If, instead, 18 ♗g5 then simply 18...♕xc2 19 ♗xf6 g6[1].

18 ... ♘c6
19 ♗g5 ♘e8
20 ♖ac1?!

As an eventual exchange of rooks would be entirely to Black's advantage, there was no need for White to play his rook on to the open file. The immediate 20 ♖ad1 was indicated (see 24th move), followed by a3 and ♗b1-a2, when White's extra tempo would probably have been of great importance. After the move played, on the contrary, Black has a comparatively easy defence.

20 ... ♕b7
21 a3

The manoeuvre intended here, namely ♗b1-a2-d5, induces Black to start a counter-demonstration on the queenside, and, in order to do so, he must first force the exchange of the white knight.

21 ... g6
22 ♘h6+ ♗xh6
23 ♗xh6

---

1 A strange comment, since at the end of this line 20 ♕e3! h5 (the only move) 21 ♘h6+ ♔h7 22 ♘xf7 gives White dangerous threats without any sacrifice; in particular, 22...♕xb2 loses to 23 ♘g5+ ♔g8 24 ♕h3 ♖e8 25 ♕d7. It follows that Black should prefer 18...♘h5 19 ♕g4 ♕b7! (19...♕xc2?! 20 ♖ac1, with ♖xc8 and ♘e7+ to come, is good for White), but White still has dangerous attacking chances and this line appears to be at least as good as that played in the game.

Black's dark squares are now somewhat weak—but his knight at e8 is a stout defender.

23 ... ♘d4
24 ♖cd1 b4
25 f4!

The opening of this file offers fair equalising prospects—but with correct play hardly more.

25 ... exf4

The defence of e5 by means of 25...f6 would be well met by 26 f5!.

26 ♕xf4 bxa3
27 bxa3 ♖c3!

An ingenious drawing combination: if 28 e5, then 28...♖xd3! 29 ♖xd3 ♘e2+ 30 ♖xe2 ♕b1+ 31 ♔f2 ♕xd3 32 e6! ♕f5 33 ♕xf5 gxf5 34 e7 f6 35 ♔e3! and the presence of White's king on the queenside would eliminate the danger of his losing. But as a draw meant the same as a loss to me, I did not even take this variation into serious consideration.

28 ♕f2 ♘e6?

From now on, Fine's resistance gradually begins to weaken. The game has not developed quite according to his expectations (i.e. the frustrated chance of simplifying by means of 28...♖xd3). After the natural 28...♘c6 29 ♗c1! ♘e5 30 ♗f1 (30...♘g4 31 ♕d4), he would have slight winning chances, although the white bishops would have almost counterbalanced the not over-important extra pawn.

29 a4

This insignificant-looking pawn will support White's threats in a very efficient way.

29 ... ♖ac8

Again out of place, since it will immediately become evident that his a-pawn needs more protection. The other rook should have returned to c8.

30 ♖f1

Threatening 31 ♗xa6.

30 ... ♖3c7
31 ♖b1 ♕c6 *(D)*

W

32 a5!

Incredible but true—White has suddenly obtained strong pressure on the queenside. A rather confusing result of Black's manoeuvres in that sector of the board!

32 ... ♘c5?

The evolutions of this knight have been decidedly unfortunate, and after this last one there will be no salvation. Comparatively best was 32...♖a8 after which White would have increased his positional advantage with 33 ♖bc1 followed by 34 ♗c4 ±.

33 ♗c4

If now 33...♘xe4, then 34 ♗xf7+ ♔h8 35 ♕d4+ and wins. Black's answer is therefore forced.

33 ... ♕d7
34 ♕a2!

It is odd how sometimes exactly the same attacking ideas repeat themselves within a short period of time! One may compare the text move, for instance, with 37 ♕d2 in my game against Tylor from Margate 1937, where a queen move transposing a vertical attack into a diagonal one brought an equally rapid decision.

34 ... ♘xe4

Or 34...♘e6 35 ♗xe6.

35 ♖xf7 ♕xf7
36 ♗xf7+ ♖xf7
37 ♕e6! 1-0

An interesting fight which was certainly influenced by the exceptional importance of the result.

Game 99
Alekhine – Reshevsky
Kemeri 1937
Alekhine Defence

1 e4 ♘f6
2 e5 ♘d5
3 ♘f3 d6
4 d4 ♗g4
5 c4

There is no hurry to dislodge the knight. The immediate 5 ♗e2 allows White, if 5...dxe5, to retake with the knight without being forced to sacrifice a pawn.

5 ... ♘b6
6 ♗e2 dxe5
7 ♘xe5

This was my intention when playing 5 c4, but—although White will obtain *some* compensation for the pawn sacrifice—it was hardly advisable to make a considerable effort in order to obtain most likely only equality. In the 29th game of my first match with Dr. Euwe I played here 7 c5 and obtained an opening advantage, but only because my opponent after 7...e4 8 cxb6 exf3 9 ♗xf3 ♗xf3 10 ♕xf3 selected the tame move 10...axb6 instead of more active 10...♘c6!.

7 ... ♗xe2
8 ♕xe2 ♕xd4
9 0-0

Permitting the exchange of the central knight and thus facilitating Black's defence. More to the point was 9 ♘a3! ♘8d7 10 ♘f3 or 9...e6 10 ♘c2, in both cases preserving three minor pieces for attacking purposes.

9 ... ♘8d7
10 ♘xd7

The sacrifice of the c-pawn by 10 ♘f3 would be aimless.

10 ... ♘xd7?

Strangely enough, Reshevsky decided to make this inferior move after a particularly close examination of the situation. One would think that 10...♕xd7 could be automatically selected because of the general consideration that otherwise the exposed queen in the centre will permit White to win further tempi and thus obtain real compensation for the pawn. If Black had retaken with the queen, my intention was to continue with 11 a4! ♕c6 (and not 11...♘xa4 12 ♕f3!) 12 ♘a3 e6 13

a5 ♘d7 14 ♘b5 after which Black's defensive problem would remain by no means easy. The text move endangers his position and only the greatest circumspection saves him from a rapid debacle.

11 ♘c3 c6

The threat 12 ♘b5 was too strong.

12 ♗e3 ♕e5

13 ♖ad1 e6 *(D)*

14 ♕f3!

An important move which practically forces Black to return his extra pawn since his king had to be removed from the centre at all costs. Insufficient would be, for instance, 14...♗d6 15 g3, 14...♗e7 15 ♖xd7! followed by 16 ♕xf7 or 14...♘f6 15 ♘b5!, with a winning attack.

14 ... 0-0-0!

15 ♗xa7

Instead 15 ♕xf7 would be a grave error because of 15...♗d6 followed by ...♖hf8 winning, but now White, after having restored material equality, maintains a clear positional advantage, Black's king's position being anything but safe.

15 ... ♕a5

16 ♗d4

Prevents 16...♘e5.

16 ... ♕f5

Trying to make the best of it. The endgame after the queen exchange certainly looks bad enough, but is not quite hopeless.

17 ♕g3

An ex-champion's decision... Before 1935—and now—I would doubtless have adopted the simple line 17 ♕xf5, which would secure virtually an extra pawn on the queenside and eliminate any shadow of danger. But during the whole period preceding the return match I simply could not rely on my patience and nerves—which certainly would have been required for winning the endgame in question.

17 ... e5

18 ♗e3 ♗b4

19 ♘a4

White's best attacking chance, since from this square the knight will 'observe' both b6 and c5. But Black's next manoeuvre gives his king—at least temporarily—sufficient protection and, in fact, nearly equalises.

19 ... ♗a5!

20 f4!

Otherwise Black would even have obtained the initiative after 20...♗c7 and ...e4.

20 ... ♗c7

21 b3

It was important to prevent Black from playing ...♕c2 with tempo.

21 ... f6

22 fxe5 ♕e6

Of course not 22...♕xe5 23 ♗f4 and wins.

23 h3!

A good positional move which, however, is neither particularly deep nor difficult to find. Its main object is to prevent the possibility ...♕g4 after 23...♘xe5 24 ♘c5, and also in some other variations the protection of g4 was essential. I was not a little surprised to read all the compliments addressed by the critics to the modest text move, and also, after the game was over, to be questioned—in all seriousness—whether by 23 h3 I already planned to play my queen to h2 on the 33rd move.

23 ... ♖hg8

At this particular moment the g-pawn was not yet in danger—but after the exchange of one pair of rooks on the d-file it eventually could be taken.

24 ♗d4

With the clear purpose of lessening the tension in the centre by 25 ♕e3 or ♕c3.

24 ... ♘xe5

This looks rather promising, as 25 ♘c5 can be met by 25...♕e7 and 25 ♘b6+ ♔b8 26 ♕c3? by 26...c5, with advantage for Black, but a slight inversion of moves entirely changes the situation in White's favour. Therefore, 24...fxe5 25 ♕e3 e4 26 c5 ♖de8 was comparatively better, after which Black's passed pawn would in some way counter-balance White's queenside threats.

25 ♕c3!

Threatening both 26 ♘c5 and 26 ♘b6+. Black's reply is practically forced, since after 25...♔b8 26 ♘c5 ♕d6 27 ♕b4! White's threats would prove the stronger.

25 ... ♘d7

26 c5!

In the following part of the game, this pawn will fulfil several functions of the bishop, which from now on will merely supervise the development of events.

26 ... ♖ge8 *(D)*

27 b4!

A pawn-offer, the idea of which is 27...♕xa2 28 ♖a1 ♕e6 (or 28...♕d5 29 ♖fd1[1]) 29 b5! threatening 30 ♘b6+, with a very strong attack.

27 ... ♘b8

After this retreat White obtains a won game—but not so much because of his direct attack as through

1 This line is virtually a forced win for Black after 29...♖e2 30 ♗f2 ♕f5, so it seems that Reshevsky could have taken the offered pawn.

the fact that after the following forced exchange his bishop will become considerably stronger than the black knight. A satisfactory defence was, however, not visible. Black's decisive—although by no means obvious—error was most likely 24...♘xe5.

28 ♘b6+ ♗xb6
29 cxb6 ♕xa2

After his counter-chances on the diagonal b8-h2 have vanished, Black rightly estimates that his only slight chance of salvation consists of extreme recklessness. As a matter of fact I confess that at this moment I even did not consider the possibility of the capture in the text.

30 ♕g3!

More exact than 30 ♖a1 ♕d5.

30 ... ♖d7

Or 30...♕f7 31 ♖a1! ♖xd4 32 ♖a8 ♖e5 33 ♕xe5 and wins.

31 ♗c5

Good enough, but 31 ♗xf6! was simpler: if 31...gxf6 then 32 ♖xd7 ♔xd7 33 ♕c7+ ♔e6 34 ♖e1+ wins.

31 ... ♕f7
32 ♖a1 ♕g6
33 ♕h2!

After this Black can no longer prevent the unwelcome rook's visit to a8.

33 ... ♖e5

Or:

1) 33...♕g5 34 ♖a8 ♕e5 35 ♗f2! ♕xh2+ 36 ♔xh2 and after ♗g3 Black would lose the exchange with a hopeless position.

2) 33...♘a6 34 b5! ♕g5 35 ♖fc1! and wins.

34 ♖a8 *(D)*

B

34 ... ♖d2

Black overlooks the main threat. But after a defensive move such as 34...♕e8 White would also have won very rapidly by 35 ♕g3 followed by 36 ♕a3[1].

---

1 It is typically Alekhine that he only analyses one alternative to the blunder actually played—the almost equally weak move 34...♕e8, which allows the white queen to enter the attack. Black should have prevented the sacrifice on e5 by 34...♕g5!, which both retains the black queen's active position and keeps the white queen in its box. The reply 35 ♗f2 is pointless, as 35...♖d3 prevents White transferring his bishop to the h2-b8 diagonal. Of course the pin on the e5-rook ties Black up, but the absent white queen means that White also has few possibilities to strengthen his position, for example 35 b5 cxb5 36 ♗a3 ♕e3+ (36...♖d2!? 37 ♖c1+ ♔d7 38 ♖xb8 b4! 39 ♖xb7+ ♔e6 40 ♗xb4 ♖xg2+ 41 ♕xg2 ♕xc1+ is also a draw) 37 ♔h1 ♕c3 38 ♕g1 ♖e2 39 ♕b2 ♖e5 is a draw, while given time Black

35 ♖xb8+! ♔xb8
36 ♕xe5+!

and mate in three moves.

Although in all objectivity I had to blame my 17th move (which, by the way, is accompanied by an ! in the tournament book) I must admit that the final attack of this game gave me (and I hope will give the readers) much more pleasure than a scientifically correct, but purely technical, exploitation of a queenside pawn majority would do. After all, chess is not only knowledge and logic!

Game 100
Alekhine – Fine
Kemeri 1937
Queen's Gambit Accepted

1 d4 d5
2 c4 dxc4
3 ♘f3 ♘f6
4 ♕a4+

This queen manoeuvre is more effective here than in the Catalan system (after g3) since White may, in some variations, wish to develop his bishop on the diagonal f1-a6. But also after the more usual 4 e3 White's prospects are considered by far the more promising, and this fact is due not to a particular variation, but to the modern method of treating the Queen's Gambit Accepted with White: to advance the centre pawns at the first opportunity, even at the cost of heavy sacrifices. This characteristic idea can be seen in the games Reshevsky-Vidmar (Nottingham 1936), Euwe-Alekhine (5th match-game, 1937), and, even earlier, Opočensky-Rubinstein (Marienbad 1925). In my own recent practice the following example, illustrating this new tendency of White, is, I believe, noteworthy:

Alekhine-Letelier, Montevideo 1938: 4 e3 e6 5 ♗xc4 c5 6 0-0 a6 7 ♕e2 b5 8 ♗b3 ♗b7 9 ♘c3 ♘bd7 10 ♖d1 ♗e7 11 e4! b4 12 e5 bxc3 13 exf6 ♘xf6 14 ♗a4+ ♔f8 15 dxc5 ♕a5 16 c6 ♕xa4 17 cxb7 ♖b8 18 bxc3 ♖xb7 19 ♘e5 ♕e4 20 ♕xa6 ♖c7 21 ♗a3! g6 22 ♗xe7+ ♖xe7 23 ♕d6 ♔g7 24 ♕xe7 ♕xe5 25 ♕b4 1-0.

See also Alekhine-Böök, Margate 1938 (game 110).

4 ... ♕d7

As the white queen will not be particularly dangerous on c4, there is no reason to make such an effort to force her exchange. Instead, 4...c6 5 ♕xc4 ♗f5 is a sound line.

5 ♕xc4 ♕c6
6 ♘a3

There is but little difference between this move and 6 ♘bd2 since in both cases Black has nothing better, in order to justify his previous manoeuvre, than to exchange queens.

---

might exchange a pair of rooks by ...♖d3-c3-c1. My impression is that while White is in no danger of being worse, Black should be able to hold on by accurate defence.

6 ... ♕xc4
7 ♘xc4 e6
8 a3

It was very important to prevent ...♗b4+.

8 ... c5?

A dogmatic move after which White succeeds in obtaining a clear positional advantage. In his haste to counter-attack in the centre, Black for a moment forgets the importance of d6. A bold, but by no means antipositional, scheme was instead 8...a5 (preventing b4), and if 9 ♗f4 then 9...b5 followed by 10...♗d6. At least in that case White would not so easily obtain the advantage of the pair of bishops.

9 ♗f4 ♘c6

Slightly better was 9...♘bd7 10 ♘d6+ ♗xd6 11 ♗xd6 ♘e4 12 ♗c7 b6 followed by ...♗b7, but the weakness of the dark squares would remain in any case.

10 dxc5 ♗xc5
11 b4 ♗e7
12 b5 ♘b8
13 ♘d6+ ♗xd6
14 ♗xd6 ♘e4
15 ♗c7!

At this stage, the dark-squared bishop is practically White's only winning chance, and he must play extremely carefully in order to prevent its exchange. Inadvisable would be 15 ♗b4 a5! 16 bxa6 ♘xa6, or 15 ♗f4 f6!, followed by 16...e5, with approximately equal prospects in both cases.

15 ... ♘d7 *(D)*
16 ♘d4!

Again an important move, the idea of which is to build up the pawn chain e4, f3, g2. It was not very easy to find, mainly because the two alternatives 16 e3 and 16 g3 also offered some interesting possibilities.

16 ... ♘b6
17 f3 ♘d5
18 ♗a5 ♘ef6

Another important variation was 18...♘d6 19 e4 (not 19 ♘c2 ♘c4) 19...♘e3 20 ♗b4! e5 21 ♗xd6 exd4 22 ♗d3! ♘xg2+ 23 ♔f2 ♘e3 24 ♗e5 ±.

19 ♘c2!

The actual point of the manoeuvre inaugurated by 16 ♘d4: Black's knight is prevented from intruding at e3 and from now on will be forced to play a purely passive role. The chasing of the bishop by the two knights has thus proved a complete failure.

19 ... ♗d7
20 e4 ♖c8

This intermediate move is perfectly harmless, as the white king at d2 cannot be seriously bothered by the half-lamed black forces.

21 ♔d2! ♘b6
22 ♘e3 0-0

All Black's moves since 18...♘ef6 have been virtually forced.

23 a4!

Much stronger than the conventional 23 ♗d3 which would permit the freeing manoeuvre ...♘a4-c5.

23 ... ♖fd8
24 ♗d3 e5

After this weakening of the d5 and f4 squares the game can hardly be saved. Black's only slight chance consisted of 24...♗e8, eventually followed by ...♘fd7. White's tactics in that case would have remained about the same—exchange of one pair of rooks, removal of the a5-bishop and dislodging of the black knight from b6.

25 ♖hc1 ♗e6
26 ♖xc8 ♖xc8
27 ♗b4

Preventing the approach of the enemy king to the centre and eventually threatening ♗d6.

27 ... ♘e8
28 a5 ♘d7 *(D)*

29 ♘d5!

This had to be exactly calculated since the passed pawn resulting from the exchange will be slightly exposed. Because White threatens 30 ♘e7+ Black must take the knight

29 ... ♗xd5
30 exd5 ♘c5

The 'little combination' thus started finds a convincing refutation in White's 32nd move. But what could he actually do? The recommendation of the tournament book, 30...g6, would in the long run be perfectly hopeless after 31 d6 f5 32 ♗b1! ♔g7 33 ♗a2 ♔f6 (33...♘ef6 34 ♖e1) 34 ♗d5.

31 ♗f5! ♖d8

Or 31...♘b3+ 32 ♔d3 ♘c1+ 33 ♔e3 ♖c4 34 d6 and wins.

32 ♔c3!

This pretty move eliminates both threats 32...♘b3+ and 32...♖xd5+, the latter because of the answer 33 ♔c4! winning a piece. White's overwhelming advantage in space now decides the battle in a few moves.

32 ... b6

Or 32...♘d7 33 ♗e7 and wins.

33 axb6 axb6
34 ♗xc5!

The bishop has done in this game more than his duty and may now retire, for the passed b-pawn can only be stopped at a heavy loss.

34 ... bxc5
35 b6 ♘d6
36 ♗d7! ♖xd7

Instead of resigning.

37 ♖a8+

and mate in two.

This game is probably my best purely positional achievement of the last few years.

Game 101
Alekhine – Bogoljubow
Quadrangular Tournament, Bad Nauheim 1937
Queen's Gambit Declined

1 d4 d5
2 c4 e6
3 ♘c3 ♘f6
4 ♗g5 ♗e7
5 ♘f3 h6
6 ♗h4 0-0
7 e3 b6

In conjunction with ...h6, this flank development has often been rather successfully adopted by Dr. Tartakower. White has several plausible ways of meeting it, not one being a convincing refutation. In the present game, I decided to allow Black to fulfil his plan of mobilisation or—to be more precise—the first part of it consisting of ...♗b7, ...♘bd7, ...c5—and to try to take advantage only from one detail of the position, namely the fact that the black queen is deprived of the diagonal d8-a5 and will not easily find a good square. The course of the game shows to what extent the idea proved successful. It lacks tactical points, is emotionless—but by no means dull—and is of use to the student.

8 ♖c1 ♗b7
9 ♗e2

Inducing Black to win a tempo by the following pawn exchange.

9 ... dxc4
10 ♗xc4 c5
11 0-0 ♘bd7

If 11...♘c6 then 12 dxc5 ♕xd1 13 ♖fxd1 and Black would get into trouble because of the possible entry of the rook on to the seventh rank.

12 ♕e2 ♘e4

I suppose many masters would have made this move since, by forcing the exchange of two minor pieces, it frees Black's game and, in particular, provides a safe spot for the queen. Yet it is doubtful whether the more complicated 12...a6 13 ♖fd1 b5 would not have offered more equalising prospects. After the exchange of Black's b7-bishop, the light squares on the queenside suddenly become weak.

13 ♘xe4 ♗xh4

Or 13...♗xe4 14 ♗g3! ±.

14 ♘c3!

This simple retreat is more effective than 14 ♘d6 ♗xf3 15 ♕xf3 ♗e7[1], forcing White to waste more time, or 14 ♗d3 ♗f6, after which Black would avoid the exchange of his light-squared bishop.

14 ... ♗f6
15 ♖fd1 ♕e7

At last communication between the rooks is established, but now comes the actual point of White's previous manoeuvres.

16 ♗a6 ♖ab8
17 ♗xb7 ♖xb7

---

1 Here White can gain a clear advantage by 16 ♘xf7! ♖xf7 17 ♗xe6 ♘f6 18 ♖fd1, so Black should prefer 15...cxd4.

18 ♘e4!

In order to obtain full control of the c-file, White allows the isolation of his d-pawn, which, as the continuation will clearly show, is by no means weak.

18 ... cxd4

19 exd4 *(D)*

Instead, 19 ♘xd4 ♗xd4 20 ♖xd4 ♘f6 would be just good enough for a comfortable draw.

B

19 ... ♖d8

Black's position has become difficult. By playing 19...♘b8 20 ♘e5! he could at least temporarily avoid compromising the kingside pawn structure—but a further suitable plan of defence would be as difficult to find as after the move selected.

20 ♕a6! ♘b8

After 20...♖db8, 21 ♖c8+ would be strong and 20...♘f8 21 ♘xf6+ would leave the c6-square defenceless.

21 ♘xf6+ gxf6[1]

22 ♕e2

Now White has two important trumps—the open file and Black's weak kingside. By rational exploitation this will suffice.

22 ... ♖bd7

23 ♖d3 ♖d5

24 ♖dc3

As the weak pawn requires only one protector, the rooks can, and must, be used to exert strong pressure on the c-file.

24 ... ♔h7

25 h3 a5

Weakens the b-pawn—but otherwise the a-pawn would need lasting defence. Already Black has only a choice between evils.

26 a3

As the opponent has no useful moves at his disposal, White can quietly correct the small defects in his pawn structure.

26 ... ♖g8

27 ♖c7 ♘d7

28 ♖1c6 ♕f8 *(D)*

29 ♕c2+!

More exact than 29 ♖c8 ♕g7! 30 ♕c2+ after which Black would have the answer 30...♕g6.

29 ... f5

Otherwise 30 ♖c8 would be even more effective.

30 ♖c8 ♕e7

31 ♖xg8

---

1 Black could have avoided having his kingside pawns broken up by the simple expedient of playing 21...♔h8 and only then 22...♕xf6. In this case White would only have a marginal edge.

The black rook had to be exchanged, for it prevented the possible activity of the white queen on the kingside.

31 ... ♔xg8
32 ♕c1 ♔g7
33 ♕f4

Threatening 34 ♕g3+, followed by ♖c8.

33 ... ♕d8
34 a4!

Preventing ...♖b5 once and for all, and putting Black into a kind of zugzwang position.

34 ... b5

This natural-looking answer loses rapidly. Comparatively the best was 34...♔h7, after which White finally forces the issue by playing the queen over to the queenside by ♕c1-c4-a6.

35 ♕g3+ ♔f8
36 ♖d6!

This wins at least a pawn by practically forcing a queen exchange. The resulting endgame will not present much difficulty, since there will be still more weaknesses to take advantage of—for instance, the h6-pawn.

36 ... ♕a8

36...bxa4 would be equally hopeless after 37 ♖xd5 exd5 38 ♕d6+ ♕e7 39 ♕xd5.

37 axb5 ♕b7
38 ♖xd5 ♕xd5
39 b6! ♕c6
40 ♕c7 ♕xc7
41 bxc7 ♘b6
42 ♘e5 ♔e7
43 ♘c4

After this the passed b-pawn will force the presence of at least one black piece on the queenside; in the meantime the white king will become master of the other side of the board.

43 ... ♘c8
44 ♘xa5 ♔d7
45 ♔h2 ♔xc7 *(D)*

46 ♔g3 ♔d6
47 ♔h4 ♔d5
48 ♔h5 ♔xd4
49 ♔xh6 e5
50 ♔g5 f4
51 h4 f6+

A last 'try' which White meets in the simplest manner.

52 ♔xf6 e4
53 ♘b3+! ♔d5

Or 53...♔d3/c4 54 ♘c5/d2+ followed by 55 ♘xe4 and h5, winning.

54 h5 e3
55 fxe3 fxe3
56 ♘c1 1-0

Game 102
Alekhine – Sämisch
Quadrangular Tournament, Bad Nauheim 1937
Ruy Lopez

1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 ♗b5 a6
4 ♗a4 ♘f6
5 0-0 ♗e7
6 ♕e2 b5
7 ♗b3 d6
8 c3 0-0

A safer course is 8...♘a5 9 ♗c2 c5, similar to the variation starting with 6 ♖e1.

9 a4! ♗g4

This is comparatively better than 9...b4 10 a5 or 9...♖b8 10 axb5 axb5 11 d4 ±, but still has the disadvantage of taking the bishop out of play if White, as in the actual game, does not accept the pawn offer.

10 h3

More usual is ♖d1 followed by d4. The text move is the beginning of a quite different plan, which aims at limiting the activity of Black's light-squared bishop. Instead 10 axb5 axb5 11 ♖xa8 ♕xa8 12 ♕xb5 ♘a7! would be inadvisable, because Black would regain the pawn with a good position.

10 ... ♗h5

11 g4

The main objections against g4 in this type of position are generally the possibility of a knight sacrifice on g4, and the possibility that Black might later disturb White's pawn structure by means of ...h5. As neither of these eventualities is to be feared here (for instance, 11...♘xg4 12 hxg4 ♗xg4 13 ♕e3, or 11...♗g6 12 d3 h5 13 ♘h4 ±), there was no reason to postpone the imprisonment of the bishop.

11 ... ♗g6
12 d3 ♘a5
13 ♗c2 ♘d7?

The full value of the system adopted by White could only be estimated if Black had built up the classical defensive position by playing 13...c5 followed by ...♕c7. The inconsequential text move—probably motivated by an exaggerated fear of White's ♘h4—leaves White a free hand both in the centre and on the queenside. The first victim of this strategy will be the a5-knight, which will be at once removed to a purely passive square and become merely a target for White's combinative play.

14 b4 ♘b7
15 ♘a3 c6
16 ♗b3 ♘b6

White threatened eventually c4, which would force Black to exchange his b-pawn, thus weakening still further the queenside. The move in the text, which prevents that danger at the cost of a tempo, is therefore not to be blamed.

17 a5 ♘d7
18 ♗e3

In making this last preparatory move for the forthcoming queenside pawn advance, White had to take into account the counter-attack 18...d5!? 19 exd5 c5, which he intended to meet by 20 d6! ♗xd6 21 ♗d5, or 20...♘xd6 21 bxc5, in both cases with advantage.

18 ... ♔h8 *(D)*

Sooner or later compulsory in order to bring the g6-bishop back to life.

W

19 c4!

As will be seen, White's following tactics are based on the weakness of the knight at b7.

19 ... ♘f6

Initiating an ingenious, although not quite sufficient, counter-attack. Indeed, he already had desperately little choice.

20 cxb5 axb5
21 ♘xb5!

A purely positional offer or, to be more accurate, exchanging combination, which in the main variation would develop as follows: 21...cxb5 22 a6 ♕d7 23 axb7 ♕xb7 24 g5! ♖xa1 25 ♖xa1 ♘d7 (otherwise 26 ♖a7 wins) 26 ♘h4[1] ♖a8 27 ♖a5, and Black would finally perish principally because of his helpless bishop on g6. No wonder, therefore, that Sämisch prefers to carry on with the exploitation of White's slightly exposed kingside and to win an important tempo by leaving the hostile knight *en prise*.

21 ... ♕d7!
22 a6 ♘d8
23 ♘c3 ♘xg4!

The interesting point of Black's dynamic defence, which, however, proves to be comparatively harmless, since White can simply continue his 'work' on the other side.

24 b5!

Instead, 24 hxg4 ♕xg4+ 25 ♔h1 ♗h5! would have assured Black of at least a draw. But now matters become very difficult for him because of the formidable threat b6 and the possibility of ♗d5 in case of ...cxb5.

24 ... ♘xe3
25 fxe3

After this compulsory exchange, White's king position is again quite safe.

25 ... cxb5
26 ♗d5 *(D)*

---

1 It seems even better to preface ♘h4 by 26 ♖a7, which prevents Black activating his rook.

B

26 ... ♘e6

To give up a pawn by 26...♘c6 27 ♘xb5 would certainly not be a better alternative, while 26...♖a7 27 ♖fb1 ♕c8 28 ♘xb5 ♖xa6 29 ♘a7! would have lost the exchange just the same[1].

27 ♗xa8 ♖xa8
28 ♕b2 ♘c7
29 ♔g2 f6

Exchanging the b-pawn against White's a-pawn, here or on the next move, would mean certain death after rather long agony.

30 ♕b3!

Taking control of d5 and at the same time preventing ...♗f7.

30 ... ♗e8
31 a7 g6
32 ♖a5 ♔g7
33 ♖fa1 ♗f7
34 ♘d5!

Otherwise Black would obtain some counter-chances after ...d5; but now he is almost forced to exchange at d5, since 34...♕c6 would be answered by 35 ♘xe7 and 34...♗d8 by 35 ♘b6! ♕c6 36 ♘xa8!.

34 ... ♘xd5
35 exd5 ♗e8
36 e4 f5

These last anaemic efforts will be rapidly stopped by an energetic final combination.

37 ♖a6 g5
38 ♕c3! g4 *(D)*

This would at last look like something but for the following drastic stroke.

W

39 ♘xe5!

The knights have certainly performed their best in this fight: the first one contributed in smashing Black's queenside to pieces and his colleague can die happy after cleaving open the way to the heart of the enemy's fortress. The rest is easy.

---

1 I don't understand this line at all, since at the end Black can play 29...♖xa1 30 ♘xc8 ♖xb1+ 31 ♔g2 ♘c6! 32 ♘xd6 ♗xd6 33 ♗xc6 ♖fb8 with a clear advantage to Black. It is hard to see any real improvement for White, so the game position must be judged favourable for Black—indeed, why not, since he is a pawn up and White's kingside has been shattered?

39 ... dxe5
40 ♕xe5+ ♔g8
41 d6!

Threatening 42 ♕d5+.

41 ... ♕c8
42 dxe7 ♕c2+
43 ♔h1 ♕f2
44 ♕xf5 1-0

Game 103
Alekhine – Euwe
Rotterdam Wch (2) 1937
Slav Defence

1 d4 d5
2 c4 c6
3 ♘f3 ♘f6
4 ♘c3 dxc4
5 a4 ♗f5
6 ♘e5

The discovery that the text move is not sufficient to secure White an opening advantage was one of the assets of the present match.

6 ... e6

Bogoljubow played this twice against me in the 1929 match. As the experiment did not succeed (he only managed to draw one game with great difficulty and lost the other) the move 6...e6 disappeared from master practice. But, as was proved, especially by the eleventh game of this match, it is, in fact, much safer than the fashionable Kmoch Variation (i.e. 6...♘bd7 in conjunction with ...♕c7 and ...e5).

7 ♗g5

As, after 7 f3 ♗b4 the move 8 e4? would provoke the absolutely sound sacrifice 8...♗xe4! (first played by Chéron against Przepiorka in The Hague 1928), White must not hurry to form a pawn centre[1].

Still, after the following answer, he had no better move than 8 f3.

7 ... ♗b4

Much more logical than 7...♗e7 as played by Bogoljubow in our 5th match-game, 1929 (see game 58).

8 ♘xc4

Very harmless, since Black, instead of the complicated variation actually selected, could simply play 8...h6, and if 9 ♗h4 then 9...g5 10 ♗g3 ♘e4 11 ♖c1 (or 11 ♕b3 ♘a6) 11...c5, with at least even prospects.

8 ... ♕d5

Also a good move which leads, after a short, sharp intermezzo, to an equally balanced position.

9 ♗xf6

The alternative 9 ♘e3 ♕a5 10 ♘xf5 ♕xf5 was even less promising. And if 9 ♕b3, then 9...♘a6 ∓.

9 ... ♕xc4

Better than 9...gxf6 10 ♘e3 ♕a5 11 ♕b3 with slightly better prospects for White.

10 ♕d2 *(D)*

The only move, for 10 ♖c1? would have been refuted by 10...gxf6 11 e4 ♕a2!.

10 ... gxf6

1 The debate about this sacrifice still rages in the 1990s, as it is one of the main lines of the Slav (GB).

B

More promising was 10...♕b3! 11 ♗xg7 ♖g8 12 ♗h6 ♘d7, with a strong initiative for the pawn.

11 e4 ♕b3
12 exf5 ♘d7
13 fxe6 fxe6
14 ♗e2 0-0-0
15 0-0

The last few moves were practically forced and the position thus reached offers about equal attacking possibilities for both sides.

15 ... e5

This logical move—which brings the knight into a strong position and opens the d-file to Black's advantage—has, in my opinion, been unduly criticised. In any case, 15...♘b6, which was recommended instead, would expose Black to dangerous threats after 16 a5 ♘a4 17 ♕e3 ♘xb2 18 ♖fc1—and this without offering him any real winning prospects[1].

16 dxe5 ♘xe5
17 ♕c1 ♗xc3

As 18 ♘e4 was not really a strong threat, this exchange should have been postponed till a more appropriate moment. Black should have played 17...♖hg8 for if 18 ♘e4 (18 ♕e3 ♕xb2) then 18...♘f3+ 19 ♗xf3 ♕xf3 20 ♘g3 ♕g4, with a quite satisfactory position. After the move in the text White obtains the better chances because his bishop will prove superior to the knight as soon as the black piece is dislodged from e5.

18 bxc3 ♖hg8
19 ♕e3 ♔b8

Not absolutely necessary, since he could indirectly protect his a-pawn by playing 19...♕d5 20 g3 ♕d2 but after 21 ♕xd2 ♖xd2 22 ♖fe1 (22...♘d3 23 ♖ad1!) White's endgame chances would still be the better.

20 g3

As this defensive move is unavoidable, it is better to play it immediately.

20 ... ♖d7
21 ♖ab1 ♕c2 *(D)*
22 ♖fe1!

The most subtle move of the game! With this, White prepares for the important move f4. The immediate advance of that pawn would be refuted by 22...♖d2! 23 ♖fe1 ♘d3.

22 ... ♕d2

---

1 In this line, 16...♘c4 looks very promising for Black, since 17 ♗xc4 ♕xc4 18 ♖fd1 e5 wins the d-pawn, while 17 ♕f4 ♘xb2 forces White to spend time dealing with the threat to the c3-knight. At this stage in the game Black undoubtedly has the better chances.

23 ♕xd2 ♖xd2
24 f4 ♘g6
25 ♗c4 ♖gd8

Or 25...♖g7 26 ♖e8+ ♔c7 27 ♔h1! with advantage for White.

26 ♖e6!

In order to exchange one pair of rooks. It must be noted that Black cannot play 26...♖c2 because of 27 ♗a6 b6 28 ♖xc6.

26 ... ♖8d6
27 ♖be1 ♔c7
28 ♖xd6 ♖xd6

If 28...♔xd6 then 29 ♗g8 threatening both 30 ♗xh7 and 30 ♖e6+.

29 h4

In order to play the king to f2 without being disturbed by the rook check on the second rank.

29 ... ♔d7
30 ♔f2 ♘e7
31 ♔f3 ♘d5?

Allowing the white king to attack the h-pawn. It is, however, more than doubtful whether 31...f5 (which was comparatively the best) would have saved the game. White would then play not 32 g4 because of 32...fxg4+ 33 ♔xg4 ♖g6+ and 34...♘f5 with sufficient counter-chances, but first 32 h5! and, only after that preparation, g4 freeing his f-pawn with disastrous effect for Black.

32 ♗d3!

The decisive manoeuvre forcing a further weakening of Black's kingside pawn structure. Eventual pawn losses on the other wing do not matter any more because the passive position of Black's pieces prevents him from undertaking any serious counter-attack.

32 ... h6
33 ♗f5+ ♔d8
34 ♔g4!

If now 34...♘xc3 then 35 ♔h5 ♘xa4 36 ♔xh6 would win easily.

34 ... ♘e7
35 ♗b1 ♔e8

Or 35...♖d5 36 f5.

36 ♔h5 ♔f7
37 ♗a2+ ♔f8
38 ♔xh6 ♖d2

The main line was 38...♘f5+ 39 ♔g6 ♘xg3 40 f5 followed by the advance of the h-pawn.

39 ♗e6 ♖d3
40 g4 ♖xc3
41 g5 1-0

Even simpler than 41 ♖d1 ♘d5. If now 41...fxg5 then 42 fxg5, winning.

Game 104
Alekhine – Euwe
Haarlem Wch (6) 1937
Slav Defence

1 d4 d5
2 c4 c6
3 ♘c3

In my opinion this move gives White more chances of obtaining an opening advantage, for the following reasons:

1) The dangers of the continuation 3...dxc4 in conjunction with 4...e5 are clearly shown in the present game;

2) the Winawer Counter-attack 3...e5 can be met in a simple and effective manner by 4 cxd5 cxd5 5 e4! and if 5...dxe4, 6 ♗b5+ ±;

3) in answer to 3...♘f6 4 e3 g6 I suggest 5 f3, which after 5...♗g7 6 e4 dxe4 7 fxe4 e5! 8 d5 0-0 9 ♘f3 leads to a rather complicated position, still positionally favourable to White.

3 ... dxc4

4 e4!

It is almost incredible that this quite natural move has not been considered by the so-called theoreticians. White now obtains a clear advantage in development, no matter what Black replies.

4 ... e5

The alternative is 4...b5 5 a4 e5 (or 5...b4 6 ♘a2 ♘f6 7 e5 ♘d5 8 ♗xc4 ±) 6 axb5 exd4 7 ♗xc4! ♗b4! 8 ♖a4 a5 9 bxa6, and White will emerge a pawn to the good.

5 ♗xc4

This sacrificial combination is certainly very tempting and, especially over the board, extremely difficult to refute; but it is by no means the necessary consequence of White's previous move, which has a value absolutely independent of the correctness of the piece sacrifice.

The positional exploitation of White's advantage in space consists of 5 ♘f3! exd4 6 ♕xd4 ♕xd4 7 ♘xd4 after which Black would only get into further trouble by trying to protect the gambit-pawn; for instance, 7...b5 8 a4 b4 9 ♘d1 ♗a6 10 ♗e3 ♘f6 11 f3 followed by ♖c1 and ♗xc4 with a clear positional advantage.

5 ... exd4

Fatal would be 5...♕xd4 6 ♕b3 ♕d7 7 ♗g5! with a winning attack.

6 ♘f3 *(D)*

Putting before Black a most difficult practical problem.

B

6 ... b5?

Which he not only fails to solve, but even selects a move that immediately brings him a decisive disadvantage. As a matter of fact, the offer could be accepted since Black would have at his disposal a more effective line than the one I had analysed when proposing it. My 'chief' variation was the following: 6...dxc3 7 ♗xf7+ ♔e7 8 ♕b3 ♘f6 9 e5 ♘e4 10 0-0! ♕b6 (or 10...♘a6 11 ♕c4! ♘ac5 12 ♗g5+! ♘xg5 13 ♘xg5

with a winning attack) 11 ♕c4! cxb2 12 ♗xb2 ♕xb2 13 ♕xe4 ♔xf7 14 ♘g5+ ♔e8 15 ♕c4 ♗e7 16 ♕f7+ ♔d8 17 ♖ad1+ ♗d7 18 ♘e6+ ♔c8 19 ♕xe7 ♕xe5 20 ♖fe1 ♕f6 21 ♖xd7 ♕xe7 (21...♘xd7 22 ♕d6 winning) 22 ♖xe7 with a won position. But, instead of 8...♘f6 Black could play 8...cxb2 9 ♗xb2 ♕b6! 10 ♗xg8 ♖xg8 11 ♕xg8 (or 11 ♗a3+ c5) 11...♕b4+ 12 ♘d2 ♕xb2 after which his middlegame chances, in spite of the approximate equality of forces, should be estimated decidedly higher than White's remaining possibilities of a direct attack. Consequently, unless an improvement can be found in this last line of play, White's knight offer will hardly be repeated, at least in serious practice.

7 ♘xb5!

Dr. Euwe admits simply having overlooked this reply. This time the knight obviously cannot be taken because of 8 ♗d5.

7 ... ♗a6

8 ♕b3!

An important move with a triple object: to protect the c4-bishop, to prevent the check at b4 and to strengthen the pressure against f7.

8 ... ♕e7

If 8...♗xb5 then 9 ♗xf7+ ♔d7 10 ♘xd4! (not 10 ♗xg8? ♖xg8) with an easy win.

9 0-0 ♗xb5

10 ♗xb5 ♘f6

Of course not 10...cxb5 because of 11 ♕d5.

11 ♗c4 ♘bd7

12 ♘xd4

Another winning method was 12 e5 ♘xe5 (if 12...♘e4, 13 ♕b7) 13 ♘xe5 ♕xe5 14 ♕b7 ♖b8 15 ♕xf7+ ♔d8 16 ♕xa7 but after 16...♗d6 Black would be able to put at least as much further resistance as after the simple text move.

12 ... ♖b8

13 ♕c2 ♕c5

Hereafter, White, in order to win, has only to avoid a few little traps.

14 ♘f5

Here, for instance, 14 ♘xc6 would be wrong because of 14....♖c8!.

14 ... ♘e5

15 ♗f4!

And now, after the tempting 15 ♘xg7+ ♔d8! (15...♗xg7? 16 ♗xf7+) 16 ♖d1+ ♔c7 two white pieces would be *en prise*.

15 ... ♘h5 *(D)*

16 ♗xf7+!

A very profitable simplification. 16 ♗xe5 ♕xe5 17 ♗e2 ♕c5 18 ♕xc5 ♗xc5 19 ♗xh5 g6 would be less convincing.

16 ... ♔xf7

17 ♕xc5 ♗xc5

18 ♗xe5 ♖b5

19 ♗d6

Threatening 20 a4.

19 ... ♗b6

20 b4!

And now the rook is in danger. Black cannot avoid further loss of material.

20 ... ♖d8

21 ♖ad1 c5

22 bxc5 ♗xc5

23 ♖d5! 1-0

White will win at least the exchange.

Game 105

Alekhine – Euwe

Leiden Wch (8) 1937

Nimzo-Indian Defence

1 d4 ♘f6

2 c4 e6

3 ♘c3 ♗b4

4 ♕c2

I believe that this move is the most logical of the many moves possible (4 ♕b3, 4 a3, 4 ♗d2, 4 ♗g5, 4 e3, 4 ♘f3, 4 g3 or even 4 ♗f4), as it achieves two important objects: it keeps control over e4 and it prevents, temporarily at least, the doubling of White's c-pawns.

4 ... d5

5 cxd5

If 5 a3 ♗xc3+ 6 ♕xc3 ♘e4 7 ♕c2 c5 8 dxc5 ♘c6 9 e3 Black obtains an equal game by continuing 9...♕a5+ 10 ♗d2 ♘xd2 11 ♕xd2 dxc4! and if 12 ♕xa5 ♘xa5 13 ♖c1 then 13...b5! 14 cxb6 ♗b7!.

5 ... ♕xd5

6 e3

If 6 ♘f3 then, for instance, 6...c5 7 ♗d2 ♗xc3 8 ♗xc3 cxd4 9 ♘xd4 e5! (Levenfish-Botvinnik, 7th match-game, 1937).

6 ... c5

7 a3 ♗xc3+

8 bxc3 ♘bd7

There is no hurry developing the knight. 8...0-0 9 ♘f3 b6! seems to be more appropriate for equalising, and if 10 ♗e2, then 10...cxd4 11 cxd4 ♗a6! as, for instance, I played (with Black) against Grau in Montevideo 1938.

9 f3

A sound strategic scheme: White intends to meet the eventual ...e5 by the counter-advance e4. However, first 9 ♘e2 would be still more exact, since then 9...cxd4 10 cxd4 ♘b6 would not be satisfactory because of 11 ♘c3.

9 ... cxd4

10 cxd4 ♘b6

11 ♘e2 ♗d7

12 ♘f4

Played in order to obtain a slight endgame advantage after 12...♕c6 13 ♕xc6. If, instead, 12 ♘c3 then 12...♕c6 with a quite satisfactory game.

12 ... ♕d6

13 ♗d2 ♖c8

14 ♕b2 ♘fd5

Doubtless the best move, eliminating any immediate danger in the centre.

15 ♘xd5 exd5

16 ♗b4 ♕e6 *(D)*

If 16...♕g6 then 17 ♖c1.

17 ♔f2

The first move of the 'Indian' Castling (see game 75 against Sultan Khan). Actually, the king, in this position, is quite comfortable on f2.

17 ... ♘a4

The first deviation from the logical path. By far the best drawing chance was 17...♘c4 (but not 17...f5 18 ♗c5! ±) 18 ♗xc4 ♖xc4 thus obtaining opposite-coloured bishops; if, for instance, 19 ♖ac1 then Black can reply 19...♖xc1 20 ♖xc1 ♗c6 21 ♕c3 f6 22 ♕c5 a6 23 ♕b6 ♕d7, with an adequate defence.

18 ♕d2 b6? *(D)*

A fatal mistake, allowing White to win by force. 18...f5 was necessary, although White's advantage after 19 ♗d3 followed by ♖he1 and eventually e4 would already be evident.

19 ♗a6! ♖b8

As the sequel shows, the threat to imprison the bishop by ...b5 is by no means an effective one. But 19...♖c7 20 ♖ac1 would be equally hopeless for Black.

20 e4

This simple opening-up of the centre leaves Black without any saving resource.

20 ... b5

If 20...f6 then 21 exd5 ♕xd5 22 ♕e2+! ♕e6 23 ♖he1 ♕xe2+ 24 ♖xe2+ ♔d8 25 ♗e7+ ♔c7 26 ♖c1+ and wins.

21 ♕f4!

This powerful zwischenzug destroys Black's last hopes of catching the bishop on a6. If now 21...♖d8, then 22 exd5 ♕xd5 23 ♖he1+ ♗e6 24 ♖e5 ♕xd4+ 25 ♕xd4 ♖xd4 26 ♗xb5+ and wins.

21 ... ♖b6

22 exd5

This is more precise than 22 ♖he1, which could be answered by 22...♘b2!.

22 ... ♕xd5

23 ♖he1+ ♗e6

24 ♖ac1

With the terrible threat of 25 ♖c8+.

24 ... f6

25 ♖c7!

More convincing than the win of the exchange by 25 ♖c8+.

25 ... ♔d8

26 ♖xa7 1-0

As mate in a few moves is unavoidable.

Game 106
Alekhine – Euwe
Zwolle Wch (14) 1937
Catalan Opening

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e6
3 g3 d5

The Soviet grandmaster Levenfish played, in a tournament game at Tbilisi 1937, 3...♗b4+ 4 ♗d2 ♗xd2+ 5 ♕xd2 ♘e4 6 ♕c2 d5 7 ♗g2 ♕e7 8 a3 f5 and obtained a quite satisfactory position. The text move, in conjunction with the next one, leads to a modern variation of the Queen's Gambit Accepted which is slightly in White's favour.

4 ♘f3

White need not avoid the exchange of queens by playing 4 ♗g2, since after 4...dxc4 5 ♕a4+ ♕d7 6 ♕xc4 ♕c6 7 ♘d2, he would obtain an advantage both in space and development.

4 ... dxc4
5 ♕a4+ ♘bd7
6 ♕xc4

There is no advantage to be obtained by delaying this capture, for instance, if 6 ♗g2 a6 7 ♘c3, then 7...♖b8! 8 ♕xc4 b5, at least equalising.

6 ... c5

If now 6...a6 then 7 ♕c2! in order to answer 7...b5 by 8 a4. The same manoeuvre would apply if Black were to play ...a6 on his seventh move.

7 ♗g2 ♘b6

This plan has the disadvantage of not solving the problem of the development of the queen's bishop. First 7...cxd4 would be more advisable, and if 8 ♘xd4 then 8...♘b6 followed by 9...♗b4+; and if 8 ♕xd4, then 8...♗c5 9 ♕h4 ♗e7, still harassing the adventurous white queen.

8 ♕d3 cxd4
9 0-0!

In order to prevent 9...♗b4+, which is possible after 9 ♘xd4, for instance. Black's extra pawn cannot be protected because of (9...♗c5) 10 b4!.

9 ... ♗e7
10 ♘xd4 0-0

Of course not 10...e5 because of 11 ♕b5+ ♘fd7 12 ♘f5, with a clear advantage.

11 ♘c3 e5

The following double exchange is rather risky, since the slight disturbance of White's queenside pawn structure will be more than compensated by the advantage of the two bishops. 11...♕d7 would be an interesting attempt, aiming both at 12...e5 and 12...♖d8.

12 ♘f5 ♗b4
13 ♕c2! ♗xc3
14 bxc3 ♗xf5?

This exchange was necessary sooner or later, it is true—but why the haste? As Black intended to play ...♕c7 he would have been better advised to do this at once, thereby giving White less choice of attacking moves.

15 ♕xf5 ♕c7 *(D)*
16 ♗h6

The main object of this rather difficult move is to prevent a knight

move to d5, which is possible, for instance, after 16 ♗g5.

If now 16...♘fd5, then 17 ♗e4! g6 18 ♕f3 ♖fd8 19 ♖fd1 is to White's advantage[1].

16 ... ♘bd7

17 ♕g5?!

But by leaving his bishop so dangerously placed, White certainly complicates matters without necessity. Simple and strong was 17 ♗e3 and if 17...g6 then 18 ♕g5, with a considerable positional advantage.

17 ... ♘e8

18 ♖ab1

Also possible was 18 ♗h3—a move which I intended to play later on as an answer to, for example, 18...♖b8.

18 ... ♘c5

The tempting 18...♘b6 would have been answered by 19 a4! and if 19...f6 then 20 ♕f5! gxh6 21 a5 ♕d7 22 ♕h5 and Black would get into serious trouble if he tried to keep the extra piece much longer.

19 ♕g4 ♖d8

It would hardly be a wise policy to force the exchange of queens by playing 19...♕c8, since after 20 ♕xc8 ♖xc8 21 ♗g5 f6 22 ♗d5+ followed by 23 ♗e3 the bishops would certainly play a vital part in the endgame.

20 ♗g5 ♖d6

21 ♕c4

Preparing the advance of the f-pawn, which at this moment would have been premature, for instance 21 f4 h6 22 fxe5? ♖g6 ∓.

21 ... b6

White threatened 22 ♗xb7.

22 f4 ♖g6!

With this and the following few strong moves Black eliminates any immediate danger.

23 ♖bd1

Threatening 24 ♗d8 followed by f5.

23 ... e4

Preventing the above threat since 24 ♗d8 ♘d6! 25 ♗xc7 ♘xc4 would now be to Black's advantage.

24 ♗h4!

After this well-timed retreat the black position begins to look very precarious because, for instance, 24...♘d6 25 ♕d5 ♘b5[2] 26 ♖c1 ♖d6 27 ♕c4 would be in White's favour.

---

1 I don't see White's advantage after the obvious 19...♕xc3, when White has to go into contortions to avoid the exchange of queens. However, simply replacing 19 ♖fd1 by 19 ♖ad1 vindicates Alekhine's opinion (indeed, this might very well be a misprint).

2 25...♘a4 looks much better.

By the following interesting pawn offer Black succeeds in removing the white queen to a less active square, but at the heavy price of a serious weakening of the position of his knight at c5.

24 ... b5!?
25 ♕b4!

The only correct answer, for 25 ♕xb5 would permit Black to place a knight on f5 via d6 after which the threats of ...♘xh4 and ...♘e3 would secure him a promising initiative.

25 ... a5
26 ♕a3 *(D)*

And not 26 ♕b2 or 26 ♕b1 because of 26...♘a4.

B

26 ... f5?

The wish to prevent f5 and at the same time secure the e-pawn is quite understandable, but the move has the grave inconvenience of making Black's position in the centre even more shaky than it was before. A perfectly satisfactory line was, however, hardly to be found. If, for instance, 26...♖d6 (recommended by the great theoretician, Prof. Becker, as even giving Black an advantage!) then 27 ♗e7! ♖xd1 (27...♕xe7 28 ♕xc5 ±) 28 ♗xc5! ♖xf1+ 29 ♔xf1 after which Black would have to suffer further material loss. After the comparatively better 26...♘d6 White would secure a definite positional advantage by the important move 27 ♖d5!. Black had therefore only the choice between unpleasant alternatives.

27 ♗d8!

A most unpleasant shock: White gets his threat in first and thus prevents the harmonious co-operation of Black's forces.

27 ... ♕a7
28 ♔h1 ♖a6
29 ♖d5

The simple domination of the central file by the rooks will soon prove decisive owing to the numerous pawn weaknesses created by 23rd-26th moves of Black.

29 ... ♘e6
30 ♖fd1 ♘xd8

If, instead, 30...♕e3, then simply 31 ♕b2 and the threats would remain.

31 ♖xd8 ♕f7
32 ♖1d5

This is more effective than 32 ♖1d7 ♕c4.

32 ... ♖c6
33 ♖xb5 ♕c4
34 ♖xf5!

Conclusive, because 34...♖xf5 35 ♖xe8+ ♔f7 36 ♕e7+ ♔g6 37 ♗xe4 would be absolutely hopeless for Black.

34 ... ♖cf6
35 ♖xf6 gxf6 *(D)*

36 ♖d4?!

A typical 'short-of-time' calculation. I was glad to find a practically forced sequence of moves that would bring me without damage over the ominous 40th move—and did not pay attention to the simple 36 ♕b3, forcing an endgame with two extra pawns and most probably immediate resignation!

36 ... ♕xe2
37 ♕b3+ ♔h8
38 ♖xe4 ♕d2
39 ♕b1!

Technically easier than 39 h3 ♘d6 with slight fighting possibilities for Black.

39 ... ♕xc3
40 ♕e1 ♕xe1+

Or 40...♕c8 41 ♕xa5.

41 ♖xe1

The ending is easily won as White, besides his extra pawn, has a very strong bishop against a knight completely lacking safe squares in the centre of the board.

41 ... ♘d6
42 ♗c6!

Immobilising the knight (because of the eventual threat to exchange rooks by ♖e8) and simultaneously preventing a further advance of Black's a-pawn.

42 ... ♖b8

Or 42...♖c8 43 ♗a4.

43 ♖e6 ♖b1+
44 ♔g2 ♖b2+
45 ♔h3 ♘f5
46 ♖xf6 ♘e7
47 ♗e4 ♔g7
48 ♖e6 ♔f7
49 ♖h6 ♖xa2
50 ♖xh7+ ♔f6
51 ♖h6+ ♔f7
52 ♖a6 1-0

Game 107
Alekhine – Euwe
Delft Wch (22) 1937
Réti Opening

1 ♘f3 d5
2 c4 d4
3 e3

After 3 b4 Black could play 3...f6 followed by ...e5 with good prospects. The move selected prevents this possibility, since after 3 e3 c5 4 b4 f6 White can play, not 5 bxc5 e5! with about even chances, but 5 exd4 cxd4 6 c5! (this last move, which appears very effective, was discovered by myself when preparing for the match), after which the weakness of the diagonal a2-g8 would cause Black considerable trouble. If 6...e5, then 7 ♗c4; if 6...♕d5, then 7 ♕c2 ±; if 6...a5, then 7 ♕a4+ ♗d7 8 b5 e5 9 ♗c4 and Black cannot play 9...♗xc5 because of 10 ♗xg8 followed by 11 ♕c4. In other words,

the consequences of 3...c5 seem to be decidedly in White's favour.

3 ... ♘c6

On the contrary, after this move White will find it very difficult (if indeed possible) to obtain any opening advantage.

4 exd4 ♘xd4
5 ♘xd4 ♕xd4
6 ♘c3 ♘f6

Even simpler is 6...e5 immediately, but as Black can still advance his e-pawn next move, the text continuation does not spoil anything yet.

7 d3

Useless would be 7 ♘b5 ♕b6 8 d4 e5! 9 c5 ♕c6 10 ♘c3 a6[1].

7 ... c6?

A serious loss of time, instead of which 7...e5 was quite sufficient. If then 8 ♗e3, simply 8...♕d8 9 d4 ♘g4 or if 9 ♗e2, then 9...c5 (or even more solid, 9...♗e7), in both cases with an approximately equal game.

8 ♗e3 ♕d7

With the intention of developing the bishops on the long diagonals. But White's advantage in space becomes evident in a very few moves.

9 d4 g6
10 ♗e2 ♗g7

Threatening...♘g4, which would have been useless immediately because of 11 ♗f4 followed by h3.

11 h3 0-0
12 0-0 b6
13 ♗f3 ♗b7 *(D)*

14 a4!

In order to make a break in the centre more effective, White tries first to weaken b6. The sequel will prove the soundness of this scheme.

14 ... ♖ad8

In connection with his eighteenth move, this looks like a loss of time, but in reality it is almost a sad necessity since after a5 Black will have to deal with the threat a6; on the other hand, after the exchange on b6 he will be obliged to offer the exchange of at least one pair of rooks.

15 a5 ♕c7

This and the next move are necessary in order to give sufficient protection to the weak square b6.

16 ♕b3 ♘d7
17 axb6 axb6
18 ♖a7 ♖a8

White's main threat was 19 d5.

19 ♖fa1 e6

Otherwise the imminent d5 would be even more unpleasant than it proved to be in the actual game.

---

1 10 dxe5 followed by 11 ♕d5! is good for White, but the solid 8...c6 would have been adequate for Black.

20 ♖xa8 ♗xa8 *(D)*

This move has been unduly criticised. After 20...♖xa8 21 ♖xa8+ ♗xa8 22 ♕a3 ♗b7 23 b4 White would have to face a technically easier problem than in the actual game.

21 d5!

By no means an easy decision to make, as I was fully aware that the resulting exchanges would cede to Black important squares in the centre. Still, it was necessary to undertake something definite at this particular moment since:

1) White has no means of improving the excellent position of his pieces;

2) Black, on the contrary, could eventually try to generate an attack against White's d-pawn, starting by ...♖d8; and

3) this is the only possibility of taking advantage of the weakness of b6, created by the advance of White's a-pawn.

21 ... cxd5
22 cxd5 ♘c5

The tactical justification of the move 21 d5 resides in the variation 22...♗xc3 23 d6! ♕xd6 24 ♕xc3 ♗xf3 25 ♗h6! and White wins the exchange. And if 22...♘e5, then 23 ♗e4 still threatening d6.

23 ♕c4

If 23 ♗xc5 ♕xc5 24 dxe6, then 24...♗xf3 25 exf7+ ♖xf7 26 gxf3 ♗xc3 27 ♖a7 ♕g5+ with perpetual check.

23 ... exd5
24 ♗xd5 ♗xd5
25 ♘xd5 ♕e5

Black selects the most aggressive variation, which is certainly more promising than the purely passive 25...♕b7 26 ♖b1 ♘d7 27 ♕b5! with a clear space advantage for White.

26 ♖b1 ♘a4!

An ingenious way of keeping the sick pawn, at least temporarily. The next moves on both sides had to be most exactly calculated.

27 b3 ♘b2
28 ♕c6 b5!

The point of the knight manoeuvre; this pawn cannot be taken because of the answer 29...♖d8.

29 ♗f4! ♕e6

After this, White, as the succeeding moves show, can take the pawn. The only adequate defence was 29...♕e2! which would be answered by 30 ♖f1! still leaving Black with the following weak spots:

a) the b-pawn;

b) the square f6;

c) last but not least, the insecure position of the knight at b2.

30 ♕xb5!

This seemingly very risky capture secures White a material advantage

which he will succeed in keeping until the end. If now 30...♖d8, then 31 ♖c1! ♖xd5 32 ♕b8+ (this is why 29 ♗f4 was necessary) 32...♗f8 33 ♗h6 ♕d6 (or 33...♕e7 34 ♖c8) 34 ♕xd6 ♖xd6 35 ♖c8 and wins.

30 ... ♕e4

31 ♖c1 ♘d3

Or 31...♖d8 32 ♗g5 with variations similar to those mentioned above.

32 ♕c4!

Again the only move, but amply sufficient to maintain the advantage.

32 ... ♕e2

32...♗d4 would be a grave mistake because of 33 ♘f6+.

33 ♖f1 ♘xf4

Black has practically no choice, for 33...♖e8 (threatening 34...♕xf1+) would be easily met by 34 ♗e3.

34 ♕xf4

And not 34 ♘xf4 ♕xc4 35 bxc4 ♖c8 36 ♖c1 ♗h6 with a probable draw.

34 ... ♕b5 *(D)*

W

35 ♕f3!

White still has to be careful. Here, for instance, the more 'natural' move 35 ♕c4 would lead to a speedy draw after 35...♖b8.

35 ... ♖b8

36 ♖b1 ♕a6

37 ♖d1

This attempt to repeat moves, due to a slight shortage of time, leads to extremely interesting complications. After the simple 37 b4 White would not have much trouble in taking advantage of the passed pawn. A plausible variation would be, for instance, 37...♕c4 38 ♘e7+ ♔f8 39 ♘c6 ♖b6 40 b5! ♖xb5 41 ♕a3+ and wins[1].

37 ... ♕a3

38 ♖b1 ♕a2

39 ♕d3 ♗d4

This counter-attack only compromises Black's king position, but it is difficult to suggest a satisfactory line of play, for White is threatening simply to advance his passed pawn.

40 ♖f1 ♕b2

The alternative 40...♕a7 would also be unsatisfactory due to 41 b4.

41 ♘e7+!

This sealed move initiates the final attack which, after a dozen moves, leads practically by force to the win of the queen for two pieces.

41 ... ♔f8

The only move. Hopeless would be 41...♔g7 42 ♘f5+! gxf5 43 ♕g3+

1 Black has a much better defence in 40...♗b2!, but this is irrelevant as White has an earlier forced win by 40 ♕d1! ♗f6 41 ♘e5!.

followed by ♕xb8, or 41...♔h8 42 ♘c6 ♗xf2+ 43 ♖xf2 ♕c1+ 44 ♔h2 ♕xc6 45 ♖xf7.

42 ♘c6 ♗xf2+

43 ♔h2! *(D)*

The idea of this pawn sacrifice (instead of 43 ♖xf2 ♕c1+ 44 ♕f1 ♕xc6 45 ♖xf7+ ♔g8 46 ♖f3 with very problematic winning chances) will become apparent only after the 48th move. The ensuing knight manoeuvre is very spectacular.

43 ... ♖e8

If 43...♖b7 then 44 ♕f3 ♗b6 (or 44...♗c5 45 ♕d5) 45 ♘d8! winning at least the exchange[1].

44 ♕f3 ♖e2

Again the only move, as is also the following. But had the white king gone to h1 on the 43rd move, then 44...♖e1 would have saved Black.

45 ♘d4! ♖d2

46 ♘e6+ ♔e7

47 ♘f4

Threatening 48 ♘d3.

47 ... ♕d4

Or 47...♕c2 48 ♖a1 and the exposed king would succumb to the attack of the three white pieces.

48 ♔h1! *(D)*

Only this 'quiet' move, which had to be calculated a long time before, justifies the attack started by 43 ♔h2. White now threatens 49 ♘e2, and if Black tries to prevent this by 48...♗h4 he loses as follows: 49 ♕b7+ ♕d7[2] 50 ♕b4+ ♔e8 51 ♘e6!

---

1 At the end of this line Black can play 45...♕e5+ 46 g3 (46 ♔h1 ♗xd8! 47 ♕xb7 ♗c7 draws) 46...♖e7 47 ♘xf7 ♕e2+ 48 ♕xe2 ♖xe2+ 49 ♔h1 ♔e7 with an almost certain draw. Since there are no real improvements for White, it would appear that the move chosen by Euwe threw away good drawing chances.

2 Alekhine does not analyse 49...♔e8, but then White has a beautiful win by 50 ♘e6! (the only method) 50...♕d7 (50...fxe6 51 ♕f7+ ♔d8 52 ♕f8+ ♔c7 53 ♖f7+ ♔b6 54 ♕b8+ ♔a6 55 ♕a8+ ♔b6 56 ♖b7+ ♔c5 57 ♕c8+ wins the queen) 51 ♕b8+ ♔e7 52 ♕b4+ ♔xe6 53 ♕e4+ ♔d6 54 ♕f4+ ♔e7 (the only move to avoid a devastating rook check) 55 ♕xf7+ ♔d8 56 ♕f8+ ♕e8 57 ♕b4!.

(stronger than 51 ♘xg6 hxg6 52 ♕xh4 ♖d1!) 51...♗e7 52 ♕b8+ ♗d8 53 ♘xd8 ♕xd8 54 ♕e5+ ♕e7 55 ♕h8+ ♔d7 56 ♕xh7 ♖f2 57 ♖d1+ ♔c7 58 ♕h8.

48 ... ♖a2

Or 48...h5 49 ♘e2 ♖d1, which would not greatly differ from the line of play actually adopted.

49 ♘e2[1] ♖a1

50 ♕b7+

Of course not 50 ♘xd4? ♖xf1+ followed by ...♗g1+ winning back the queen.

50 ... ♔f6?

The game was lost, anyhow, but 50...♔f8 would have prolonged the battle—for instance, 51 ♘xd4 ♖xf1+ 52 ♔h2 ♗g1+ 53 ♔g3 ♗f2+ 54 ♔f3[2] ♗xd4+ 55 ♔e4 ♗f6 or 55 ♔e2 ♖f2+ 56 ♔e1 ♔g7!.

In this variation White, in order to win, would have been obliged to use his reserve trump—the passed pawn.

51 ♘xd4 ♖xf1+

52 ♔h2 ♗g1+

53 ♔g3 ♗f2+

54 ♔f3 ♗xd4+

55 ♔e4 ♖d1

Now forced, as White threatened 56 ♕a6+.

56 ♕d5?!

There was really no need to bother about calculating the (won) pawn endgame after 56...♖e1+ 57 ♔xd4 ♖d1+ 58 ♔c5 ♖xd5+ 59 ♔xd5 ♔e7 60 ♔c6, as the simple 56 ♕c6+ followed by 57 ♕c2 would have won immediately! This is the only (fortunately negligible) omission I committed in this unusually difficult game.

56 ... ♔e7

57 g4 h5

Despair.

58 gxh5 f5+

59 ♔f3 ♖d3+

60 ♔e2 ♖e3+

61 ♔d2 ♖e4

62 hxg6 1-0

Game 108

Alekhine – Euwe

Rotterdam Wch (24) 1937

Semi-Tarrasch Defence

1 ♘f3 d5

2 c4 e6

For 2...d4 see Game 107.

3 d4 ♘f6

4 ♘c3 c5

5 cxd5 ♘xd5

6 g3

A harmless deviation from the usual 6 e4. In both cases Black has very little trouble developing his pieces.

6 ... cxd4

---

1 Here White missed a quick win by the curious manoeuvre 49 ♘d5+, followed by 50 ♘c3 forcing the rook along the second rank, and only then 51 ♘e2 winning material, since Black has been deprived of the defence ...♖a1.

2 In fact White can win easily by 54 ♔g4! h5+ (54...f5+ 55 ♘xf5) 55 ♔g5 ♗e3+ 56 ♔h4 and now either 56...♗xd4 57 ♕b4+ or 56...♖f4+ 57 ♔g3 ♖xd4 58 ♕b8+ and 59 ♕e5+.

Also good enough is 6...♘c6 7 ♗g2 ♘xd4 8 ♘xd4 ♘xc3 9 bxc3 cxd4 10 ♕xd4 ♕xd4 11 cxd4 ♗d6 12 a4 ♔e7 with equality, as played in the last of the exhibition games arranged after the match.

7 ♘xd5 ♕xd5
8 ♕xd4 ♕xd4
9 ♘xd4 ♗b4+

There is nothing to be said against this check and the following exchange.

10 ♗d2 ♗xd2+
11 ♔xd2 *(D)*

B

11 ... ♔e7?

But neglecting to develop the queenside pieces will be the cause of all Black's trouble. 11...♗d7 12 ♗g2 ♘c6 13 ♘xc6 ♗xc6 14 ♗xc6+ bxc6 15 ♖ac1 0-0-0+ 16 ♔e3 ♔c7 was indicated, with an easily defensible rook endgame.

12 ♗g2 ♖d8
13 ♔e3 ♘a6

Practically forced, as c7 needed protection. But the knight on a6 will not only be out of play but also, as the sequel will show, dangerously exposed. The next part of the game, which ends with White winning a pawn, is easy to understand but still rather instructive.

14 ♖ac1 ♖b8
15 a3

15 ♘b5 would be useless because of 15...♗d7 (16 ♘xa7? ♖a8).

15 ... ♗d7

Threatening 16...e5 which White prevents by his next move.

16 f4 f6

This move has been criticised, without much reason, in my opinion, since in the long run Black would not be able to avoid material loss anyhow. If, for instance, 16...♗e8 then 17 b4 ♖d7 18 ♘b5 ♖a8 19 ♖c3 followed by 20 ♖fc1 and 21 ♖c8 or 21 ♘c7. In the actual game Black, in spite of pawn minus, will still keep some drawing chances.

17 ♗e4!

A typical 'centralisation' which the late Nimzowitsch would certainly have enjoyed. White not only attacks the h-pawn, but threatens in some variations ♗d3 and (what is still more important) prevents 17...e5 because of 18 fxe5 dxe5 19 ♘f3, winning a pawn.

17 ... ♗e8

Preventing 18 ♗xh7, as the answer 18...g6, with the threats ...♗f7 (followed by ...♖h8) and ...♖ac8 (followed by ...♘c7), would give Black sufficient resources. But with his next two moves White succeeds in taking advantage of the weakness of e6.

18 b4! ♖d7
19 f5! ♘c7

Comparatively better than 19...e5 20 ♘e6 or 19...exf5 20 ♗xf5 ♖d5 21 ♗xh7, in both cases with considerable advantage for White.

20 fxe6 ♘xe6
21 ♘xe6 ♔xe6
22 ♗xh7

Thus White has obtained a material plus, but his positional advantage has in the meantime almost vanished, and Black will even succeed in obtaining some pressure on the e-file.

22 ... f5
23 ♖c5!

Preparing the exchange of bishops at d5.

23 ... g6
24 ♗g8+ ♔f6
25 ♖hc1 ♖e7+
26 ♔f2 ♗c6
27 ♗d5 ♖be8
28 ♖e1!

By far the best, as 28 ♖1c2 ♗a4 29 ♖d2 b6 30 ♖c3 ♖d8 would lead to an unpleasant pin.

28 ... ♗xd5
29 ♖xd5 g5 *(D)*

30 ♖d6+ ♔e5?

After this desperate advance the game speedily becomes hopeless. The natural course was 30...♔f7 31 h4 gxh4 32 gxh4 ♖h8 33 ♖d4 and White would still have some technical difficulties in order to force the win.

31 ♖ed1 g4

It would be equally hopeless to play 31...♖e6 32 ♖d7 ♖8e7 33 h4.

32 ♖1d5+ ♔e4
33 ♖d4+ ♔e5
34 ♔e3

Also possible was 34 e4 which would lead to the win of a second pawn, but permit Black a longer resistance than occurred in the actual game—for instance 34...♖c8! 35 ♖6d5+ ♔e6 36 exf5+ ♔f6. The way selected is simple enough.

34 ... ♖e6

Or 34...f4+ 35 ♔d3!, still threatening mate.

35 ♖4d5+ ♔f6+
36 ♔f4 ♔g6
37 ♖xe6+ ♖xe6
38 ♖e5 ♖a6

If 38...♖f6 then 39 e4 fxe4+ 40 ♔xg4 ♖f2 41 h4 winning rapidly.

39 ♖xf5 ♖xa3
40 ♖b5!

The immediate 40 ♔xg4 would probably win too, but the text manoeuvre is more exact.

40 ... b6
41 ♔xg4 1-0

If now 41...♖e3, then 42 ♖g5+ ♔h6 43 b5! (the point of the 40th move) 43...♖xe2 44 h4, after which there would be no fighting chances for Black.

Game 109
Euwe – Alekhine
The Hague Wch (25) 1937
Nimzo-Indian Defence

1 d4 ♘f6
2 c4 e6
3 ♘c3 ♗b4
4 e3 0-0
5 ♘e2

This is one of the less fortunate inventions of the great openings artist, Rubinstein. Its weak point is that the knight will not have much future either on f4 or on g3 and that Black, by making the simplest moves, will obtain a slight advantage in development. Therefore, 5 ♗d3 first is preferable, and if 5...b6 then 6 ♘e2 (or even 6 ♕f3), or if 5...d5, then 6 ♘f3, with fairly good prospects.

5 ... d5
6 a3 ♗e7
7 cxd5

Since White intended to play ♘g3 he would have done better to delay this exchange. In fact, after 7 ♘g3 c5 8 dxc5 ♗xc5 9 b4 the move 9...d4 would have been wrong because of 10 ♘ce4 and if 10...♗b6 then 11 c5. Consequently, Black would have been obliged to modify his plan of development.

7 ... exd5
8 ♘g3

Rubinstein used to play here 8 ♘f4—obviously in order to prevent the next move, after which Black experiences no more difficulty in the opening.

8 ... c5
9 dxc5

Preparing for the mistake at the next move. As Black's ...c4 was not to be feared, White's logical course was 9 ♗d3 ♘c6 10 dxc5 ♗xc5 11 0-0.

9 ... ♗xc5
10 b4?

Obviously not foreseeing the answer, otherwise he would have played 10 ♗d3.

10 ... d4! *(D)*

The point of this interesting move is that White cannot well answer it by 11 ♘a4 because of 11...dxe3 12 ♕xd8 (after 12 ♘xc5 or 12 bxc5, Black wins by 12...exf2+ 13 ♔e2 ♗g4+) 12...exf2+ 13 ♔e2 ♗g4+! forcing the king to move on to the d-file, after which the queen will be taken with check, thus saving the bishop on c5. And as 11 ♘ce4 ♘xe4 12 ♘xe4 ♗b6 would also have been advantageous for Black, White's next move is comparatively the best.

11 bxc5 dxc3
12 ♕c2

White is in decidedly too optimistic a mood and underestimates

Black's threats. Otherwise he would have tried to simplify matters by 12 ♕xd8 ♖xd8 13 ♘e2 ♘e4 14 f3 ♘xc5 15 ♘xc3 ♘c6 after which, however, Black, owing to his pawn majority on the queenside and better development, would still hold a slight advantage.

12 ... ♕a5
13 ♖b1

Now 13 ♘e2 would not be sufficient because of 13...♘d5 14 e4 ♘b4!, winning the exchange.

13 ... ♗d7!

The threat 14...♗a4 is now difficult to meet. If, for instance, 14 ♗c4 ♗a4 15 ♗b3, then 15...♗b5; and if 14 ♖b4 (which has been suggested by many annotators) then 14...♘a6! 15 ♗xa6 ♕xa6 16 e4 ♖fe8 and White can neither castle nor take the ominous c-pawn because of the reply ...♘d5. Therefore, White's decision to give up the exchange for a pawn in order to finish the development of his pieces appears comparatively the wisest.

14 ♖b3 ♗a4
15 ♕xc3 ♕d8!

The point of the thirteenth move. In spite of his material advantage, it will be by no means easy for Black to force the victory. The next part of the game is chiefly instructive from the tactical point of view.

16 ♗c4 ♘a6!

Instead of 16...♗xb3 17 ♕xb3 ♘a6 18 ♕xb7 ♘xc5 19 ♕b5, which would have allowed White to preserve the two bishops.

17 ♗xa6 bxa6

And not 17...♗xb3 18 ♗d3!, with more counter-chances than in the actual game.

18 0-0 ♗xb3
19 ♕xb3 ♖b8

The b-file will soon become a very important factor. After the more obvious 19...♕d5 White, by playing 20 ♕xd5 ♘xd5 21 e4, would still have some chances of saving the endgame.

20 ♕c2 ♕d5
21 e4 ♕b3
22 ♕e2

Now, on the contrary, the endgame after 22 ♕xb3 ♖xb3 would be quite hopeless because of the weakness of White's a-pawn.

22 ... ♕b5!
23 ♕f3

Comparatively better than 23 ♕e3 ♘d7. If White wants to avoid the exchange of queens, he must forget about his c-pawn.

23 ... ♕xc5 *(D)*

W

24 ♘f5?

But here 24 ♗f4, in order to prevent the following pin, offered a slightly better fighting chance. The

right answer for Black would be 24...♖be8, and if25 e5 (25 ♖c1 ♕b5! 26 ♗d6 ♖c8), then 25...♘d7 26 ♘e4 ♕c2 27 ♖c1 ♕b2, keeping the material advantage.

24 ... ♖b1

25 ♕f4

Or 25 ♕g3 ♘h5 26 ♕g5 ♔h8!, with an easy defence. But now White threatens to win the queen by playing 26 ♕g5.

25 ... ♘xe4

One might suppose that after the capture of this important pawn the fight would be very soon over. But White succeeds in finding new attacking moves again and again.

26 h4 ♖e8

26...♘xf2 would be unconvincing because of 27 ♔h2![1].

27 ♖e1 ♕c3

28 ♖d1

Threatening 29 ♕xe4.

28 ... ♘d2!

This spectacular move forces a further, most welcome, simplification, after which there will be practically no more fight left.

29 ♖xd2 ♖xc1+

But not 29...♕xc1+ 30 ♔h2 ♖b2? because of 31 ♕e5! with a win for White!

30 ♔h2 ♕c7

31 ♖d6 ♖c5 *(D)*

32 g3!

A very ingenious idea worthy of a better fate. If Black executes his threat by 32...♖xf5, then after 33

W

♖e6!! he will be obliged to give up his queen for two rooks (33...fxe6 34 ♕xc7 ♖xf2+ 35 ♔h3 e5), when White would still be able to put up a stubborn resistance.

32 ... ♖f8!

But this simple answer puts an end to the last hopes of salvation. What follows is agony.

33 g4

Instead 33 ♘xg7 ♔xg7 34 ♕f6+ ♔g8 35 ♖d4 h5 would not work.

33 ... f6

34 ♔h3 h5

The beginning of the counter-attack.

35 ♕d2 hxg4+

36 ♔xg4 ♕f7

37 h5 ♖xf5!

At last the most hated knight of the match can he eliminated with decisive effect, and Black, in addition to the two extra pawns, quickly obtains a mating attack. It was an exciting struggle!

38 ♔xf5 ♕xh5+

39 ♔f4 ♕h4+

---

1 27 ♗e3 is an even more convincing reason to reject 26...♘xf2.

40 ♔f3

If 40 ♔f5 then Black can mate in four: 40...g6+ 41 ♔e6 (or 41 ♔xg6 ♕h7#) 41...♕e4+ 42 ♔d7 ♕b7+ 43 ♔e6 ♕f7#.

40 ... ♕h3+

41 ♔e4

Or 41 ♔f4 ♖e8 with the deadly threat of 42...g5#.

41 ... ♖e8+

42 ♔d5 ♕b3+

43 ♔d4 ♕xa3

0-1

Game 110

Alekhine – Böök

Margate 1938

Queen's Gambit Accepted

1 d4 d5

2 c4 dxc4

The Queen's Gambit Accepted leads to a game in which Black gives up the centre and attempts to compensate for this by an early queenside pawn advance. In preparing and making this advance, he is liable to fall behind in development and unless he plays the opening with great accuracy, he may easily succumb to a white attack breaking through in the centre.

3 ♘f3 ♘f6

4 e3 e6

5 ♗xc4 c5

6 0-0 ♘c6

This natural move is not the best. The correct line is 6...a6 7 ♕e2 b5 8 ♗b3 ♗b7 9 ♖d1 ♘bd7 10 a4 b4 11 ♘bd2 ♕c7 with an equal game. On d7 the knight supports the c-pawn and leaves the light-squared bishop an open diagonal. On c6 it is misplaced as the course of this game shows.

7 ♕e2 a6

8 ♘c3 b5

This move is now too dangerous. 8...♗e7 9 ♖d1 ♕c7 is preferable, but after 10 dxc5 ♗xc5 11 a3 White's superior development gives him the better game.

9 ♗b3 b4

There is no good move here, for example:

1) 9...♗e7 10 dxc5 ♗xc5 11 e4! ♘d7 (best) 12 e5 with advantage to White.

2) 9...♗b7 10 ♖d1 ♕b6 11 d5! exd5 12 ♗xd5 b4 13 ♗xf7+! (Ståhlberg-Böök, Kemeri 1927) winning easily, e.g. 13...♔xf7 14 ♕c4+ ♔e8 15 ♕e6+ ♗e7 16 ♘e5 ♖f8 17 ♘c4 and 18 ♘d6+.

3) 9...cxd4 10 ♖d1! ♕b6 11 exd4 ♘a5 12 ♗c2 ♗e7 13 ♘e5 0-0 14 ♗g5 ♖a7 15 ♖d3 (Ichim-Troianovsky, 1940) with a strong attack.

4) 9...c4 10 ♗c2 ♗e7 11 a4 with advantage.

The text move is as good a chance as any.

10 d5! ♘a5

If 10...exd5 11 ♘xd5! ♘xd5 12 ♖d1 ♕c7 (12...♗e6? 13 e4 ♘ce7 14 exd5 followed by 15 d6) 13 ♗xd5 followed by e4 with a beautiful position. If 10...bxc3 11 dxc6 cxb2 12 ♗xb2 and White again has much the better of the position.

11 ♗a4+ ♗d7

12 dxe6 fxe6 *(D)*

W

13 ♖d1

Beginning a remarkable sacrificial attack. It is possible that Black might theoretically have avoided loss but Spielmann's remark to Böök after the game is the best comment on this, 'How can you play like that? Such sacrifices are always correct in over-the-board play!' Moreover, even an Alekhine will not normally analyse exhaustively such a sacrifice—he will examine as many variations as he can in the limited time available, and for the rest trust that, if his general judgement of the position is correct, he will be able to find a reply to an unexpected counterstroke[1].

13 ... bxc3
14 ♖xd7! ♘xd7
15 ♘e5 ♖a7
16 bxc3! *(D)*

Played with extraordinary coolness! A rook behind, White calmly stops to recapture a pawn. 16 ♕h5+ would not have been good because of 16...g6 17 ♘xg6 hxg6 18 ♕xh8 ♔f7 and Black should win.

B

16 ... ♔e7

Here, if anywhere, was Black's chance to save the game. The natural move 16...g6 will not do, as shown by Böök in the following analysis: 17 ♕d3! ♔e7 (17...♗g7 18 ♘xd7 ♖xd7 19 ♗a3) 18 e4! ♘f6 (not now 18...♘xe5?? 19 ♗g5+) 19 ♕f3 ♗g7 20 ♗g5 ♖f8 21 ♖d1 ♕c7 22 ♘d7 ♕xd7 23 ♖xd7+ ♖xd7 24 ♗xd7 ♔xd7 25 ♕d3+ ♔c8 26 ♕xa6+ ♘b7 27 ♕c6+ ♔b8 28 ♗f4+ ♔a7 29 ♗c7 followed by mate. Black's only chance lies in an immediate return of almost all the extra material, which he can offer in two ways:

1) 16...♕b8 17 ♘xd7 ♖xd7 18 ♕xa6 ♕c7 19 ♕xe6+ (best) 19...♔d8 20 e4! threatening both 21 ♗f4 and 21 ♗g5+; now it is difficult to find anything good for Black:

---

1 It is worth mentioning that White has a reasonable risk-free alternative: 13 ♘e5, and if 13...bxc3, then 14 ♘xd7 ♘xd7 15 ♕h5+ ♔e7 (or 15...g6 16 ♕e5) 16 ♖d1 is very good for White.

1a) 20...♗e7? 21 ♗f4! ♕b7 22 ♗xd7 ♕xd7 23 ♕b6+.

1b) 20...♘b7 21 ♗g5+ ♔c8 (or 21...♗e7 22 ♗xe7+ ♖xe7 23 ♖d1+) 22 ♖d1 ♗d6 23 e5.

1c) 20...♕d6 21 ♗g5+ ♗e7 (the lines 21...♔c7 22 ♗f4! or 21...♔c8 22 ♕e8+ ♔c7 23 ♗f4! are no better) 22 ♗xe7+ ♕xe7 23 ♕b6+ ♖c7 24 ♕b8+ ♖c8 25 ♖d1+.

2) 16...♗e7! (this simple move threatening to castle is Black's best chance) 17 ♕h5+ g6 18 ♘xg6 hxg6 19 ♕xh8+ ♗f8! and now I can find nothing decisive for White. With two pawns for the piece, a pair of bishops and with Black still tied up, I think, however, that even in this variation White's practical chances are extremely good[1].

17 e4! ♘f6
18 ♗g5 ♕c7
19 ♗f4[2] ♕b6

If 19...♕b7, then 20 ♕e3! ♔d8 (alternatively, 20...♘xe4 21 ♗g5+ ♘xg5 22 ♕xg5+ ♔d6 23 ♖d1+ ♔c7 24 ♕d8#) 21 ♕d3+ ♔c8 22 ♖b1 ♕xe4 23 ♘f7! and mate follows.

20 ♖d1 g6

White threatened ♗g5 followed by ♕h5. There is nothing to be done.

21 ♗g5 ♗g7
22 ♘d7 ♖xd7
23 ♖xd7+ ♔f8
24 ♗xf6 ♗xf6
25 e5 1-0

If the bishop moves, then 26 ♕f3+ and mate follows; other moves are met by either exf6 or ♕f3. An outstandingly brilliant game.

Game 111
Alekhine – Euwe
AVRO 1938
Slav Defence

1 d4 d5
2 c4 c6
3 ♘f3 ♘f6
4 cxd5 cxd5

Like a good many symmetrical variations, this is less innocuous than it appears at first sight. In all symmetrical openings, the danger for Black lies in the fact that he cannot indefinitely continue to imitate White (cf. his 7th move in this game) and is liable to find himself confronted with a position in which White makes a strong aggressive move and Black is forced to make a very humble reply, with consequent disadvantage: examples of this can be found not only in the Slav but in the Four Knights', Petroff's Defence and the English Opening. Of course, 4...♕xd5 is not good here because of 5 ♘c3 and 4...♘xd5 is met by 5 e4.

---

1 16...♕h4 is interesting, to attack a4, for example 17 ♗xd7+ ♖xd7 18 ♘xd7 ♗d6 19 ♕xa6 (19 g3 ♕c4!) 19...♕xh2+ 20 ♔f1 ♕h1+ 21 ♔e2 ♔xd7 22 ♕xa5 ♕xg2 with a roughly equal position.

2 Not bad, but 19 ♕h5 was a complete killer, for example 19...♕xe5 20 ♕e8+ ♔d6 21 ♖d1+ ♔c7 22 ♕d8+ mating, or 19...g6 20 ♘xg6+ hxg6 21 ♕xh8 ♕e5 22 ♕h7+.

5 ♘c3 ♘c6
6 ♗f4 ♗f5
7 e3

7 ♕b3 is ineffectual because of 7...♘a5 8 ♕a4+ ♗d7.

7 ... a6

Not 7...e6 since then 8 ♕b3! is very strong, as 8...♘a5 9 ♕a4+, 8...♕c8 9 ♘b5 and 8...♕d7 9 ♘e5 all give White a winning game[1].

However a good alternative to the text is 7...♕b6 8 ♗d3 ♗xd3 (8...♕xb2 9 0-0 ♗xd3 10 ♕xd3 gives White an overwhelming position for the sacrificed pawn) 9 ♕xd3 e6 10 0-0 ♗e7 and White has little, if any, advantage. The move played leads to complications in which it is difficult for Black to hold the position.

8 ♘e5! ♖c8
9 g4!

A characteristic move transforming the game.

9 ... ♗d7!

A very difficult decision, but this unpleasant move is certainly best. If 9...♗g6, 10 h4! h6 (10...♘xe5 11 dxe5 ♘e4 12 ♕a4+! ♕d7 13 ♕xd7+ ♔xd7 14 ♘xd5 ♖c5 15 ♖d1 and wins) 11 ♘xg6 fxg6 12 ♗d3 with a won game. Or 9...♘xe5 10 gxf5 ♘c4 (10...♘c6 11 ♗h3! and Black is hopelessly tied up) 11 ♕a4+ ♕d7 12 ♕xd7+ ♔xd7 13 ♘a4! ♔e8 (14 ♗xc4 was threatened) and White has two bishops with much the better game.

10 ♗g2 *(D)*

Not 10 g5 ♘e4 11 ♘xd5? ♕a5+!.

B

10 ... e6
11 0-0

The continuation 11 g5 ♘e4 12 ♘xe4 dxe4 13 ♗xe4 ♘xe5 14 dxe5 ♗b4+ 15 ♔f1 ♗b5+ 16 ♔g2 ♕e7 would give Black compensation for the sacrificed pawn[2].

11 ... h6

Now, however, this is necessary, or White will win a pawn with impunity.

12 ♗g3 h5?

He should play 12...♗e7 and if 13 f4 ♘xe5 14 fxe5 ♘h7 and Black's game is far from lost, since although White has an advantage in space and some attacking chances, he also has

1 This comment is incorrect, as after 8...♕c8 9 ♘b5 Black may play 9...♗b4+, forcing the king to move (10 ♘d2 ♘e4 11 ♘c7+ ♔d8 is good for Black, and 10 ♕xb4 ♘xb4 11 ♘d6+ ♔e7 12 ♘xc8+ ♖hxc8 is ineffective), and then 10...0-0.

2 After 17 ♕f3 I see no compensation at all for the pawn. Moreover, White could have played 13 ♘xd7 ♗b4+ 14 ♔f1 ♕xd7 15 ♗xe4, with an extra pawn and the two bishops. In fact, 11 g5 is probably as good as the move played.

weaknesses in his pawn structure. For this reason 13 ♘xd7 ♕xd7 14 f4 might be a shade better, but Black can then continue ...♘a5-c4 with counter-chances on the queenside.

13 ♘xd7 ♘xd7?

And after this move the game is probably lost. 13...♕xd7 14 g5 ♘g8 is necessary, when Black's position, although most unpleasant, might still be defensible.

14 gxh5 ♘f6
15 ♗f3 ♗b4
16 ♖c1 ♔f8

If 16...0-0, then 17 ♔h1 followed by ♖g1 gives White a winning attack. The white pawn on h5 is very dangerous should Black castle since it prevents ...g6 and White constantly threatens h6.

17 a3 ♗xc3
18 ♖xc3 ♘e7
19 ♕b3 ♖xc3
20 bxc3

Although Black has succeeded in reducing the material—the classical method of diminishing the force of an attack—White retains too many advantages for the game to be saved.

20 ... ♕d7

If 20...b5, 21 a4 and Black's a-pawn will fall.

21 ♕b6 ♘c8

Otherwise 22 ♖b1 wins.

22 ♕c5+ ♔g8
23 ♖b1 b5 *(D)*

White threatened 24 c4.

24 h6

This pawn, which has played a major part throughout, makes a final and decisive advance.

W

24 ... gxh6

If 24...♖xh6, 25 a4 ♘a7 26 ♕b6 bxa4 27 ♕xa6 and White wins.

25 ♗e5 ♔g7
26 a4 bxa4

This would not have been playable with the black rook on h6 and king on g8 because of ♖b8.

27 c4! ♘e7

After 27...dxc4? 28 ♗xf6+ ♔xf6 29 ♕e5+ White wins the rook.

28 cxd5 ♘xd5

If 28...exd5, 29 ♖b6.

29 ♔h1!

Not 29 ♗xd5 exd5 30 ♖b6 ♕g4+ and White must submit to perpetual check or release the pin on the black knight. The text move, however, threatens this line by forestalling ...♕g4+.

29 ... ♖c8
30 ♖g1+ ♔h7
31 ♕a3 ♖g8

Forced in order to meet the threat of 32 ♕d3+ ♔h8 33 ♗xd5 ♕xd5+ 34 e4. If 31...♘e8?, then 32 ♕f8 followed by mate. Now, however, Black loses a piece.

32 e4 ♖xg1+
33 ♔xg1 ♕b5

34 exd5 ♕b1+
35 ♔g2 ♕g6+
36 ♔f1 ♕b1+
37 ♔g2 ♕g6+
38 ♗g3 ♘xd5
39 ♗xd5 exd5
40 ♕xa4 h5
41 h4 1-0

The ending is quite hopeless. An original and forceful game.

Game 112
Alekhine – Flohr
AVRO 1938
Ruy Lopez

1 e4 e5

A sensation! Flohr almost invariably plays semi-open defences when facing 1 e4.

2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 ♗b5 a6
4 ♗a4 ♘f6
5 0-0 ♗e7
6 ♖e1 b5
7 ♗b3 d6
8 c3 ♘a5
9 ♗c2 c5
10 d4 ♕c7
11 ♘bd2

Here 11 h3 to prevent ...♗g4 is more usual. White plays to get his knight to e3 (controlling f5 and d5) as quickly as possible—the drawback of the line is that, because it allows Black to put pressure on d4 by 12...♗g4, White is unable to keep the centre fluid as long as in the normal line.

11 ... 0-0
12 ♘f1 ♗g4
13 dxe5

Against Fine at Margate 1936/7[1], Alekhine here played 13 ♘e3 ♗xf3 14 ♕xf3 cxd4 15 ♘f5 and, in *My Best Games, 1924-37,* says that this pawn sacrifice is not quite sufficient but that he should have played 15 cxd4 ♘c6 16 d5 ♘d4 17 ♕d1 ♘xc2 18 ♘xc2 a5 19 ♗d2 which he says 'would have been in White's favour'. It seems to me that Black is at little, if any, disadvantage in this line and it was probably in anticipation of this variation that Flohr allowed the Lopez to be played. If 13 d5, a position similar to that in the 11 h3 variation arises, but better for Black since after 11 h3 he has to play ...♘c6 to force d5 after which he returns to a5, thus losing time.

13 ... dxe5
14 ♘e3 ♗e6 *(D)*

1 It seems that Alexander is actually referring to the Hastings encounter—see game 98.

15 ♕e2 ♖fe8

The idea of this move is that after an eventual ♘d5 by White and an exchange on that square the rook will be ready to protect the e-pawn. It would, however, be better to proceed at once with the queenside counterattack by 15...c4. Then 16 ♘g5 ♘b7 17 ♘xe6 fxe6 18 ♗d2 ♘c5 gives rise to an equal game, while 17 ♘d5 ♗xd5! 18 exd5 ♗d6 is also satisfactory for Black.

16 ♘g5 c4
17 b4 cxb3

If 17...♘c6, then 18 ♘d5 ♘xd5 19 exd5 ♗xg5 20 dxe6 ♗xc1 21 exf7+ ♕xf7 22 ♖axc1 with the better game, White having a bishop against a knight and a strong square on e4. If 17...♘b7, then 18 ♘xe6 fxe6 and White has a slight advantage because of his two bishops and better pawn formation—note that Black cannot now (in contrast to the variation in the previous note) get his knight to c5. This would, however, be better than the text as it would leave Black with fewer weaknesses. The point of b4 is that whether Black exchanges or not, the pressure on White's queenside is completely eliminated.

18 ♘xe6 fxe6
19 axb3 b4
20 cxb4!

Not the obvious 20 c4, in reply to which Black can play ...♘b7-c5 blockading the passed pawn, with a good game.

20 ... ♗xb4
21 ♗d2 ♗xd2

If 21...♘c6 22 ♗xb4 ♘xb4, then 23 ♘c4! ♘xc2 24 ♕xc2 followed by ♕c3 and ♖a5. The trouble with Black's game is that he has two weak spots to watch, at e5 and a6, whereas White has only his b-pawn to worry about. It would be much less serious for Black if he had not played 17...cxb3, as he would then only have had the weakness on the e-file and White would not have c4 for his knight[1].

22 ♕xd2 ♘c6
23 ♕c3 ♕b6
24 ♗d3 ♘d4
25 b4 ♖ec8
26 ♘c4 ♖ab8

If the queen moves, then 27 ♖a5 and the e-pawn will fall without compensation.

27 ♖a5 ♕xb4
28 ♕xb4 ♖xb4
29 ♘xe5 ♘b3 *(D)*

It seems as if Black has extricated himself rather neatly—if the rook retreats then 30...♘c5, and White can only win the a-pawn at the cost of his e-pawn.

30 ♖xa6!!

A shattering surprise: it is amazing that White can safely allow the ...♘c5 fork.

30 ... ♘c5

---

1 I don't understand this comment, since I cannot see how this type of position could have arisen if Black had not played ...cxb3.

W

31 ♖c1 ♖bb8
32 ♗c4! ♔h8

Not 32...♘xa6? 33 ♗xe6+ ♔f8 34 ♖xc8+ ♖xc8 35 ♗xc8 with an easily winning endgame. However 32...♔f8 would be better than the text; after 33 ♖a7 (I can see nothing better) 33...♘fxe4 Black has good drawing chances although White has a clearly superior position.

33 ♘f7+ ♔g8
34 ♘d6 ♖c7

If 34...♖d8, 35 ♖c6 retaining the pawn with a winning endgame.

35 ♖aa1 ♔f8
36 e5 ♘g4
37 ♖e1 g5

Hastening the end, but Black is lost whatever he does.

38 ♖a3! ♘h6
39 ♖f3+ ♔g7

If 39...♔e7, 40 ♖h3 wins a second pawn.

40 ♖g3 g4
41 h3 ♔h8

Here the game was adjourned and Black resigned without resuming play—after 42 hxg4 he has no chance of saving the game.

1-0

Game 113
Alekhine – Capablanca
AVRO 1938
French Defence

1 e4 e6
2 d4 d5
3 ♘d2

This move—a favourite of Keres and, at least in his later years, of Alekhine—preserves the option of protecting the centre by c3 and circumvents the pin 3...♗b4. Its drawback, however, is that since it puts less immediate pressure on the black centre than 3 ♘c3, it allows Black to counter safely with the energetic 3...c5!.

3 ... ♘f6

This, although quite playable, is rather less good than ...c5, since it leads to a type of game in which it is valuable for White to have c3 available. Capablanca, however, having just lost to Keres with 3...c5, did not care to try the move again.

4 e5 ♘fd7
5 ♗d3 c5
6 c3 ♘c6
7 ♘e2 ♕b6
8 ♘f3

It is interesting to compare this position with the somewhat similar one that arises in Spielmann's favourite variation 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♘c3 ♘f6 4 e5 ♘fd7 5 ♘ce2 c5 6 c3 ♘c6 7 f4 ♕b6 8 ♘f3. The difference in the positions is that in the present game the bishop stands on d3 instead of f1 and the f-pawn on f2 instead of f4. Both these differences

are favourable to White: the development of the bishop on d3 is obviously a great advantage and the preservation of f4 for the knight and an open diagonal for the c1-bishop also strengthens White's game.

8 ... cxd4
9 cxd4 ♗b4+
10 ♔f1!

In a closed position such as this, loss of the privilege of castling is comparatively unimportant: it is far more important to prevent Black easing his position by exchanges.

10 ... ♗e7
11 a3 ♘f8

Black should play 11...a5 to stop 12 b4. Note that if 11...0-0, then 12 ♘f4 followed by h4 and ♘g5 would give White a winning attack. The effect of the pawn on e5 is virtually to prohibit kingside castling.

12 b4!

Further restricting Black.

12 ... ♗d7
13 ♗e3 ♘d8
14 ♘c3 a5
15 ♘a4 ♕a7
16 b5 b6
17 g3 f5 *(D)*

Black now embarks on an attempt to free himself which merely hastens his defeat. However, if he does absolutely nothing (the alternative plan!), he will almost certainly succumb to an attack in the long run: White can prepare for f5 at his leisure and Black will not have room to post his pieces properly for the defence.

18 ♔g2 ♘f7
19 ♕d2 h6

W

20 h4 ♘h7
21 h5!

g6 is a far more valuable square for White than g5 or e4 is for Black.

21 ... ♘fg5
22 ♘h4 ♘e4
23 ♕b2 ♔f7

Not 23...♗xh4? 24 gxh4! and the knight on e4 (which has gone to such trouble to get there) is trapped!

24 f3 ♘eg5
25 g4!

A very fine move, resulting in the re-incarceration of Black's h8-rook just as it was about to emerge.

25 ... fxg4
26 ♗g6+ ♔g8
27 f4! ♘f3

If 27...♘e4, then 28 ♗xe4 dxe4 29 ♘g6, while 27...♘f7 is met by 28 ♗d3 ♘f8 29 ♕e2 followed by ♕xg4 and playing a rook to g1. 27...♘h3 allows 28 ♗xh7+ ♖xh7 (28...♔xh7 29 ♕c2+) 29 ♘g6 followed by ♕e2 and ♕xg4. In every case White wins easily.

28 ♗xh7+ ♖xh7

Or 28...♔xh7 29 ♕c2+ ♔g8 30 ♘g6 and wins.

29 ♘g6 ♗d8

30 ♖ac1 ♗e8
31 ♔g3!

An original way to trap a knight!

31 ... ♕f7
32 ♔xg4 ♘h4
33 ♘xh4 ♕xh5+
34 ♔g3 ♕f7
35 ♘f3 1-0

Black exceeded the time limit, but his position was quite hopeless in any case. This fine game was the last between the two great rivals and was Alekhine's only tournament victory against Capablanca.

Game 114
Alekhine – Keres
Salzburg 1942
Ruy Lopez

1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 ♗b5 a6
4 ♗a4 ♘f6
5 0-0 ♗e7
6 ♕e2 b5
7 ♗b3 d6
8 c3

The 'thematic' move 8 a4 is adequately met by 8...♗g4 9 c3 (not 9 axb5? ♘d4) 9...0-0.

8 ... 0-0
9 ♖d1

If 9 d4, then 9...♗g4 10 ♖d1 exd4 11 cxd4 d5! 12 e5 ♘e4 with equality. White transposes moves in order to avoid this variation.

9 ... ♘a5

If 9...♗g4, then 10 d3! followed by h3 and g4 with an excellent game. Black cannot reply 10...d5? because of 11 exd5 ♘xd5 12 ♕e4 ♗e6 13 ♘xe5. The usual Lopez rule applies: ...♗g4 is not good for Black before White has played d4 because of the reply d3!, leaving the bishop misplaced.

10 ♗c2 c5
11 d4 ♕c7
12 ♗g5

It is more usual to keep the bishop on c1 and to play the b1-knight to the kingside. The ideas behind the text are:

1) that when the b1-knight arrives on e3 (via d2 and f1) White will be threatening ♗xf6 followed by ♘d5; and

2) ♖ac1 will be possible earlier than usual.

However, the bishop is not really particularly well placed on g5 and it is more important to get the knight round to e3 as soon as possible.

12 ... ♗g4

For now Black could have played 12...cxd4! 13 cxd4 ♗g4 threatening 14...♗xf3 breaking up White's kingside. If 14 ♘c3, then 14...b4! 15 ♗xf6 bxc3 16 ♗xe7 cxb2 17 ♖ab1 ♕xe7 18 ♖xb2 ♘c6 with a good game, while 14 ♗d3 ♘c6 also allows Black full equality.

13 dxe5 dxe5
14 ♘bd2 *(D)*
14 ... ♖fd8

14...♘h5 at once gives Black a rather easier game. If 15 h3, then 15...♗e6 16 ♗xe7 (or 16 ♘f1 ♗xg5 17 ♘xg5 ♘f4 18 ♕e1 ♗c4 19 ♘e3 f6 20 ♘f3 ♗e2) 16...♘f4! 17 ♕f1 ♕xe7 with a satisfactory position,

B

18 ♘xe5 being met by 18...♗xh3. I can see no way in which White can gain the advantage—the variations are similar to those that arise in the actual game, with the important difference that in the game White has gained a very valuable move.

15 ♘f1 ♘h5

If 15...♘c4, then 16 ♗b3 ♘a5[1] 17 ♗xf6 ♗xf6 18 ♗d5 followed by ♘e3 with the better game. If Black does nothing in particular then 16 ♘e3 ♗e6 17 ♘h4 and White has the advantage because of his pressure on f5 and d5.

16 h3! ♗e6

Best. If 16...♗xg5, then 17 hxg4 ♘f4 18 ♕e1 ♗e7 19 g3 ♘h3+ 20 ♔g2 ♘g5 21 ♘e3 with much the better game.

17 ♘e3 f6!

18 ♘h2

Better than 18 ♗h4 ♘f4, when Black has a good game.

18 ... g6

After 18...fxg5 19 ♕xh5 White has a clear-cut advantage because sooner or later he will play ♘d5, forcing Black to capture, and after the exchange Black will not be able to do anything with his kingside pawn majority.

19 ♗h6 ♗f8

20 ♗xf8 ♔xf8?

Black should play 20...♘f4! 21 ♕f3 ♖xf8! 22 h4 ♘c4 23 g3 (not 23 ♘xc4 ♗xc4 24 g3 ♗e2!) 23...♘xe3 24 ♕xe3 ♘h5 with an equal game. After missing this chance, he is not given another!

21 g3!

Preventing ...♘f4 once and for all. Black cannot play 21...♗xh3 because of 22 ♘d5 ♕b7 23 g4 ♘f4 24 ♘xf4 exf4 25 ♕f3 and White is winning.

21 ... ♖xd1+

This exchange only helps White, whose bishop (with a masked threat of ♗xh5) is well placed on d1. The best line was 21...♘c4 22 ♘d5 ♗xd5 23 exd5 ♘d6[2] and although Black's game is undeniably inferior he has better drawing chances than in the game. White's advantage (in this variation and in the actual game) consists of the following:

1) he cannot be prevented from getting a passed d-pawn;

---

1 Here 16...♗xf3 appears promising for Black since 17 ♕xf3 ♘xb2 loses a pawn, while 17 gxf3 ♘h5 18 ♗xe7 ♘f4! 19 ♕c2 ♕xe7 20 ♗xc4 bxc4 results in damage to both sides' pawn structures, but the damage to White's is more serious as it also exposes his king.

2 There is no obvious reason why Black should not take the pawn on b2.

2) Black's kingside is somewhat weakened and his h5-knight misplaced;

3) Black's queenside is open to attack by a4.

None of these weaknesses separately seems very serious—it takes an Alekhine to exploit them.

22 ♗xd1 ♖d8

Here again ...♘c4 is better. The text results in White gaining command of the a-file, which is of more value to him than the d-file is to Black.

23 a4 ♘c4
24 axb5 axb5
25 ♘d5!

Another fine move. Black cannot safely accept the offered pawn.

25 ... ♕b7

If 25...♗xd5, then 26 exd5 ♖xd5 27 ♕e4! ♖d8 (27...♖d2 28 ♗xh5 gxh5 29 ♘f3 and the rook must retreat in view of 29...♖xb2? 30 ♕a8+ ♔g7 31 ♖a7) 28 ♗xh5 gxh5 29 ♕f3 ♕f7 (29...♔g7 30 ♕xh5 ♘xb2 31 ♘g4 wins back at least the sacrificed pawn with a strong attack and the superior game) 30 ♕c6 ♘xb2 31 ♕xc5+ ♔g8 32 ♕xb5 with much the better game.

26 b3 ♘d6
27 c4 bxc4
28 bxc4 ♗xd5
29 exd5 *(D)*

B

The first stage of the middlegame (which might be said to have begun on White's 14th move) is over and White has achieved his aims, with a decisive or almost decisive advantage. White's bishop is better than Black's knight, his passed pawn is invulnerable and Black has a weak c-pawn and a kingside majority with little future. The next stage sees White gradually increasing his advantage until Black, under pressure, loses a pawn by a blunder.

29 ... ♘g7
30 ♘g4 ♕e7
31 ♗c2 ♘ge8

31...♘f7 followed by ...f5 might be a little better.

32 h4

Preventing any sort of pawn rush by Black.

32 ... e4

This turns out badly, but if Black does nothing White will play ♘e3 followed by ♖a6, ♕d2 and ♕a5 with a powerful queenside attack.

33 ♘e3 ♕e5?

Blundering in a bad position, as so often happens.

34 ♖a7 ♔g8?

34...♘g7 is essential, but after ♕e1-a5 White has a winning game.

35 ♘g4 ♕d4
36 ♗xe4! f5

36...♘xe4? 37 ♘h6+ ♔h8 (or 37...♔f8?? 38 ♖c7#) 38 ♘f7+ and

39 ♘xd8. A similar line wins against 36...♕xe4.

37 ♘h6+ ♔h8
38 ♗c2 ♕f6
39 ♕e6 ♕xe6
40 dxe6

Now comes the final stage—winning a won ending.

The game concluded **40...♖c8 41 ♘f7+ ♘xf7** (after 41...♔g8 42 ♘e5 the ending is of course also won) **42 exf7 ♘d6 43 ♗d3 ♔g7** (or 43...h5 44 ♖d7! ♘e4 45 ♗xe4 fxe4 46 ♖c7 ♖f8 47 ♔f1! ♔g7 48 ♔e2 ♖xf7 49 ♖xf7+ ♔xf7 50 ♔e3 winning) **44 f8♕+ ♔xf8 45 ♖xh7 ♔g8 46 ♖d7 ♘e8 47 h5! gxh5** (if 47...♘f6, 48 ♖d6 ♔g7 49 hxg6 ♔xg6 50 g4! winning a second pawn) **48 ♗xf5 ♖a8 49 ♗e6+ ♔h8 50 ♖d5 ♘f6 51 ♖xc5 ♔g7 52 ♔g2 ♖a2 53 ♗f5! ♖a3 54 ♖c7+ ♔h6 55 ♖f7 ♖a6 56 f4 h4 57 g4 1-0**

White threatens g5+ and Black dare not move the knight because of ♖h7 mate.

Game 115
Keres – Alekhine
Salzburg 1942
King's Gambit

1 e4 e5
2 f4

This game was played in the last round of the tournament. Alekhine having 6½/9, Keres 6/9, and the other competitors being out of the running. Keres therefore had to go all-out for a win, which explains his somewhat rash play.

2 ... exf4
3 ♘f3 ♘f6
4 e5 ♘h5
5 ♕e2?

This, in conjunction with White's 7th move, is a new idea in this variation—but not a very good one. Since the normal line 5 d4 d5 6 c4 ♘c6 7 cxd5 ♕xd5 8 ♘c3 ♗b4 gives Black a satisfactory position with a pawn more, Keres decides to delay Black's ...d5 and to prepare for queenside castling. Black, however, simply continues with his development, is able to play ...d5 as soon as he really needs to, and White's unnatural queen move rebounds.

5 ... ♗e7
6 d4 0-0
7 g4!?

A corollary of 5 ♕e2, intending to permit the development of the bishops and give White open lines for a kingside attack. If White does not play this move, he will have to move his queen again to develop the f1-bishop, and the pawn on f4 will exert a cramping effect on his whole game. The disadvantage of opening files in this way, i.e. by pawn sacrifices that do not disturb the opponent's pawn structure, is that one then has no pawns left with which to storm the enemy king: for this reason Alekhine finds comparatively little difficulty in defending himself.

7 ... fxg3
8 ♘c3 d5!

Avoiding the tempting 8...♗h4 9 hxg3! ♘xg3 (9...♗xg3+ 10 ♔d1 ♘f4 11 ♕e4 ♘g6 12 ♕g4 ♗f2 13

♕h5 h6 14 ♘e4 wins easily) 10 ♕h2 ♘xh1+ 11 ♘xh4 with a highly critical position in which White has good prospects.

9 ♗d2

If 9 ♗e3, then 9...f5 10 0-0-0 f4 11 ♗d2 ♘c6 threatening 12...♗g4, and Black has a winning advantage. If here 10 exf6, then the spearhead of White's attack (the pawn on e5) has gone and Black's extra material will give him a comfortable victory.

9 ... ♘c6
10 0-0-0 ♗g4
11 ♗e3

Necessary (to prevent 11...♘xd4) and now 11...f5 is not so menacing because of 12 h3 ♗xf3 13 ♕xf3.

11 ... f6!
12 h3 ♗e6 *(D)*

W

13 ♘g5!

The only move to make a fight of the game, though it proves insufficient against Alekhine's accurate defence. Otherwise Black will play ...f5-f4 with an overwhelming game.

13 ... fxg5
14 ♕xh5 g6
15 ♕e2 g4!

Forcing a further exchange of minor pieces and reducing White's already small chances of a successful attack.

16 hxg4 ♗g5
17 ♔b1 ♗xe3
18 ♕xe3 ♗xg4
19 ♕h6 ♖f7
20 ♗g2 ♘e7

Certainly not 20...♗xd1 21 ♗xd5 threatening ♕xh7+.

21 ♖df1 ♖g7

Note how snugly Black hides amongst his pawns and White has nothing with which to dig him out.

22 ♕f4 ♗e6
23 ♘e2

Or 23 ♕xg3 ♘f5 24 ♕d3 ♕g5 with a winning game[1].

23 ... ♘f5
24 ♗h3

24 ♘xg3 ♘xg3 25 ♕xg3 again leaves Black with a won ending, and White must try to create complications.

24 ... ♕d7
25 ♖fg1

Not 25 ♗xf5 (intending 25...♗xf5 26 ♘xg3) because of 25...g2.

25 ... ♖f8
26 ♕d2 ♘xd4!

---

1 This comment is impossible to understand, since at the end 25 ♗xd5 ♗xd5 26 ♘xd5 penetrates to f6 and gives White a crushing attack. Instead, Black should play 23...c6 maintaining the extra pawn.

This little combination destroys any chance White might have had. The game concluded: **27 ♕xd4 ♗xh3 28 ♖xg3 ♗f5 29 ♕xa7 b6 30 ♕a3 c5 31 ♕b3 ♗e4 32 ♖d1 ♕f5 33 ♘c3 c4 34 ♕a4 ♕xe5 35 ♖e3** (a blunder under time pressure, but the game is over in any case) **35...♗xc2+36 ♕xc2 ♕xe3 37 ♘xd5 ♕c5 38 ♕c3 h5 39 a3 ♖f5 40 ♘f6+ ♖xf6 41 ♕xf6 ♕f5+ 42 ♕xf5 gxf5 43 ♔c2 ♔h7 44 ♔c3 ♖g4 45 ♖d7+ ♔g6 46 ♖d6+ ♔g5 47 ♖xb6 h4 48 ♖b8 h3 49 ♖g8+ ♔f4 50 ♖h8 ♔g3 51 ♖h5 h2 0-1**

A game showing that, when necessary, Alekhine could defend with as much skill as he could attack: Keres never had a chance after his unsound opening tactics.

Game 116
Alekhine – Keres
Munich 1942
Queen's Indian Defence

1	**d4**	**♘f6**
2	**♘f3**	**b6**
3	**c4**	**♗b7**
4	**g3**	**e6**
5	**♗g2**	**♗e7**
6	**0-0**	**0-0**
7	**b3**	

If 7 ♘c3, then 7...♘e4 8 ♕c2 ♘xc3 9 ♕xc3 f5 10 ♖d1 ♗f6 with equality. The text move is played to avoid this simplification and to solve the problem of the c1-bishop.

7 ... d5

However, Black could have taken advantage of White's momentary weakness on the long dark-square diagonal to free his game by 7...c5!. The general rule in these positions is that ...c5 is good if White cannot reply d5 and here he cannot, for 8 d5 exd5 (not 8...♘xd5!? 9 ♘e5! and wins a piece[1]) 9 ♘h4 (9 ♘e5 d6 10 ♘d3 ♕c7) 9...♘e4! gives Black the advantage.

The text move is not bad, but gives Black a less easy game.

8 ♘e5 c6

And here 8...c5 would certainly be better. After 8...c5 9 dxc5 bxc5 10 cxd5 exd5 Black is left, it is true, with 'hanging pawns' (which was probably why Keres rejected the line) but, as Alekhine himself demonstrated with Black in the 23rd game of his 1937 match with Euwe, he can maintain equality. The Euwe-Alekhine game continued 11 ♘c3 ♘bd7 12 ♘d3 ♘b6 13 a4 a5 14 ♗a3 ♖c8 with equal chances.

9 ♗b2 ♘bd7
10 ♘d2 c5

Now if White exchanges pawns, he cannot put the black centre under immediate pressure by ♘c3. He can (and does), however, hold the centre by e3, retaining an advantage in

1 This is not so as 9...♗f6 10 ♗b2 (10 f4 d6) 10...♘c6! allows Black to keep his extra pawn; a more convincing line against 8...♘xd5 is 9 cxd5 ♗f6 10 dxe6 ♗xa1 11 exf7+ ♖xf7 12 ♘g5!, with an edge for White.

space: it was not worth Black's while to play in this over-cautious manner.

11 e3 ♖c8
12 ♖c1 ♖c7
13 ♕e2 ♕a8? *(D)*

He should play 13...♕b8 followed by ...♖fc8. The text move leaves the c7-rook unprotected, of which Alekhine takes instant advantage.

14 cxd5 ♘xd5

If 14...exd5, then 15 dxc5 bxc5 (15...♘xc5 or 15...♗xc5 leaves him with a very bad d-pawn and enables White to occupy d4 with a clear advantage) 16 ♘xd7 ♘xd7 (16...♖xd7 17 ♗xf6 wins a pawn) 17 e4 dxe4 (17...d4? 18 ♗xd4) 18 ♗xe4 with the better endgame, Black having two weak pawns. This would, however, be a little better than the line played.

15 e4 ♘5f6
16 b4!

Exploiting to the full the vulnerable position of the rook on c7.

16 ... ♖fc8
17 dxc5 bxc5
18 b5 a6?

This manoeuvre, opening the a-file, is immediately fatal and is a surprising error of judgement for a master of Keres' strength. Best was 18...♘xe5 19 ♗xe5 ♖d7 20 ♖fe1 followed by ♘b3 or ♘c4. White's superior pawn formation gives him an appreciable advantage but there is a great deal of play left in the game.

19 a4 axb5
20 axb5 ♕a2

Obviously overlooking the reply, but his game is very bad in any event.

21 ♘ec4! ♕a8
22 ♗xf6 gxf6

However he plays he loses the exchange, for example 22...♗xf6 23 b6 or 22...♘xf6 23 ♘b6.

23 b6 ♖c6
24 e5 ♖xb6
25 ♘xb6 ♘xb6
26 ♗xb7 ♕xb7
27 exf6 ♗xf6
28 ♘e4 ♗e7

28...♗g7 29 ♘d6 and 28...♕e7 29 ♕a6 ♖b8 30 ♖b1 ♘d7 31 ♖xb8+ ♘xb8 32 ♕c8+ lose material.

29 ♕g4+ ♔h8

29...♔f8 is better but after 30 ♘g5 ♗xg5 31 ♕xg5 White must win.

30 ♕f4

Threatening both 31 ♕xf7 and 31 ♘xc5, but not 30 ♘xc5? ♖xc5 31 ♕d4+ e5 and Black wins a piece.

30 ... ♗f8
31 ♘xc5 ♕c7

Or 31...♖xc5 32 ♖xc5 ♗xc5 33 ♕e5+. The text move loses another pawn, but whatever Black plays, White wins easily.

32 ♘xe6 ♕xf4
33 ♘xf4 1-0

Game 117
Alekhine – Junge
Krakow 1942
Ruy Lopez

1 e4 e5
2 ♘f3 ♘c6
3 ♗b5 a6
4 ♗a4 ♘f6
5 0-0 ♗e7
6 ♕e2 b5
7 ♗b3 0-0
8 c3 d5
9 d3!

An excellent reply, avoiding the complications arising from 9 exd5 and ensuring White a positional advantage since the opening of the d-file is in his favour (as he can immediately occupy it). If 9 exd5 then Black can either play 9...♘xd5 or 9...♗g4 10 dxc6 e4.

9 ... dxe4

If 9...d4, then 10 cxd4 ♘xd4 11 ♘xd4 ♕xd4 12 ♗e3 ♕d6 13 f4 with rather the better game. This, however, is Black's best line. 9...♗g4 10 h3 (10 exd5 ♘xd5 11 ♕e4 ♗e6! 12 ♘xe5 ♘xe5 13 ♕xe5 ♗d6 is dangerous for White) 10...♗h5 11 ♗g5 dxe4 transposes into the line played. Finally, 9...♕d6 is met by 10 ♗g5. In every case Black will be forced, by the combined pressure on his e- and d-pawns, to play ...dxe4 or ...d4 and both moves react against him. This position is worth considerable study, as it is an interesting example of a not uncommon type—where one player has a free and apparently very satisfactory game but where the fundamental insecurity of his pawn formation makes it difficult for him to maintain equality.

10 dxe4 ♗g4
11 h3 ♗h5
12 ♗g5

Indirectly preventing 12...♘a5?, since 13 g4 ♗g6 14 ♘xe5 wins a pawn (14...♗xe4? 15 ♗xf6 gxf6 16 ♘xf7 and wins).

12 ... ♘e8
13 ♗xe7 ♗xf3

Forced. After 13...♕xe7 14 g4 ♗g6 15 ♗d5 ♕d7 16 ♘bd2! Black loses the e-pawn. Or if 13...♘xe7, then 14 g4 again winning the e-pawn.

14 ♕xf3 ♘xe7
15 ♖d1 ♘d6
16 ♘d2 c6

16...♔h8! is better, intending 17 ♘f1 f5 or 17 ♗c2 c6; in this latter variation Black is obviously better off than in the game as White does not particularly want to retreat the bishop. In any event, White has the better game since his bishop is a better piece than the opposing knight and he can attack the weakened queenside pawns at an appropriate moment by a4, but Black's position was still quite defensible. After the text it steadily becomes more difficult for Black to hold the game.

17 ♘f1 ♕c7
18 a4! *(D)*

In Alekhine's words "The opening of the a-file in the Ruy Lopez is in every case favourable for White."

18 ... ♖ad8
19 ♘g3 ♘ec8

B

White threatened 20 ♕e3, and then either 21 axb5 and 22 ♖a7 or (if 20...c5) 21 axb5 axb5 22 ♗d5, with much the better game. It is very interesting to see how White's queenside threats force the black knight over to b6, whereupon White wins on the kingside!

20 axb5 axb5
21 ♘f5! ♘b6
22 ♕e3! ♘xf5

If 22...♘dc4, then 23 ♗xc4 ♘xc4 (23...bxc4 24 ♕c5) 24 ♕c5 and wins, e.g. 24...♘xb2 25 ♖xd8 ♖xd8 26 ♘e7+ ♔h8 27 ♘xc6 ♖c8 28 ♖a7.

23 exf5 c5

Allowing a pretty finish, but the game was hardly to be saved. If 23...♘d5 (best), then 24 ♗xd5 ♖xd5 25 ♖xd5 cxd5 26 ♖a7 ♕d6 (or 26...♕b8 27 ♕g5!! ♔h8! 28 ♕e7) 27 ♖b7 ♖b8 28 ♕a7 ♖xb7 29 ♕xb7 and White should win. If 24...cxd5, then 25 ♖a7 d4 26 ♖xc7 dxe3 27 ♖xd8 exf2+ (27...e2 28 ♖cc8!! e1♕+ 29 ♔h2 g5 30 f6 h5 31 ♖xf8+ ♔h7 32 ♖g8! and wins) 28 ♔xf2 ♖xd8 29 ♖b7 wins.

24 f6! gxf6
25 ♕h6 f5

If 25...♖xd1+, then 26 ♖xd1 f5 27 ♕g5+ ♔h8 28 ♕f6+ ♔g8 29 ♖d3 f4 30 ♖d6 ♘d7 31 ♕e7 wins. Black must play ...f5 as otherwise ♗c2 wins.

26 ♗xf7+!

A beautiful finishing touch.

26 ... ♕xf7

White also wins after 26...♔xf7 27 ♕xh7+, 26...♖xf7 27 ♕g5+ or 26...♔h8 27 ♕f6#.

27 ♖xd8 ♘a4

Or 27...♖xd8 28 ♕g5+.

28 b3 1-0

28...♘xb2 29 ♖aa8. A most instructive game for all players, like myself, who are addicted to the Ruy Lopez.

Game 118
Alekhine – Junge
Prague 1942
Catalan[1]

1 d4 d5
2 c4 e6
3 ♘f3 ♘f6

1 This famous game has been analysed many times, for example by Alekhine himself, Fine (*Chess Marches On!*, 1945), Pachman (*Pachman's Decisive Games*, 1975) and Dvoretsky and Yusupov (*Secrets of Chess Tactics*, 1992). As the conclusions of modern analyses are totally different to those expressed by Alexander, I shall add some extra commentary at critical points. As this extra analysis is fairly extensive, it is embedded in the text.

4 g3 dxc4
5 ♕a4+ ♘bd7

In Junge-Alekhine, Munich 1943, Alekhine played ...♗d7-c6; the more usual plan, adopted here by Junge, of ...♘d7, aims at an early advance of the queenside pawns combined with ...♗b7. The two lines are of about equal merit, and either should give equality with careful play by Black.

6 ♗g2 a6
7 ♕xc4 b5
8 ♕c6

The immediate ♕c2 is more common, but White has in view a continuation for which he wishes to drive the rook off the a-file.

8 ... ♖b8

8...♖a7 is slightly better as the rook has little future on the b-file, and from a7 it can later play across to c7 or d7 if necessary. However, the textmove is perfectly sound.

9 0-0 ♗b7
10 ♕c2 c5
11 a4!

A far-sighted positional pawn sacrifice which Black should decline by 11...b4, thereby maintaining equality. After accepting the sacrifice, the best Black can hope for is to avoid disaster if he defends with absolute accuracy.

11 ... ♗xf3
12 ♗xf3 cxd4
13 axb5 axb5
14 ♖d1 ♕b6

Not 14...♗c5 15 ♗f4 e5 (15...♖c8 16 ♗b7 d3 17 ♕xd3 ♗xf2+ 18 ♔f1! also wins for White) 16 ♗xe5 ♘xe5 17 ♕xc5 ♘xf3+ 18 exf3 ♕e7 19 ♕xd4 (or 19 ♕xe7+) and White should win.

15 ♘d2 e5
16 ♘b3 ♘c5? *(D)*

Overlooking White's forthcoming sacrifice. Black's best line was 16...♗e7 17 e3 dxe3 18 ♗xe3 ♕e6 when White has adequate positional compensation for his pawn, but nothing immediately decisive.

W

17 ♘xc5 ♗xc5 *(D)*

If 17...♕xc5, then 18 ♗c6+ ♘d7 (or 18...♔d8 19 ♕xc5 ♗xc5 20 ♗xb5!) 19 ♕xc5 ♗xc5 20 ♖a5 regaining the pawn with advantage.

[JN: Neither of these lines is especially convincing, because once queens are exchanged White has no advantage—Black's active rooks and pressure against b2 easily balance White's two bishops. After 18...♔d8, Alekhine gave 19 ♕f5 ♕xc6 20 ♕xe5 with two lines:

1) 20...♗d6 21 ♖xd4 ♖b6 22 ♗f4 ♘e8 23 ♖a7 ♔c8 24 ♕f5+ ♔b8, and now the strongest line is 25 ♖xd6! ♘xd6 26 ♖d7 ±.

2) 20...♘d7 21 ♖xd4 ♖c8 22 ♗d2 b4 23 ♖c1 ♕xc1+ (23...♕b6

can be broken down by 24 ♖d1 ♖c7 25 ♗e3! ♕c6 26 ♗f4! ♖b7 27 ♖a1!) 24 ♗xc1 ♖xc1+ 25 ♔g2 ♖c7 26 ♕d5 after which White wins the f7-pawn at the very least. In view of the continuing exposure of Black's king, this position can be assessed as clearly better for White.

Against 18...♘d7, Dvoretsky and Yusupov give 19 ♕e4, which does indeed appear very good for White, e.g. 19...♖c8 20 ♗xd7+ ♔xd7 21 e3 or 19...♖d8 20 e3.]

W

18 ♖a6!!

A magnificent and most unexpected sacrifice, which is perfectly correct.

18 ... ♕xa6

19 ♕xc5 ♕e6

If 19...♘d7, then 20 ♗c6 f6 21 ♕d6 with several threats: ♕xd7+, ♗xd7+ and ♕e6+.

20 ♗c6+ ♘d7

If 20...♔d8, then 21 ♗d2 b4 22 ♖a1! wins in view of 22...♖c8 23 ♕b6+ ♔e7 24 ♗xb4+ or 22...♘d7 23 ♗xd7 ♕xd7 24 ♖a7.

[JN: In this line the simple move 22 ♕a5+, given by Dvoretsky and Yusupov, wins easily after 22...♔e7 23 ♕c7+ ♘d7 24 ♗xd7 ♕xd7 25 ♕xe5+ ♕e6 26 ♕xg7 and Black will lose at least two more pawns. Alexander's 22 ♖a1 is far less clear after the reply 22...♕e7!.]

21 ♗xd7+ ♔xd7

If 21...♕xd7, 22 ♕xe5+ wins the rook on b8.

22 ♕a7+ *(D)*

B

22 ... ♔c6

If 22...♔c8, 23 ♗d2 followed by ♖c1+ is immediately decisive.

[JN: This is a critical moment. Virtually all analysts have recommended 22...♔d6 as leading to a draw, starting with Alekhine himself. Summarising the various analyses gives us the following lines:

1) 23 ♖xd4+ exd4 24 ♗f4+ ♔d5 25 ♗xb8 ♖c8! is good for Black, as Black's king can run away via c4 and b3.

2) 23 ♗d2 ♕d7 24 ♗b4+ ♔e6 25 ♕a6+ ♔f5 26 e4+ ♔xe4 27 f4 and Dvoretsky and Yusupov comment (correctly) that 'the chances of such a speculative attack succeeding would be highly dubious'.

3) 23 f4 ♕d7 (given by Pachman; Fine only analysed 23...f6 24 fxe5 fxe5 25 ♗f4 exf4 26 ♕xd4+, which is good for White, although even in this line 25...♖hd8! 26 ♖xd4+ ♔c6 is probably enough for a draw) 24 fxe5+ ♔e6 25 ♕a6+ ♔e7 26 ♗g5+ and after 26...♔e8 or 26...♔f8 the position is completely unclear.

4) 23 ♗f4 (Alekhine thought this best) 23...exf4 24 ♖xd4+ ♔c6 25 ♖d1 ♖hc8 (25...♖b6 26 ♖c1+ ♔d5 27 ♕c7 ♖c6 28 ♖d1+ ♔c4 29 ♖c1+ is also a draw) 26 ♖c1+ ♔d5 27 ♖d1+ with perpetual check.

However, it is by no means certain that the move played should have led to a loss.

In view of this, some of Alexander's comments (in particular, the question mark attached to Black's 16th move), appear somewhat out of place.]

23 ♗d2 ♖hc8

[JN: The best defensive chance. Other moves are clearly lost, for example Pachman gives 23...♕d7 24 ♖c1+ ♔d6 25 ♗b4+ ♔e6 26 ♖c7 ♕d5 27 ♖xf7, 23...♔d5 24 f3 ♕d6 25 ♕xf7+ ♔c6 26 ♗a5 and 23...♖hd8 24 ♖c1+ ♔d5 25 ♖c5+ ♔e4 26 f3+ ♔f5 27 ♖c6!, to which one may add the line 23...♕d5 24 ♖c1+ ♔d6 25 ♕c7+ ♔e6 26 ♖c6+ ♔f5 27 f3 h5 28 ♖d6.]

24 e4 *(D)*

24 ... ♕b3

White threatened 25 ♖c1+ ♔d6 26 ♗b4+.

B

[JN: All previous analysts believed that Black is lost here. It is true that the move played loses by force, but Black had a much better defence: 24...b4! 25 ♖a1 and now:

1) Pachman gives 25...♖b6 26 b3 ♕xb3 27 ♖c1+ ♔b5 28 ♖xc8 ♕d1+ 29 ♔g2 ♕xd2 30 ♕d7+ mating.

2) 25...♕e8 26 ♖a5! ♖a8 (after 26...♕f8, 27 ♖xe5 starts regaining the material without diminishing the attack) 27 ♕c5+ ♔d7 28 ♕d5+ ♔e7 29 ♕xe5+ ♔f8 30 ♗xb4+ ♔g8 31 ♕xd4 when White, with two pawns for the exchange, has some winning chances but the game is far from over.

3) 25...♔b5! is best, introducing the possibility of escaping with the king via c4 and d3. After this I cannot see anything more than a draw, for example 26 ♕a4+ ♔c4! or 26 b3 ♕b6 27 ♕d7+ ♕c6.]

25 ♖a1 b4

26 ♖a6+ ♔b5

27 ♖a5+ ♔c6

28 ♕c5+ ♔d7

29 ♖a7+ 1-0

Index of Opponents

Numbers refer to pages

Ahues *167, 227*
Alexander *240*
Andersen *173*
Bogoljubow *44, 49, 70, 151, 152, 154, 156, 202, 204, 207, 210, 212, 229, 242, 255*
Böök *282*
Capablanca *129, 131, 136, 138, 142, 289*
Chajes *87*
De Roszynski *19*
Duras *14*
Euwe *115, 118, 216, 218, 220, 224, 261, 263, 266, 268, 271, 276, 279, 284*
Fahrni *30*
Fine *245, 252*
Flohr *178, 191, 287*
Foltys *235*
Frydman *233*
Grünfeld *78*
Isakov *31*
Janowski *95*
Johner *60*
Junge *298, 299*
Keres *291, 294, 296*
Kimura *194*
Kmoch *127, 169*
Koltanowski *185*
Lasker, Em. *215*
Levenfish *10*
Maroczy *86, 160, 180*
Marshall *25, 107, 124, 145*
Mieses *20*
Mikenas *196*
Nimzowitsch *12, 23, 121, 158, 175*
Opočensky *97*
Pirc *176*
Rabinovich *34*
Reshevsky *248*
Réti *73, 92, 100*
Rubinstein *54, 82, 111, 113*
Sämisch *77, 258*
Schwartz *109*
Selezniev *39*
Ståhlberg *171*
Steiner *51, 149, 192*
Sterk *46*
Sultan Khan *189*
Tarrasch *27, 58, 99*
Tartakower *125, 164, 187*
Teichmann *37*
Thomas, Sir G. *105*
Torres *65*
Treybal *103*
Vygodchikov *8*
Winter *183, 238*
Wolf *62*
Yates *67*
Znosko-Borovsky *16, 199*

Index of Openings

Numbers refer to pages

Alekhine Defence *51, 105, 248*
Benoni Defence *204*
Budapest Defence *187*
Caro-Kann Defence *125, 183, 189*
Catalan Opening *268, 299*
Centre Game *20*
Colle System *191*
Danish Gambit *31*
Dutch Defence *70, 164*
French Defence *30, 129, 158, 175, 218, 224, 238, 289*
Giuoco Piano *99*
Grünfeld Defence *220*
Irregular Defence *95, 107*
King's Fianchetto *100*
King's Gambit *27, 37, 294*
King's Indian Defence *92, 109, 118*
King's Knight's Opening *19*
Modern Defence *196*
Nimzo-Indian Defence *115, 121, 169, 171, 266, 279*
Petroff's Defence *25*
Queen's Gambit Accepted *149, 178, 210, 212, 227, 252, 282*
Queen's Gambit Declined *46, 54, 62, 67, 78, 82, 86, 87, 103, 131, 136, 138, 142, 160, 180, 215, 235, 255*
Queen's Indian Defence *111, 113, 145, 154, 167, 173, 240, 296*
Queen's Pawn Game *10, 12, 34, 39, 44, 49, 58, 60, 124, 127*
Réti Opening *271*
Ruy Lopez *8, 14, 16, 23, 65, 73, 156, 185, 192, 194, 199, 207, 245, 258, 287, 291, 298*
Semi-Tarrasch Defence *276*
Sicilian Defence *77, 233*
Slav Defence *97, 151, 152, 202, 216, 242, 261, 263, 284*
Tarrasch Defence *176*
Three Knight's Game *229*

'Alekhine's games and writings inspired me from an early age. ... I fell in love with the rich complexity of his ideas at the chessboard. ... I hope readers of this book will feel similarly inspired by Alekhine's masterpieces.'
from the Foreword by Garry Kasparov

Alexander Alekhine captivated the chess world with his dazzling combinative play. His genius has been a strong influence on every great player since, none more so than World Champion Garry Kasparov.

This book contains a selection of the very best of Alekhine's annotations of his own games, converted to algebraic by John Nunn. These games span his career from the early encounters with Lasker, Tarrasch and Rubinstein, through his world title battles, to his meetings with the new generation of players who were to dominate chess in the 1950s.

For further information about Batsford chess books, please write to:
Batsford Chess Books, 9 Blenheim Court, Brewery Road, London N7 9NY

Alexander Alekhine was World Champion from 1927 to 1935 and again from 1937 to his death in March 1946. His life was as turbulent as his chess; his long-standing feud with his great rival Capablanca is legendary, as is his vilification, and posthumous elevation to hero status by the Soviet authorities.

Other Batsford chess books include:

John Nunn's Best Games
John Nunn
0 7134 7726 1

The Ultimate Pirc
John Nunn and Colin McNab
0 7134 8221 4

Anatoly Karpov's Best games
Anatoly Karpov
0 7134 7843 8

Kasparov v Kramnik
Nigel Davies and Andrew Martin
0 7134 8604 X

£17.99
ISBN 0-7134-7970-1
9 780713 479706